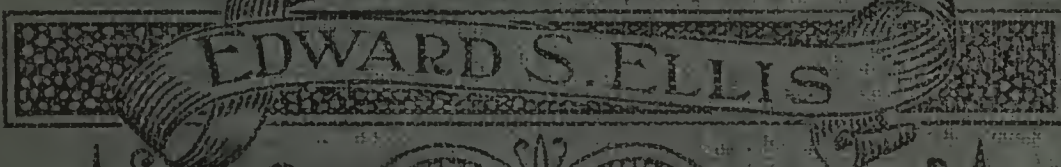




# HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY



EDWARD S. ELLIS







THE LIBRARY

Class

E 1

Book

E 4

GPO

1-1123



















THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA



#21,692

C

# A HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY

BY

EDWARD S. ELLIS, A.M. 1840-

AUTHOR OF "THE PEOPLE'S STANDARD HISTORY OF THE UNITED  
STATES," "A HISTORY OF THE STATE OF NEW YORK,"  
"COMMON ERRORS IN WRITING AND  
SPEAKING," ETC.



BOSTON  
LEE AND SHEPARD PUBLISHERS .

1898



3 MAR 24

E178

E48

copy 2

COPYRIGHT, 1897, BY LEE AND SHEPARD

*All Rights Reserved*

HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY



Norwood Press  
J. S. Cushing & Co. — Berwick & Smith  
Norwood Mass. U.S.A.



## INTRODUCTION



It will be admitted that the history of no other country possesses so absorbing interest as our own. Although a New World, with no antiquity of government, science, or art, it presents the fruitage of the centuries of the Old World. Built on the lessons and experiences of the ages, its fabric is one of marvellous strength, endurance, and wisdom.

In its infancy it was hardened and made rugged by storm, by trial, by privation, and by suffering. The rigors of an unfriendly climate, the enmity of savages, the obstacle of vast primeval forests, and the choice between perishing from the earth or hewing the road to success, developed the highest form of mental and bodily vigor. Slavery in the Old World taught the blessings of liberty in the New, and our forefathers laid the foundations broad and deep and strong and sure. The Revolution brought the nation into existence and gave it a sisterhood among the peoples of the earth. The War of 1812 was necessary to gain and hold the respect of all countries, and the Civil War cemented and unified the house once divided against itself. Beneath the furnace blast we underwent the "pangs of transformation," and came forth purified by fire.

In this broad, appreciative spirit all children should study the history of our country. Its most impressive lesson will be lost on those who read it as a mere story, without an understanding of the meaning of historical movements and events.

Why did the Pilgrims leave their native land to plant their homes in the dismal solitudes of New England? Why did the Cavaliers settle in Virginia? What caused our forefathers to sever their allegiance to Great Britain, and undergo poverty, hunger,

cold, heat, storm, hardship, and suffering unto death? What led to the establishment of the Constitution, the most perfect form of government ever framed for man? What brought about the War of 1812, that with Mexico, and the tremendous struggle for the preservation of the Union? Why are Americans the bravest men, and the most successful of inventors, explorers, authors, and scientists? In short, why is the United States the greatest nation of history?

To the intelligent teacher these questions convey their own answers, and the hints thus given suggest the true method of studying history. The subject naturally divides itself into periods, which should be mastered in all their details and in the full extent of their meaning. A list of topics is given at the close of each chapter, which the teacher should expand and supplement with others that will readily suggest themselves. The pupils should be required, upon reaching the close of each period, to construct a "skeleton history," on the plan of the model suggested, and finally to put together a complete skeleton history of the United States from the discovery of America to the present time.

Every American must be interested in the men who had most to do with making our history, yet the rule has been to give very little and sometimes no information at all concerning them. What boy or girl does not desire to know more about Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker General," "Old Put," the hero of so many stirring adventures, Baron Steuben, the grim veteran from Prussia, Marion, the "Swamp Fox," Franklin, the philosopher, Fulton, who introduced steamboat navigation, Morse, the inventor of the telegraph, Webster, the orator, and scores of other statesmen, warriors, and great men who helped to build our nation? We have, therefore, added at the close of each chapter — beginning with the Revolutionary period — brief biographical sketches of the men who figure most prominently in the incidents of the chapter itself. These contain information with which each pupil should make himself familiar, and which cannot fail to incite him to delve deeper in the rich historical mines of his native land.

# CONTENTS

## PART I

### *THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION*

CHAPTER	PAGE
I. THE EARLIEST DISCOVERERS OF AMERICA . . . . .	I
II. THE BIRTH OF COLUMBUS, AND HIS LONG STRUGGLE TO SECURE AID IN SAILING ON HIS VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY . . . . .	7
III. THE GREAT DISCOVERY . . . . .	11
IV. EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA . . . . .	19

## PART II

### *THE PERIOD OF SETTLEMENT*

V. THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF VIRGINIA . . . . .	36
VI. THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW YORK . . . . .	53
VII. THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW ENGLAND . . . . .	62
VIII. THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, AND DELAWARE . . . . .	84
IX. THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF MARYLAND, THE CAROLINAS, AND GEORGIA . . . . .	92
X. THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR . . . . .	100
XI. HOME LIFE IN THE COLONIES . . . . .	115

## PART III

### *THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION*

XII. OPENING OF THE REVOLUTION . . . . .	123
XIII. EVENTS OF 1776 . . . . .	141
XIV. EVENTS OF 1777 . . . . .	155
XV. EVENTS OF 1778 . . . . .	167



CHAPTER	PAGE
XVI. EVENTS OF 1779 . . . . .	176
XVII. EVENTS OF 1780 . . . . .	182
XVIII. EVENTS OF 1781 . . . . .	193

## PART IV

*THE PERIOD OF FORMATION AND GROWTH*

XIX. FORMATION OF THE GOVERNMENT . . . . .	207
XX. WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1789-1797 . . . . .	213
XXI. JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1797-1801 . . . . .	221
XXII. JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1801-1809 . . . . .	226
XXIII. MADISON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1809-1817 . . . . .	235
XXIV. MONROE'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1817-1825 . . . . .	261
XXV. JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1825-1829 . . . . .	267
XXVI. JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1829-1837 . . . . .	271
XXVII. VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1837-1841 . . . . .	281
XXVIII. HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1841-1845 . . . . .	284
XXIX. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1845-1849 . . . . .	292
XXX. TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1849-1853 . . . . .	299
XXXI. PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1853-1857 . . . . .	303
XXXII. BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1857-1861 . . . . .	309

## PART V

*THE PERIOD OF THE WAR FOR THE UNION*

XXXIII. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865. EVENTS OF 1861 . . . . .	317
XXXIV. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 ( <i>continued</i> ). EVENTS OF 1862 . . . . .	329
XXXV. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 ( <i>continued</i> ). EVENTS OF 1863 . . . . .	344
XXXVI. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 ( <i>continued</i> ). EVENTS OF 1864 . . . . .	358
XXXVII. LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 ( <i>concluded</i> ). EVENTS OF 1865 . . . . .	368

PART VI

*THE PERIOD OF REUNION AND PROGRESS*

CHAPTER	PAGE
XXXVIII. JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.—1865-1869 . . .	387
XXXIX. GRANT'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—1869-1877 . . .	392
XL. HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION.—1877-1881 . . .	403
XLI. GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—1881-1885	406
XLII. CLEVELAND'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION.—1885-1889 . .	411
XLIII. HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.—1889-1893 . . .	413
XLIV. CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION.—1893-1897 .	420
XLV. MCKINLEY'S ADMINISTRATION.—1897- . . .	432
<hr/>	
APPENDIX . . . . .	441
CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY OF EVENTS . . . . .	460
INDEX . . . . .	471





# A HISTORY OF OUR COUNTRY



## PART I THE PERIOD OF DISCOVERY AND EXPLORATION



### CHAPTER I

#### THE EARLIEST DISCOVERERS OF AMERICA



**C**HRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, although honored as the discoverer of America, was not the first white man to visit the shores of the New World. Hundreds of years before he was born, the daring sailors of Norway and Sweden, who were called Norsemen, or Northmen, because their home was in the northern part of Europe, steered their vessels across the stormy Atlantic and caught sight of the American continent, and even landed, more than once.

Naddod, one of those sea-rovers, was caught in a tempest in the year 860 and driven upon the coast of Iceland. He called it Snowland, and left as soon as he could. Four years afterward another Norseman visited the island and took away so pleasing an account that a settlement was made, but it did not last long. The colonists returned home dissatisfied with the country. Ten years later another settlement was planted, and lasted hundreds of years.

The Iclander known as Eric the Red quarrelled with some of the settlers and sailed to Gunnibiorn's Rocks, in Greenland, where he made his home. He called the cold, bleak country Greenland, and told such a glowing story about it that a good many Icelanders joined him on his return. So far as known, the sons of Eric the Red were the first white men that set foot on the mainland of America.

The eldest of these sons was Lief; afterwards known as Lief the Lucky. In the year 1000, he sailed southward, with a crew of



LANDING OF THE NORSEMEN

thirty-five men, from the Greenland colony. The first land they saw is believed to have been Newfoundland. There they went ashore, spent a short time in looking around, and then sailed, as is thought, to Nova Scotia. Still steering southward, they finally caught sight of New England. They were amazed and delighted by the quantities of luscious grapes which they found. Lief named the country Vinland, and, when he finally set out on his return, he carried a great deal of the fruit, and specimens of the fine timber to show to his friends. It is not known where Lief and his men

landed, but is believed to have been in Rhode Island and probably on Narragansett Bay.

Eric the Red had another son, named Thorvald. He was a brave sailor and was eager to see the new country. Lief helped him to get ready, and in 1003 he sailed with thirty men. He found the spot visited by his elder brother, and the company spent the winter in hunting and fishing. They left no record of having



MEETING OF NORSEMEN AND INDIANS

seen a single native in all that time. In the spring, a party explored the coast of Rhode Island, Connecticut, and Long Island. It is thought that they entered the harbor of New York. How different the scene that greeted them from that of to-day, for not even the smoke of a wigwam, nor a living being besides themselves, was visible.

In the spring of 1004, Thorvald, while sailing along the coast of



Cape Cod, was driven on the beach by a tempest. The ships were mended, and, liking the appearance of a certain spot on Massachusetts Bay, they dropped anchor and went ashore.

There, for the first time, they saw some natives. Nine of them were lying on the ground, under a rude tent, with no fear of danger. Why should any one wish to harm them? Yet hardly had the Norsemen discovered the innocent people, than they stole upon them and killed all except one. He managed to elude their heavy swords and dashed off into the woods.

But the visitors suffered for their wickedness. The native that escaped carried the news to his friends, who determined to slay the dreadful beings that had invaded their home. They rushed upon them from all sides and attacked them with such spirit that the Norsemen had to retreat to their vessel, fighting as they went. The weapons of the natives were so weak, compared with those of the white men, that only one of the latter was killed. He was Thorvald, whose breast was pierced so deeply by an arrow that he died. He was buried near the shore, and the survivors sailed to Vinland. The next spring, the colony returned to Greenland.

An expedition left Greenland in the spring of 1007, including more than a hundred men and women. They spent the first winter, it is supposed, on the shores of Buzzard's Bay. They suffered for food, and many quarrels took place. A number of deserters were cast ashore at Iceland and punished by being reduced to slavery. The others, after much hardship, sailed away in 1010. A new expedition, however, was formed in the following spring, but that, too, was broken up by wrangles, and those that survived returned to Greenland.

**America lost to the Old World.** — This ends the history of the Norsemen so far as it affects the New World. They had discovered and tried to colonize it but failed in every instance. The settlement in Greenland perished so utterly that hardly a trace remains. That vast body of land reaching from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and from the Arctic to the Antarctic Ocean, lay forsaken and un-

known to Europe for hundreds of years. The waves that rolled against its shores brought the sail of no vessel from the far-away lands. The dusky warrior peering out from the bleak woods of New England, or from the sandy wastes of the Carolinas, or the lowlands of Florida, or the curving coast of Brazil, saw no strange vessel bringing the palefaces to invade his hunting grounds. Nor, along the immense line to the westward of the Andes, nor up the Pacific coast of North America to the fogs of Alaska, could the keen eyes discern anything besides their own tiny canoes, darting in and out among the headlands and inlets, as they scanned the surface of the mightiest ocean on the globe.



AN INDIAN WARRIOR

**Legends of Other Discoverers of the New World.** — Besides the discoveries of the Norsemen, there are legends of still earlier visits to the New World. A Mexican historian claims that a party of Buddhist monks from China discovered the country in the fifth century, and the official history of China gives credence to the account. Still other traditions speak of a visit by a party of Arabian sailors in the twelfth century, and also of the discovery of the country, many years later, by Madoc, a Welsh chieftain.

All this, however, is so vague and shadowy, that we must give it little credit, until stronger proof appears.

Time rolled on, and America, once discovered and lost again, lay wrapped in the gloom of loneliness and desolation. Silence brooded over the forests and rivers and mountains, and the surges beat against the shores while the centuries came and went, until, in the fulness of time, the man was born and the hour came for the true discovery of America.

**TOPICS.** — The first visitors to the New World; the Norsemen; Naddod; Eric the Red; Lief the Lucky; Thorvald; his death; the expedition of 1007; the last of the Norsemen in the New World; America lost to the Old World; the legends of earlier discoveries than those by the Norsemen.



THE WORLD IN THE FIFTEENTH CENTURY



## CHAPTER II

### THE BIRTH OF COLUMBUS AND HIS LONG STRUGGLE TO SECURE AID IN SAILING ON HIS VOYAGE OF DISCOVERY



**BIRTH of Columbus.**—While there is a variation of twenty years among the biographers of Columbus, in the date of his birth, all agree that it took place at Genoa (jen'o-a), Italy. The majority make the year 1435 or 1436. His father was a wool-weaver. Columbus was the eldest of four sons, who, with the single daughter, were probably born under the same humble roof in Genoa.

**Boyhood of Columbus.**—We have no reliable knowledge of the boyhood and early life of Columbus. His education was gained mostly in the local schools of Genoa. He was a good penman and possessed skill in drawing. There came a time, in after years, when he supported his family by drawing maps. It is claimed that he studied awhile and taught at the University of Pavia. A drawing said to have been made by Columbus is carefully preserved at that institution.

When about fourteen years old, Columbus went to sea. In those times the Mediterranean and Adriatic were filled with treasure ships from the Indies (in'diz). Jewels, gold, spices, and gums were brought overland through Africa to Venice (ven'iss) and Genoa, which were then in the height of their glory as conquerors of adjoining small states and masters of the seas. Pirates swarmed in the waters. The ships of one nation preyed upon those of another, while the Moors, who were sullenly withdrawing from Spain,



assailed everything within reach. The Mediterranean, from Gibraltar to the Dardanelles (dar-da-nels'), was lit up at night by the flames of destruction.

Columbus went to Portugal about 1473. For some years previous, the marine world was stirred by the efforts of Prince Henry of Portugal to find a southern route to the Indies. Columbus afterward married the daughter of one of the captains whom Prince Henry sent on voyages of discovery. In this way, no doubt, he gained a great deal of valuable knowledge. Although deeply interested in these attempts to find a westward route to the Indies, Columbus took no part in them. It was at this period that he supported himself and family by making and selling maps. His wife died shortly after, leaving one son, Diego (de-ah'go).

**Columbus in the Service of Portugal.** — About 1477, Columbus entered the service of Portugal, and many suspect that he made a voyage to Iceland. If so, he must have heard the legends about the visit of the Norsemen to the New World centuries before. At any rate, when he went back to Portugal, his faith in a western route to the Indies was so strong that he begged King John to give him command of a fleet with which to make such a voyage. The king referred the matter to a royal council, and they reported against it; but the treacherous king sent out a secret expedition of his own, which was driven back by a storm. Columbus was so indignant when he learned of the trick, that he left the country.

**Discouragements of Columbus.** — Trudging wearily along, holding the hand of his little boy Diego, he at last came to a Franciscan convent, in the southern part of Spain, near the little town of Palos (pā'los). The prior gave him kindly welcome, and Columbus remained for several days. The prior was much impressed by the views of Columbus, and called in a number of his friends, who talked over the matter with him. The prior set out to obtain an interview with the king and queen for Columbus, but it was a long while before he succeeded.

It may seem strange that Spain should have a king and queen ruling the country at the same time, for such things are not



COLUMBUS AND HIS SON AT THE CONVENT

known in these days. It is hard to imagine two rulers with equal authority, but Ferdinand of Aragon and Isabella of Castile had joined by their marriage those two provinces, and sat upon separate thrones, although united by domestic ties. Their joint features were cast upon the coins of the country, but in matters of government the thrones were independent of each other.

It was not until Columbus had waited for years, and had actually started to leave the country, that Queen Isabella was won over to his views and promised to give him the help without which he could not make his voyage. The king would not consent, his excuse being that the treasury had been drained by war; but Isabella offered to pledge her own crown of Castile and her jewels to raise the needed funds. This sacrifice, however, was not made, as the receiver of revenues in Aragon advanced the money, which, after all, probably came from the treasury of Ferdinand.

Isabella signed articles of agreement with Columbus by the terms of which he was to be admiral over all the lands and continents that he might discover, and have the right to name three candidates for the government of each island; he was to receive one-tenth of the gold, precious stones, and merchandise in whatever manner found; he was to bear one-eighth of the expense in fitting out the vessels, and to be given the same share of the profits. The money furnished by Columbus came from his friend Martin Pinzon, a wealthy navigator, who agreed to take part in the enterprise.

**TOPICS.** — The birth of Columbus; his boyhood; when he went to sea; piracy; Prince Henry of Portugal; the treachery of King John of Portugal; the discouragements of Columbus; King Ferdinand and Queen Isabella; the agreement between the queen and Columbus.



## CHAPTER III

### THE GREAT DISCOVERY



**B**EFORE the Sailing of the Expedition. — The news of the intended expedition spread dismay and resentment in Palos. Almost every one believed that the men who sailed upon the voyage would go to certain death. It looked for a time as if not a single sailor could be coaxed or driven to service on the ships. The government tried to press them to the task, and offered to pardon many for crimes on condition of their going. It was only when Martin Pinzon, the friend of Columbus, and his brothers Vicente and Francisco volunteered, that sufficient seamen were secured to man the three little ships.

**The Departure.** — Columbus hoisted his flag on the *Santa Maria*; Martin Pinzon was captain of the *Pinta* and his brother Francisco was pilot, while Vicente commanded the *Nina*. The total number of the crews was one hundred and twenty persons, among whom were several private adventurers, a physician and surgeon, servants, and ninety sailors. With gloom among the sailors, and deeper gloom among their friends on shore, the three ships sailed from Palos, on Friday, August 3, 1492.

The *Santa Maria*, the largest of the three, was only sixty-three feet long, over all, fifty-one feet along the keel, twenty feet beam, and ten and one-half feet in depth. The *Nina* and *Pinta* were open caravels, decked only at the ends, where were quarters for the officers and crews. The *Santa Maria* was what is called a carrack, since it was larger than the others and was used for carry-



ing cargoes of freight. It was also slower, a fact which afterward caused a dispute as to who first saw land.

**The Westward Voyage.**—Sailing out on the vast unknown ocean, all went well for a time, though the sailors were ill at ease and anxious for something to occur that would cause Columbus to turn back. Little, however, did they understand the high courage and resolve of their commander. Nothing but heaven could change his purpose.

But trouble was certain to come. The seamen were in an ugly mood and felt that every day took them that much further from home. For a time Columbus held them well under control. He ordered that if the vessels became separated by accident, they should continue sailing westward for seven hundred leagues; but it is doubtful if either of the other vessels would have held to the course so long. He was so afraid that land would not be found at the distance named that he kept two reckonings—a true and a false one. The latter was shown to the crews and made the progress seem less than was the fact.

A great surprise came to the discoverer on the night of September 13, when some six hundred miles from the island of Ferro. Looking at the compass, he saw that, instead of pointing at the north star, as he had always seen it do, the needle turned several degrees to the northwest. The variation, too, increased with each day. He could not understand it, nor even at this late day is the cause clearly understood; but, afraid of the effect of the strange fact upon his men, he kept the secret as long as he could. By and by, however, the pilots discovered the truth and were terrified. But Columbus was ready with the theory that the needle pointed not toward the north star, but toward a fixed point near it, and the revolution of the star caused the seeming variation of the needle. The simple folk had so much respect for his learning that they accepted the explanation.

**Signs of Land.**—After a while, so many signs of land appeared that it is hard to understand why the sailors continued dissatisfied. On the day after the variation of the compass had been noticed,

a heron and a tropical bird hovered around the ships for some time, as if trying to find out who the strange beings were. Since those birds never go far from land, no stronger proof could have been given of the near success of the voyage. Then the ships



THE VOYAGE OF COLUMBUS

entered the mass of floating seaweed known as the Saragossa Sea, and the sailors had great sport netting crabs and other shellfish.

Meanwhile, the trade-winds carried the ships smoothly forward. The signs of land became more marked ; but, as the days passed, and each morning the same limitless expanse of ocean bounded the horizon on every hand, the discontent of the sailors increased, until they were on the verge of mutiny. Despite all Columbus could do, their sullenness grew until in desperation he agreed that



if land were not sighted at the end of three days, he would go back to Spain.

While a reward was offered to the one who first saw land, a penalty was imposed for a false alarm. The clouds were mistaken so many times for the misty shore of some island, that every few hours a gun boomed on one of the vessels as a signal that the great discovery had been made.

On the night of October 11, Columbus climbed upon the roof of the cabin, at the stern of the *Santa Maria*. The twinkling stars overhead, the rippling of the water from the bow, the foamy wake stretching away in the night, the solemn stillness, the murmur of the voices of the crew, as they moved here and there or gathered in scowling groups, — all these were fit companions to the gloomy thoughts of the great navigator, who, on the eve of one of the grandest achievements of man, dreaded lest he should be forced to turn back with a disappointment more crushing than he could bear.

**A Light over the Waters.** — Suddenly his heart gave a quick throb. With his longing eyes piercing the night, he saw a light moving along the horizon like a star. And yet it could not be a star, for it danced up and down, as if a person bore it in his hand, while running. Afraid to trust his own senses, Columbus called to one of his friends and asked him whether he observed the light. Yes, he saw it. Then the discoverer asked another to climb up beside him, but the light had vanished. It flickered to view, however, several times, but the signal gun was not fired, owing to the doubts of several.

**Land!** — At two o'clock in the morning, a cannon on the *Pinta* boomed across the waters. One of the watchers had caught the dim but certain outlines of land several miles distant. Sail was shortened and daylight confirmed the glad news.

**Landing of Columbus.** — With the breaking of day, the admiral and his crews saw before them a level island, green and beautiful with vegetation and swarming with men, who ran from the woods to the edge of the sea and stared in wondering amazement at the

visitors. In obedience to the signals of Columbus, anchors were dropped and the boats were manned and armed. The discoverer himself was in full armor and bore the royal standard, while the Pinzon brothers each carried the banner of the expedition, emblazoned with a green cross, containing the initials of Ferdinand and Isabella. Leaping out of the boat as it touched shore, the admiral sank upon his knees, kissed the ground, and thanked God from an overflowing heart. The rest did the same, for their gratitude was as deep as his.

Then Columbus rose to his feet, drew his sword, displayed the royal standard, and with his companions grouped about him took possession of the island in the name of the sovereigns of Castile and Aragon. The men next crowded around their commander and humbly craved his forgiveness, — a prayer which he gladly granted. The natives viewed the scene in silent wonder and awe.

It has never been clearly established where the landing of Columbus was made. The weight of testimony is in favor of Watling Island, one of the Bahamas. The island was called Guanahani (gwah-na-hah'ne) by the natives and named San Salvador by Columbus. Believing that he had landed on one of the islands belonging to the coast of India, he called the natives Indians (in'di-ans), a name which has clung to them ever since.

The voyage from Palos had been made in forty-three days. The Spaniards wandered over the island, eating the delicious fruits and feasting their eyes upon the beautiful scenery. They treated the natives kindly and won their good-will. Two days later the discoverers rowed to the northward in their boats and examined the rest of the island. Columbus gave numerous presents to the Indians, such as glass beads, hawks' bills, and gaudy trinkets. For the first time the white men saw their canoes, hollowed from the trunks of large trees, and their hammocks swinging in the cool shade of the groves.

**Other Discoveries.** — It is not worth while to follow Columbus through all his explorations, for his experiences were quite similar. He discovered a number of other islands, among which was San



Domingo. He saw everything through magnifying glasses, as may be said, and his letters to the Spanish sovereigns were filled with such extravagant language as to awaken distrust in their minds.

**Loss of the Santa Maria.** — It was on December 6 that Columbus reached Haiti, landing on the western end of the island, to which he gave the name of St. Nicholas, known now as Mole St. Nicholas. Off Santo Domingo the careless pilot ran the *Santa*



WRECK OF THE SANTA MARIA

*Maria* on a sand bar. She was badly injured and could not be gotten off. She was therefore unloaded, and Columbus sailed in the *Nina*. The timbers of the *Santa Maria* were used in constructing a fortification, which was named La Navidad. Forty-three Spaniards, by their own request, were placed in charge, and on January 16, 1493, Columbus hoisted sail for home.

**Return to Spain.** — It was in the depth of winter, the sea was tempestuous, and the trade-winds delayed them; but Columbus

and the Pinzons were skilful sailors, and they reached one of the Azores on February 18, without mishap. On March 4, the *Nina*, the ship of Columbus, anchored off Lisbon, and the discoverer was received with the highest honors by the king of Portugal. That ruler must have been filled with chagrin, when he reflected how he had thrown away the glory which might have fallen to his own country. Sailing again, Columbus came to anchor at Palos, on March 15, 1493.

Never before had the city known such excitement. All business ceased, the bells were rung, and men, women, and children rushed to the shore to greet those whom they had never expected to see again. Columbus sent letters to the king and queen, who were at Seville, and soon followed them. No higher honors could have been paid to any hero than were showered upon the admiral by the grateful sovereigns; for what greater deed could mortal man accomplish than to discover a new world?

**Subsequent Voyages by Columbus.** — It was natural that Columbus should wish to make another voyage across the Atlantic to the wonderful country which he had found, and the king and queen were as eager as he that it should be done. There was no trouble now in obtaining volunteers. His ships numbered seventeen, and twelve hundred people accompanied him. The expedition sailed in the September following his first return, and, calling at Haiti, found not a Spaniard alive. They had acted so brutally toward the natives, that the latter overwhelmed them and slew every white person on the island.

This expedition accomplished little, and Columbus made a third one in 1498. On this voyage he discovered and named the island of Trinidad and saw the northern coast of South America. With no suspicion of the vast continent he had found, he supposed it to be a small island, which he named Zeta. He coasted hundreds of miles, believing each projecting point to be an island. When, however, he observed the vast volume of water poured into the ocean by the Orinoco, he was sure he had

reached the coast of Asia and the stream was one of the great rivers flowing from the Garden of Eden.

The enemies of Columbus caused his arrest on false charges, and he was sent home in irons. The sovereigns and the people were shocked, and he was quickly released and treated with honor. Although he had grown old and feeble, he sailed on his fourth and last voyage in the spring of 1502. He discovered Martinique (mar-te-neek') and other islands and saw the coast of Honduras. He returned to Spain in 1504. His good friend Queen Isabella died shortly after, and Columbus found himself deserted and in poverty. He tried in vain to secure his rights, but failed to do so, and died May 20, 1506, with never a suspicion of the real grandeur of the discovery he had made.

**TOPICS.** — Sailing of Columbus; the three caravels; the westward voyage; the signs of land; the light seen by Columbus on the night of October 11; the great discovery; the landing; where the landing was made; other discoveries of Columbus; loss of the *Santa Maria*; what followed; the return to Spain; second voyage of Columbus; what was done on his third voyage; on his fourth; his death.



## CHAPTER IV

### EXPLORATIONS IN AMERICA

#### *English Explorations*



**T**HE Naming of the New World. — Americus Vespuccius (a-mer'i-cus ves-poosh'e-us) was a comrade of Columbus, and like him a skilful sailor and a native of Italy. In May, 1499, he sailed on a voyage of discovery with another navigator. They sighted the coast of South America six hundred miles south of the Gulf of Para, and sailed as far south as the Cape de la Verda, thus gaining a sight of the continent of America. Two years later, while in the service of the king of Portugal, Vespuccius made a second voyage, visiting the coast of Brazil, though several other expeditions were ahead of him.

Vespuccius had done important work, and when he came back to Lisbon he wrote an account of his explorations, which was published at Augsburg in 1504. In this narrative and in letters, he claimed to have made a voyage to the continent in 1497, which was before Columbus saw the mainland. This increased the admiration felt for Vespuccius in many quarters, and one writer proposed that the newly discovered country should be named America in honor of the Italian. The proposal was accepted, and gradually the whole continent became known as America instead of Columbia, though the latter name has been growing in favor of late years.

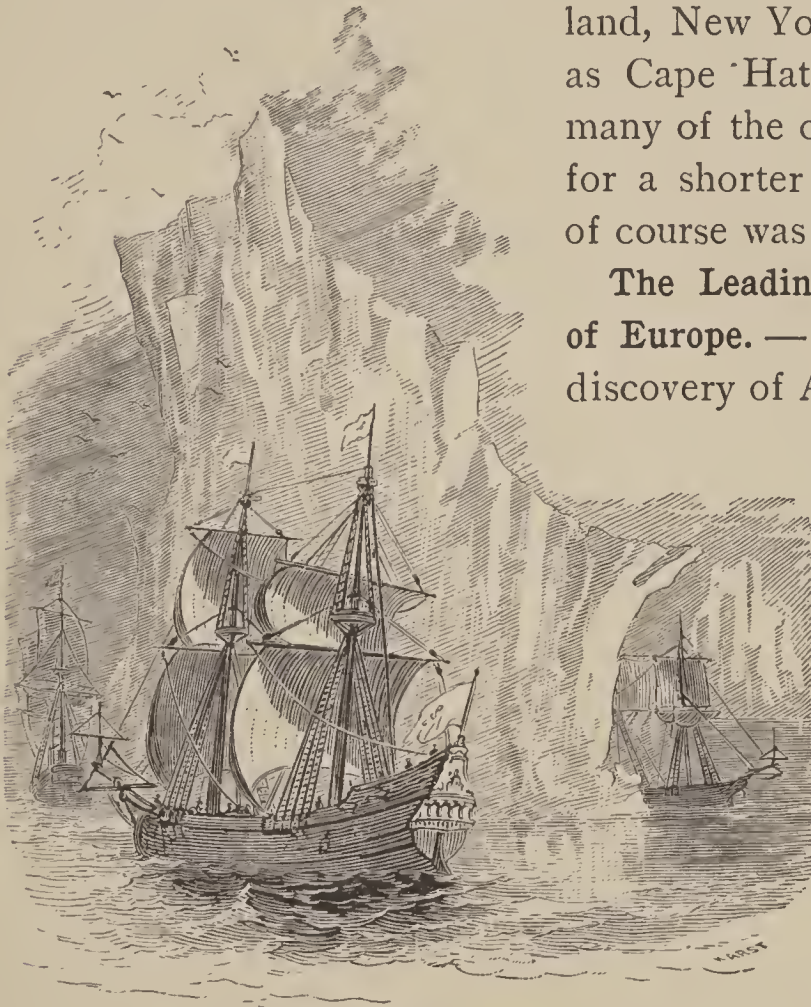
**The Discoverer of the American Continent.** — But the honor of discovering the mainland of the American continent must be



given to an Englishman named John Cabot (cab'ot), who sailed from Bristol, England, in 1497, and sighted the coast on June 24. The exact spot is not known, but is believed to have been Labrador. Cabot thus preceded Columbus to the continent itself by about a year. It is generally believed that in May, 1498, Sebastian Cabot, in charge of an expedition, coasted New England, New York, and as far south as Cape Hatteras. He, like so many of the others, was searching for a shorter route to India, but of course was disappointed.

**The Leading Maritime Nations of Europe.** — At the time of the discovery of America, the leading

maritime nations of Europe were Spain, Holland, France, and England. Holland was more in quest of trade than territory, and did little of account in the way of exploration. It required a good many years for her to see the



CABOT AMONG THE ICEBERGS

golden prizes that were slipping from her grasp. Even England, after the voyages of the Cabots, seemed to care little about the New World. Henry VIII, in response to urgent demands, sent out an expedition in 1527, and another in 1536, but little was done. In the spring of 1553 three other ships sailed for the New World. Two of them drifted into the Arctic regions, and their crews were frozen to death. The third reached Archangel in Russia and was the means of opening a new channel for trade.

**Frobisher's Voyages.** — Martin Frobisher (frob'ish-er) sailed on his first westward voyage in June, 1576, and made two subsequent ones. He entered the strait named for him, but his work has slight value.

**Sir Humphrey Gilbert's Expedition.** — Sir Humphrey Gilbert, a half brother of Sir Walter Raleigh, who helped him to fit out the expedition, left England in June, 1583, in charge of five ships, but one of the largest put back to port, and mutinies, quarrels, and continuous bad weather brought the expedition to naught. Sir Humphrey was drowned by the foundering of his vessel while on his return to England.

**Sir Walter Raleigh's Expeditions.** — Sir Walter Raleigh did not give up his scheme of colonization. He sent two other ships to America in April, 1584. They reached North Carolina, and brought back so encouraging a story that a larger and better equipped expedition set out for the New World in the following year. They attempted a settlement south of Cape Fear, but treated the Indians so badly that the red men became their bitter enemies. When on the verge of starvation, Sir Francis Drake carried them back to England. They took with them some tobacco, which was thus introduced into Europe.

In 1587 Raleigh sent still another expedition, comprising one hundred and fifty men and women. They wrangled continually and led a wretched existence for a considerable time. While at Roanoke Island, the wife of Annanias Dare gave birth to a daughter, who was named Virginia. She was the first child of English parentage born within the present limits of the United States.

Governor White, who was at the head of the colony, returned to England in quest of help. Threatened war with Spain kept



SHIPS OF THE SIXTEENTH  
CENTURY



him at home for three years. When he at last came back, he was unable to find a single member of the colony. He made long and repeated searches, for his own daughter was among the missing ones, but he was forced to sail away without seeing her or any of the others.

**The "Lost Colony."** — Sir Walter Raleigh did all he could to learn the fate of the "lost colony," as it is termed in history,



THE "LOST COLONY"

but was never able to gain any certain knowledge of the people. There were reports many years afterward that some of them were alive, but it is probable that when White visited the spot in 1590 all were dead.

**Gosnold's Expedition.** — In March, 1602, Captain Bartholomew Gosnold sailed from Falmouth with thirty-two persons, of whom twenty were intended to found a colony. It was he who named Cape Cod, the Elizabeth Islands, and Martha's Vineyard. They made a sturdy effort to gain a footing on New England soil, and held fast for a time; but they had neglected to bring provisions, and, to save themselves from starvation, were compelled to return to England. Gosnold, however, spread such bright accounts of

the fertility of the land and the beauty of the country that great interest was roused in colonization, and the grandest of conceivable results soon followed.

### *Spanish Explorations*

The Spanish naturally sought the warmer portions of America. A navigator who was the first to reach any new land had the right to claim it for the government under whose flag he sailed. Thus Columbus, though an Italian, served under the Spanish flag, and everything he discovered therefore belonged to Spain.



DISCOVERY OF THE PACIFIC OCEAN

**Discovery of the Pacific Ocean.** — Vasco Nuñez de Balboa left Spain on a vessel which was wrecked on the coast of Darien. He had been there before, and he now saved the crew from starvation by guiding them through many perils to an Indian village, where food was obtained. The grateful men placed him at their head, and they committed many cruelties upon the Indians. Nearly all the Spaniards who came to America were so brutal and savage that they did much to delay successful colonization.



While engaged on one of his forays, Balboa was told by an Indian that if he would go six days further to the westward, he would reach another immense sea, and beyond that a country where gold was as plentiful as the pebbles on the seashore.

The prospect of finding the precious metal set the adventurers off in a hurry. They cared nothing for the fighting they had to do, for they were secure within their armor, but the tramp was a



DE LEON KILLED BY THE INDIANS

long and exhausting one. Reaching the base of a high mountain, from the top of which the Indians said the great sea could be seen, Balboa made his men stay behind while he climbed to the top. This was in the month of September, 1513, and he gazed out upon the Pacific, being the first white man to rest his eyes upon the mightiest ocean of the globe.

**Ponce de Leon's Expedition.** — Other Spanish navigators pushed their explorations northward. Ponce de Leon (pon'tha da la-own'), having been deprived of the governorship of Porto Rico (port'o ree'ko), set out with three ships in March, 1512, in search of a marvellous spring, which he had been told would bring back youth to an old person. He landed near where Fernandina now

stands, and coasting the beautiful shore he and his men drank from whatever spring they came upon, hoping it would prove the Fountain of Youth. The country was first seen on Easter Sunday (Pascua Florida), and named in honor of the day. De Leon was made governor of the new country on condition that he colonize it. He meant to do so, but was killed by an Indian arrow.

**De Ayllon's Expedition.** — It is a remarkable fact that eighty-one years before the settlement of Jamestown by the English, the Spanish planted a large and promising colony upon the identical site of the first permanent English settlement in the United States. The proof of this has been established by recent discoveries in the Royal Library at Simancas in Spain.



SEARCH FOR THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH

In the month of June, 1526, Lucas Vasquez de Ayllon (il'yone), one of the auditors of the island of San Domingo, rich, famous, and ambitious, and who had made an exploring voyage six years previous along a portion of our southern coast, sailed from Puerto de la Plata with three large vessels, containing six hundred persons of both sexes, including missionaries and physicians, and one hundred horses. De Ayllon reached the coast at the mouth of



a river, supposed to be the Wateree, which he named the Jordan. He lost one of his vessels and constructed a smaller one, which was the first ship built on this continent.

Unfavorably impressed with the country, De Ayllon moved up the coast to the entrance of Chesapeake Bay. He was pleased with the view, and ascended James River to a peninsula on the northern bank of the stream, fifty miles from its mouth. There, on the subsequent site of Jamestown, he began a settlement, which he named San Miguel de Guandape.

A few scattered Indian dwellings stood near, and the ground was low and malarial; but the Spaniards set to work in earnest, the heaviest labor being done by negro slaves, the first introduced into this country. Before the buildings could be completed, a winter of unusual severity set in. A number of men were frozen to death on the vessels lying in the river, previous to which many had succumbed to disease. De Ayllon himself was attacked with fever, and died October 18, 1526.

The temporary command of the colony was given to Francis Gomez, until De Ayllon's nephew, John Ramirez, should arrive from Porto Rico. A mutiny, however, broke out, and the governor and constituted authorities were seized and placed in confinement. The mutineers after a time were overcome and their leader put to death. Then the fever-smitten and worn-out colonists abandoned the place. In the spring of 1527, the remnant of the expedition, now only one hundred and fifty in number, set sail from San Miguel, bearing the remains of De Ayllon in a tender, which was lost at sea in a storm. The survivors finally reached San Domingo, thus terminating the only Spanish attempt to found a settlement north of St. Augustine.

**De Narvaez's Expedition.** — In 1528, Pamphilo de Narvaez (nar'va-eth), with four ships and a brigantine, landed near Tampa Bay and advanced into the interior. He treated the Indians as if they were wild beasts, and they harassed him until only four miserable beings out of the four hundred were left alive. These were held prisoners for years, but gradually worked their way



across the continent to California, where they received attention, and finally reached their homes in Spain.

**De Soto's Expedition.** — In May, 1539, Hernando de Soto landed at Tampa Bay, at the head of a thousand men, and started on his famous expedition. Like De Narvaez the explorers were unspeakably cruel to the Indians, and like him they reaped the woful consequences. The expedition moved so slowly that it was not until



DEATH OF DE SOTO

1541, that, passing diagonally across the northwest corner of the present State of Mississippi, they discovered the "Father of Waters." It is believed that the party penetrated as far as the site of Little Rock in Arkansas. During the three years of wandering, one-fourth of the men died and nearly all the property was lost.

On the 21st of May, 1542, De Soto, who was worn to the last stages of exhaustion, was placed beneath a tree and, surrounded by

his friends, breathed his last. Fearful that the Indians would be encouraged to attack them, if they learned of their leader's death, the mourners silently lowered the body of De Soto over the side of a boat at midnight, and, wrapped about with weighted blankets, it sank to the bottom of the river which he had discovered. The survivors fought their way to the Gulf and at last reached the colony of their countrymen at Panuco, where they received the care of which they stood in sore need.

**De Luna's Expedition.** — Don Tristan de Luna, with a force of more than 1500 men, sailed in August, 1559, from Vera Cruz (va'-rah krooz'), Mexico, for the purpose of conquering Florida. All went well to Pensacola Bay, where a fierce storm destroyed the ships. A detachment of soldiers was sent to explore the interior, but their experience was similar to that of their predecessors, and, had not help been sent to them, none would have lived to return.

### *French Explorations*

**Verrazani's Expedition.** — The first active interest shown by France in searching for a shorter route to the Indies was in 1523, when she sent out an expedition, consisting of four ships (soon reduced by disaster to one), under command of Verrazani (ver'-za'ni), who, curious to say, was like Columbus a native of Italy. He left the Madeiras in January, 1524, and about two months later reached the American coast, along which he cruised for several weeks; but the account which he left is so vague, that some doubt whether he ever made such a voyage at all.

**Cartier's Ascent of the St. Lawrence.** — In April, 1534, Cartier (car-te-a') left St. Malo with two ships and crews of sixty-one men each. Steering northward he passed the coast of Newfoundland and sailed through the straits of Belle Isle into the Gulf of St. Lawrence. The report which he made caused him to be sent on a second expedition in the following spring. This time he had three ships, and they dropped anchor in the mouth of the great river, August 10, 1535. Cartier was confident that he had found





CARTIER ON THE ST. LAWRENCE



at last the right passage to Cathay (China), but when the Indians told him the stream narrowed as he ascended it and the waters became fresh, he was compelled to change his mind.

Sailing up the stream, he anchored off the site of the present city of Quebec and finally landed below the rapids of St. Mary. The Indians flocked about the visitors, who were humane and wise enough to treat them kindly, but when, months later, the ships were about to sail, several natives were decoyed on board and carried to France.

Cartier's next expedition consisted of five vessels, which left France in May, 1541. The Indians had not forgotten his treachery of the year before, and their manner was so threatening, that no attempt at settlement was made. A long time passed before there was a renewal of the efforts to colonize Canada.

Baffled thus in the north, France now gave her attention to the southern part of the country. The Huguenots were persecuted at that time in France. Their leader, Lord Admiral Coligny, in 1562, sent Captain John Ribaut (re-bo') with two ships to explore the Atlantic coast, south of the St. Lawrence. They sighted Florida on the last day of April and coasted northward until they reached the St. John, up which they sailed. The Indians treated them well and they in turn were considerate toward the natives.

Still sailing northward, they gave French names to the various rivers, and in the latter part of May anchored in the harbor of Port Royal. Ribaut was so well pleased with the place that he decided to begin a settlement. A strong fort was built on an island in what is now known as Archer's Creek, six miles from Beaufort, South Carolina. Leaving all the ammunition and stores that he could spare, Ribaut bade his friends good-by and sailed for France.

While the men left behind were wise enough to retain the goodwill of the Indians, they were too lazy to work. They lived upon what the natives furnished, hoping that when that resource was gone, Ribaut would return with more supplies. The only thing

they did resembling work was to hunt for gold, which they expected to find lying all about them. After a time they fell to quarrelling and became so homesick that they constructed a rickety boat and put to sea in it. After some of them had starved to death, the survivors were picked up by an English vessel, which took them to England as prisoners.

The second expedition consisted of three ships under charge of Captain René de Laudonnière (lō-do'ne-er) and arrived in June, 1564. A fort was built and all might have gone well but for the greed of the men for gold. They became mutinous, hungry, and desperate. They formed several plans for killing Laudonnière, but he detected the criminals and punished them. Then a party stole two of the ships and started for the West Indies on a piratical expedition. Laudonnière built two large vessels and made ready to follow them, only to have both seized and turned into pirates as soon as finished. Still more, the men compelled him to sign a commission authorizing them to cruise among the Spanish colonies.

**Pedro Menendez.** — When the men left behind were in the depths of despair, Ribaut arrived with supplies and was joyously welcomed. Some nights later, another fleet stole silently up the river. It was under the command of Pedro Menendez (ma-nen'-deth), one of the most vicious miscreants that ever sailed under the flag of Spain. He bore a commission from his king to burn and destroy the Lutheran French, wherever they were found in his dominions, and he now began his hideous work.

Three of Ribaut's ships were up the river, and the four that were left were no match for the Spanish, who intended to make the attack in the morning. The French ships slipped their cables and put to sea, with the Spaniards in chase; but the former easily left them behind, and, turning about, watched the Spaniards as they entered the river a number of miles southward and landed men and arms. Ribaut made ready to attack them before they could fortify themselves, but the French vessels were scattered by a tempest.

Relieved of this danger, Menendez set out to overwhelm the weak party that had been left in charge of the fort. The Spaniards marched through mud, water, swamps, thickets, morasses, often to their armpits, with the rain pouring in torrents, until they reached the fort. It was as dark as it could be, with the rain still falling. The French did not dream of danger. The sentinel was silently slain, and the others massacred without



THE SENTINEL

mercy. Those who attempted to flee were pursued, captured, and hanged, the whole number thus put to death numbering one hundred and fifty. Laudonnière and a companion escaped by standing to their necks in water throughout the whole night. They managed to reach the two ships that Ribaut had left behind, and sailed for France.

Menendez learned some time later that the Frenchmen who had set out to attack him were shipwrecked on Anastasia Island, a short distance to the south. He marched thither, received their surrender, and put nearly every one to death. Ribaut and



the remainder of the men reached the place the next day. Menendez cunningly made his force seem much larger than it was, and demanded their surrender. Two hundred refused and marched south, declaring that they preferred to trust the Indians before the plighted word of a Spaniard. Menendez then shot down the rest, Ribaut being among those slain. He captured most of those that had marched away, and presented them as prisoners to his king, who sent them to the galleys.



RETRIBUTION

When Menendez hanged the wretched fugitives, he caused to be nailed over their heads on the trunks of the trees the inscription: "I do this, not as to Frenchmen, but as to Lutherans." Strange to say, France allowed these outrages to pass without demanding the punishment of the savage officer. But among her subjects was one, a Catholic like Menendez, who determined to take the matter into his own hands. With the help of some friends, he landed a body of men north of the fort and marched

secretly against it. He shrewdly enlisted the Indians in his service, for they hated the Spaniards as intensely as he, and attacked them with the utmost fury. When the fighting ceased, only a few Spanish were left. The Frenchman hanged these on the same trees, with the inscription: "I do not this as unto Spaniards, nor unto Maranes (Moors), but as unto traitors, robbers, and murderers."

**The First Permanent Settlement.** — Some time previous to this, Menendez, believing that he had destroyed all the heretics within reach, went back to the mouth of the River of Dolphins, as it was called, and took formal possession of the country in the name of his king. He began a settlement in 1565, which he named St. Augustine, and the remarkable fact about it was that it was the first permanent European settlement within the present limits of the United States. Menendez built a fort, and the struggling town was attacked several times by the French, English, and Indians. It subsequently came into the possession of the English by treaty (1763), was ceded to Spain (1783), and became a United States possession in 1819.

**TOPICS.** — The naming of the New World; the discoverer of the American continent; the leading maritime nations of Europe; the expedition sent out by Henry VIII; the second and third expeditions; Frobisher's voyages; Sir Humphrey Gilbert's expedition; the fate of Sir Humphrey; the next expedition sent out by Raleigh; the history of the third expedition; the fourth expedition; the first child of English parentage born within the present limits of the United States; the story of the "lost colony"; Gosnold's expedition.

The portions of our country preferred by the Spaniards for settlement; the discovery of the Pacific Ocean; Ponce de Leon's expedition; the Fountain of Youth; De Narvaez's expedition; De Soto's expedition; discovery of the Mississippi; De Luna's expedition.

Verrazani's expedition; Cartier's ascent of the St. Lawrence; his second expedition; the history of his third and last expedition; efforts of the French in the south; the Huguenot expedition of 1562; the sad fate of those left behind; the second expedition; its wretched history; Pedro Menendez; his frightful cruelty; the retaliation visited upon the Spanish soldiers; the oldest town within the present limits of the United States; when it became an English possession; when Spanish again; when American.

## SKELETON HISTORY OF PERIOD I

**Lesson Facts.** — The Discovery of America; the Explorers of America.

DISCOVERY OF AMERICA.	<i>By the Northmen.</i>	{ The Northmen were daring sailors who lived in the north of Europe. No other people ventured on such long voyages. In the year 1000, several of their navigators saw America, and partially explored the coast of New England; but their settlements perished, and the New World was lost to the Old.
	<i>By Columbus.</i>	{ Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy, about 1435. Study led him to believe that India could be reached by sailing westward. After long years of trial and waiting, he secured the help of Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain and sailed, with three small vessels, from Palos, August 3, 1492. On the 12th of October, he discovered what is believed to have been Watling Island. He made three other voyages, and on the third voyage saw the continent of South America. He died in 1506, ignorant of the great discovery he had made.
	<i>By the Cabots.</i>	{ John Cabot, of England, saw the coast of Labrador, June 24, 1497, fourteen months before Columbus discovered South America. In 1498, Sebastian saw the land his father had discovered and explored the region from Nova Scotia to Cape Hatteras.

**TO THE PUPIL.** — Construct a skeleton history of the Explorers of America.



## PART II

### THE PERIOD OF SETTLEMENT

---

#### CHAPTER V

##### THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF VIRGINIA



**I**NTERNAL Affairs of Europe in the Sixteenth and the Seventeenth Centuries. — With one exception (Georgia), the thirteen original colonies were settled during the seventeenth century. That, therefore, was the century of colonization, and in order clearly to understand the planting of the settlements in this country, we must learn of the important events that took place in the Old World, for they had a great influence upon American history.

Portugal at that time ranked as a leading nation, but she took no part in the colonization of our country because of her agreement with Spain not to do so, provided Spain did not interfere with Portuguese enterprises in Africa. Holland was subject to Spain, but became independent in the latter part of the century and grew into a strong naval power.

In England the government rested in the two houses comprising parliament and in the king. Parliament had the right to tax the people; but when James I of Scotland came to the throne in 1603, he tried to take this right wholly to himself. He laid taxes, but the people refused to pay them, and the king was forced to let parliament do the work.

James I reigned until 1625, when his son, Charles I, became king. He took up the quarrel of his father, and pressed it so hard that in 1642 war broke out between him and parliament. The king was defeated, captured, and, in 1649, beheaded. Oliver Cromwell, the leader of the parliamentary party, became ruler of England, and held supreme power until his death in 1658. His rule is known in English history as the Commonwealth. His friends were often called Puritans or Roundheads, because they discarded wigs and wore their hair short, while the supporters of the king were known as Cavaliers.

There was no man great enough to succeed Cromwell, and the people had grown tired of the Commonwealth. So in 1660 they called back the son of the beheaded king from exile and placed him upon the throne. This is known as the Restoration, and the new king, Charles II, reigned until his death in 1685, when his brother (the Duke of York) succeeded him as James II. He was foolish enough to try to rule by his own will, as his father, Charles I, had sought to do. His subjects, in 1688, rebelled, drove him and his son to France, and made his son-in-law and daughter, William of Orange and Mary, the king and queen.

James I and Charles I paid little attention to the American colonies, and Cromwell did not fret them. Charles II and James II, however, were continually interfering and annoying them, while the troublous times in England kept a procession of vessels sailing across the Atlantic for settlement in America. During the seventeenth century our population, beginning at nothing, increased to nearly a quarter of a million.

In France, Louis XIII, in 1614, wiped out the body which made the laws, and he and his successors ruled by "divine right" until 1789, when their grinding tyranny drove the people to revolt, and the French Revolution, the most appalling period in the world's modern history, swept over France and crimsoned its land with blood. A hundred years previous to that (1685) a vicious religious persecution in France drove swarms of Protestants, commonly known as Huguenots, to join the stream of

emigrant vessels across the ocean to find homes in the New World.

Spain, as we have learned, gave her attention to the southern part of the continent, conquering Mexico and many portions of South America. Her aggressions were stained by heartless cruelty, and her work was accursed from the first, with the baleful shadow of her brutality still resting upon the Antilles. Fortunately, Spain was slightly identified with our early settlements. If the facts thus pointed out are borne in mind, we shall understand the birth and infancy of the colonies as affected by the troublous conditions across the ocean.

**Founding of Jamestown, Virginia.** — In the year 1606, two great companies were formed in England for colonization in America. The one formed in London took that name, and the one in Plymouth was the Plymouth Company. King James I granted to the London Company the North American coast from latitude  $34^{\circ}$  to latitude  $38^{\circ}$ , and to the Plymouth Company the coast from latitude  $41^{\circ}$  to  $45^{\circ}$ . The coast lying between was granted to both companies, but each company was forbidden to place a colony within a hundred miles of any settlement already made by the other. The western boundaries of all these lands was fixed as the South Sea or the Pacific Ocean.

King James did not mean that the colonies should have much to say about their own government. He retained the right to name a resident council for each, who were allowed to select their own presiding officer, provided he was not a clergyman. The king or council could change, as they saw fit, the laws made in America, and it was provided that for five years all property should be held in common.

The Plymouth Company sent out two ships in 1606, but one was captured by the Spaniards. The other coasted the shore of Maine and took home a favorable report. The following year a colony went thither, but after a year's stay gave up and returned to England. This was known as the Popham colony. The efforts of the Plymouth Company, therefore, resulted in failure.





THE POPHAM COLONY

The London Company sent out three vessels from Blackwall, England, on December 19, 1606. These vessels contained one hundred and five men, but no women. The majority belonged to the "gentleman" class, who, like so many before them, expected to gather plenty of gold with little labor on their part. Probably one-fifth were thrifty mechanics and men who were glad to work. The three ships were the *Sarah Constant*, of one hundred tons' burden, the *Godspeed*, of forty, and the *Discovery*, a pinnacle of forty tons.

The commander of the expedition was Captain Christopher Newport. The intention was to settle near Roanoke Island, where the "lost colony" had made their home twenty years before. While cruising along the coast looking for a harbor, they entered Chesapeake Bay, where they were charmed by the beautiful scenery. It was the month of May, the most delightful season of the year, and the banks were brilliant with wildflowers, whose perfume was wafted across the smooth waters to the sea-

men, wearied with their months of battling with the stormy Atlantic. The Indians were seen peeping timidly from the woods, and the prospect was so pleasing that all were eager to land and begin a settlement. They selected a spot on a peninsula some fifty miles from the mouth of the river, which they named James in honor of the king. The settlement was called Jamestown, and was founded on the 13th of May, 1607, on the same site chosen by De Ayllon in 1526.

**Captain John Smith.** — John Smith, one of the members of the council, was a remarkable man. He was energetic, a great boaster, who told marvellous stories about his exploits, and who did not think any task too hard for him to undertake. Despite his brusque ways, Smith was the most useful person in the colony. He was brave, not afraid to work, and ready to take any chances that promised good to the rest. His fame will long outlive that of any of his associates.

The belief was still general in Europe that if the streams entering the Atlantic were ascended, they would be found to connect with the South Sea or Pacific Ocean, and the council had been ordered to hunt for such a channel. Captain Smith spent a week looking for it. On his return to Jamestown, he found it had been attacked by the Indians during his absence, and they had killed one and wounded several of the settlers. The place was put in a condition for defence, and Newport sailed for England, June 21.

**Sufferings of the Colonists.** — Newport could not have left matters in a worse condition. The supply of food was scant, and the Indians showed so much hostility that no help was to be expected from them. The weather became suffocatingly hot, and the men drank so heavily of the unwholesome water that nearly all fell ill. Every man would have perished had not the natives been moved with pity. They dropped their bows and arrows and gave the starving settlers food, thus saving the settlement from passing out of existence.

Homesick and discouraged, the men quarrelled among them-

selves. When everything seemed to be going to ruin, Smith was placed at the head of affairs, and straightway they improved. He was not only wise and energetic, but unselfish. He knew, too, how to be stern. He gave all the well men to understand that every one who refused to work should not be allowed to eat, and he set the good example himself. He treated the Indians justly, and, as is always the case, they grew to respect him.



CAPTURE OF JOHN SMITH

**Smith and Pocahontas.** — At the beginning of winter Captain Smith set out on another search for a passage to the South Sea. He started up the Chickahominy with several craft, trading with the Indians on the way. When the water became too shallow for the boats, Smith entered a canoe with two of his men and two friendly Indians. He ordered those who stayed behind to keep in their boats and not to go to shore until he returned. They



disobeyed his orders, got into a fight with the natives, who killed two and then set out on the trail of Smith and the others.

They soon overtook the white men and attacked them. Although there were a large number of Indians, Smith would have beaten them off, had his companions stayed by him, but they ran off in the woods, and he was left to confront his enemies alone. Walking backward, he fired at them as fast as he could load and aim his cumbrous gun. He stretched two lifeless, and



POCAHONTAS SAVING THE LIFE OF JOHN SMITH

was still holding them off, when he sank to his knees in a bog. Before he could free himself, the Indians were upon him and made him prisoner.

He saved his life for the time by exciting their wonder with a small mariner's compass. They admired his bravery, too, and instead of putting him to death led him before their chief, Powhatan (pow-atan'). After a consultation, the chief decided that the white man should die.

Accordingly his hands were tied, and he was laid on his back, with his head resting on a large stone. Two Indians stepped forward, each with a huge club with which to dash out his brains.

At this fearful moment, Pocahontas, the young and loved daughter of Powhatan, rushed forward, threw herself on her knees before her father, and begged that the life of the prisoner might be spared. The heart of the stern old warrior was touched, and he declared that no one should harm the white man. Smith was set free, and then the Indians wished to adopt him. He refused, and finally was allowed to return to Jamestown.

This is the story as told by Smith years afterward. No history of Virginia would be complete without it, and yet it must be said that there are grave reasons for doubting its truth. It is a question whether such an incident ever took place.

**Smith's Further Services.** — Smith had been away from Jamestown for six weeks. Shortly after his return, when the colonists had been reduced to forty in number, Captain Newport arrived from England with over a hundred persons and a supply of provisions, farming utensils, and seeds. Smith spent a great part of the following summer in exploring the waters of Chesapeake Bay. When he returned, he was formally made president of the company, and governed with the same vigor and wisdom he had shown from the first.

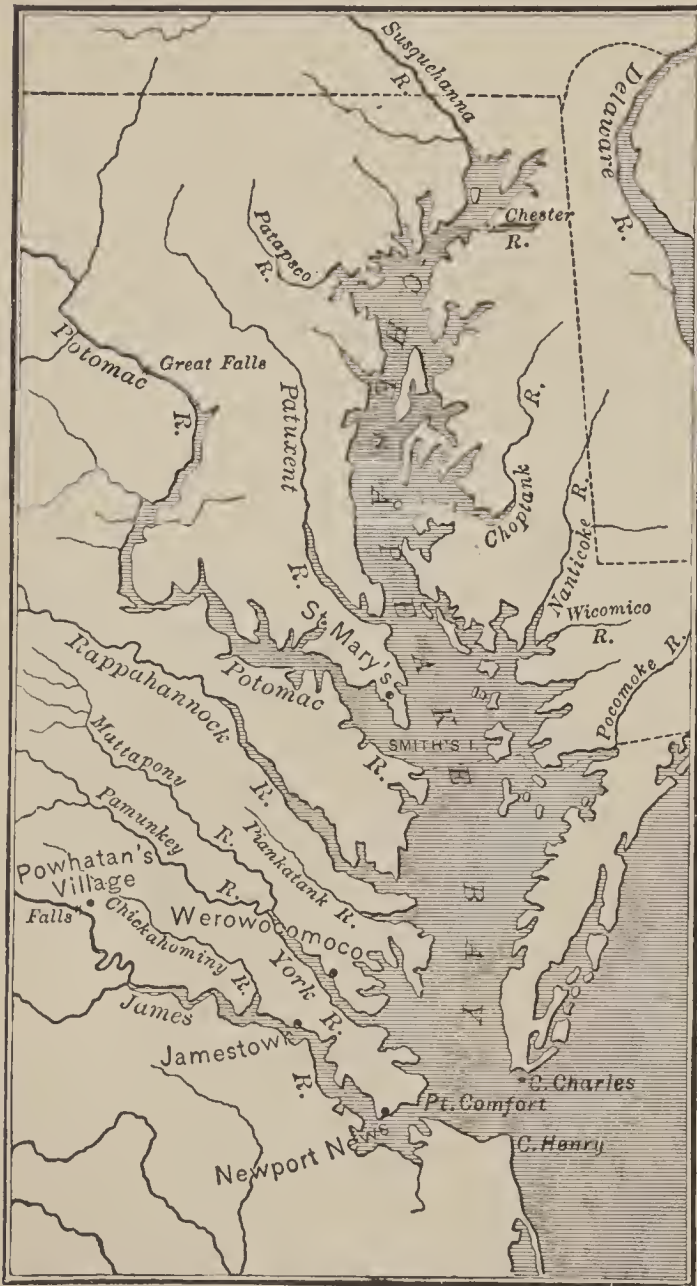
**A Second Charter.** — The London Council became convinced that a radical change was needed in the organization of the colony. A charter, giving the colonists enlarged powers, was granted by King James, May 23, 1609, and a fleet of nine vessels, carrying five hundred people, left England in the same month. Lord De la War was appointed captain-general and governor for life, but not being ready to leave home, Sir Thomas Gates was directed to assume control upon reaching Jamestown. The fleet was scattered by a tempest, and seven of the ships did not reach the Chesapeake until August. Upon one of the missing ships were Captain Newport, Admiral George Somers, and Sir Thomas Gates. Since it looked as if they had been lost at sea, Captain Smith remained at the head of affairs. Some time later he was frightfully injured by an explosion of gunpowder and was obliged to go to England for treatment. This ended his career in the New

World, and nothing can attest more strongly the value of his services than what befell Jamestown after his departure.

The "Starving Time." — Left to themselves, the settlers went from bad to worse. The men stopped work, killed and ate their

domestic animals, and thus soon deprived themselves of all supplies. The winter of 1609-10 was the severest known in the history of the colony. Strong men lay down and starved to death, until the dead outnumbered the living. Of the five hundred left by Smith, four hundred and forty perished within the following six months. Well has that awful period been named the "starving time" in the early history of Virginia.

In May some of the party that had been wrecked in the Bermudas arrived in Jamestown. They were horrified at what they saw. The few men still alive tottered about, wan,



POWHTAN'S COUNTRY

gaunt, and suffering the pangs of starvation. The new arrivals, never dreaming of anything of the kind, brought only a meagre supply of provisions. In this desperate plight, Gates decided to take the wretched sufferers to Newfoundland. Accordingly,



they were helped on board of the two pinnaces and the boats brought from the Bermudas, and the hopeless voyage was begun. This was on the 7th of June, 1610, on which day, therefore, it may be said no English colony was in existence in America.

But lo! at the mouth of the James they were boarded by a boat sent by Lord De la War, who had reached Point Comfort with an abundant supply of provisions. The same tide that bore the starving settlers out to sea helped to carry them back to Jamestown, where, two days later, Lord De la War anchored his three ships and was rowed ashore. He ruled sternly though justly, but was compelled soon to return to England because of feeble health. Other settlers arrived, and several new settlements were started.

**Prosperity.** — Prosperity seemed to have come to the colony. The London Council rewarded faithful services by granting lands to individuals. Tobacco had become so popular in England that the colonists made a good deal of money by raising it. Indeed they gave so much attention to its culture, thereby neglecting corn and other necessities, that the government had to limit its production by strict regulations.

**A Third Charter.** — A third charter was granted in 1611-12, by which the Bermuda Islands were added to the territory of the company. A lottery was established, which added thirty thousand pounds to the treasury of the council. At the end of three years, however, the lottery was abolished on the good ground that it was an injury to public morals.

**Pocahontas.** — Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhatan, became a warm friend of the whites and was a frequent visitor to Jamestown. Several times she warned the people of danger from the Indians, and she was beloved by all. John Rolfe, an Englishman, fell in love with the dusky maiden, and she became fond of him. The grim chief gave his consent to their marriage, and in the little structure at Jamestown, hewn from the rough timber of the woods, whose font was hollowed from the trunk of a tree, she uttered the responses in broken English as required by the rites of the Church of England. She was baptized under the



MARRIAGE OF POCAHONTAS



name of Rebecca, and in April, 1613, was married to Rolfe. As a result of this romantic union, Powhatan remained a firm friend of the white men throughout his life.

Some time later, Pocahontas and her husband visited England. She was treated with kindness and won the hearts of all by her modest deportment. She was received at court, and met her old friend, Captain John Smith. The meeting between them was affectionate. She stayed about a year, and while waiting to sail fell ill and died. She left an infant son, and from him many of the foremost citizens of Virginia to-day are proud to claim descent.

**Introduction of African Slavery.** — In 1619, a Dutch vessel arrived at Jamestown with twenty negroes that had been kidnapped on the Guinea coast of Africa. The settlers were in need of all the help they could get in raising tobacco, and they paid a good sum for the negroes. Thus the system of African slavery was introduced into our country.

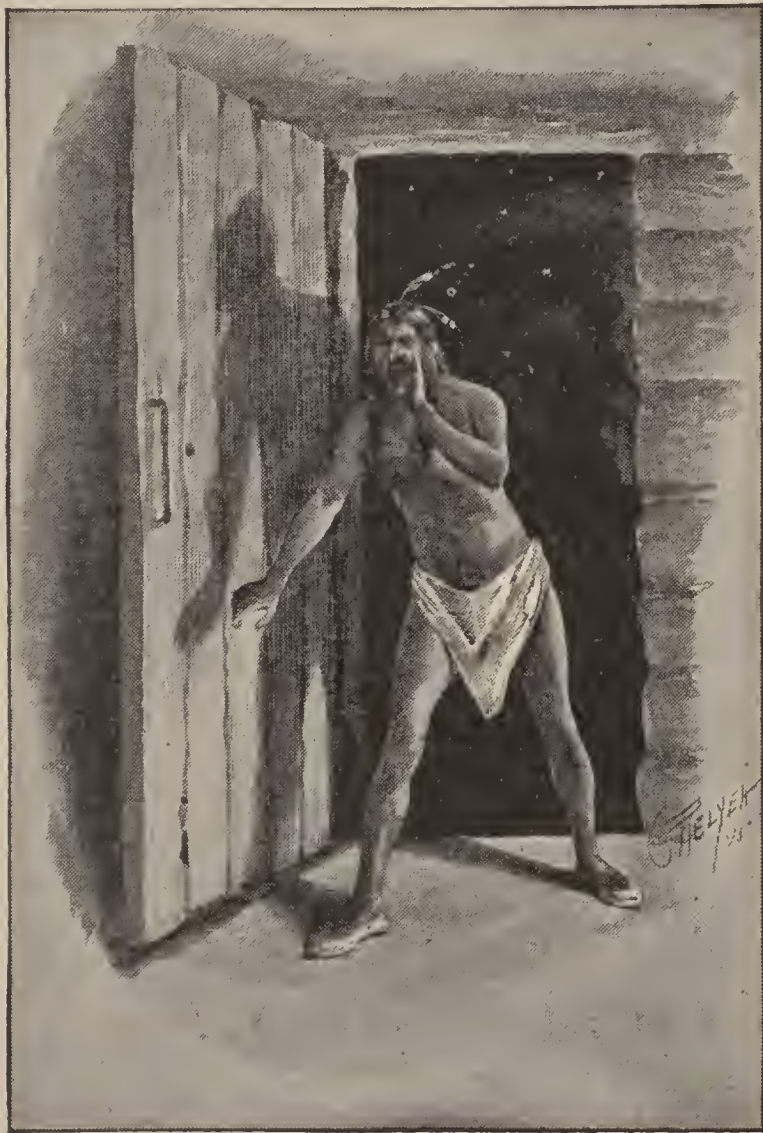
**The First Legislative Body in the New World.** — Other important events took place in that year. The London Company sent over one hundred excellent young women, who made the best of wives and proved true helpmates to their husbands. In accordance with the provisions of "The Great Charter," granted to Virginia the previous year, a local council was ordered, whose members were to be elected by the colonists. Eleven communities chose members of the body, which assembled at Jamestown, July 30, 1619. This was the first legislative assemblage that met in America. With the governor and council, it numbered twenty-two representatives, and was called the House of Burgesses. The laws which they made were not valid unless accepted by the company in London, while the rules of the company were not binding until accepted by the colonial assembly. These provisions were placed in a written constitution in 1621, and gradually copied by the other colonies.

It looked as if lasting prosperity had come to Virginia. Both sides of the James were lined with settlements for a distance of



a hundred miles. Every freeman had the right to vote. Religious toleration prevailed, and all the conditions were of the most favorable character.

**Massacres by the Indians.** — Powhatan, the friend of the settlers, died in 1618, and the chief who succeeded him spent years in plot-



THE WARNING

ting the destruction of all the white people in the country. On March 22, 1622, he and his warriors attacked the settlements so furiously that within a few hours four hundred colonists, including their wives and children, were killed. The eighty plantations were reduced to eight. All would have perished had not a converted Indian given Jamestown warning of what was coming. This was on the night before the attack, but it saved Jamestown and the nearest settlements.

The settlers turned upon the savages and for years hunted them down without mercy, until they were glad to make peace. During that time, and including the massacre itself, two thousand white people had been killed, and a greater number of Indians were slain.

**The Second Massacre.** — On April 18, 1644, the Indians made another massacre, in which between three and four hundred

of the colonists perished. The Virginians renewed the war of extermination, until again the red men sued for peace, ceded a large tract of land to their conquerors, and withdrew further into the wilderness.

**Virginia made a Royal Province.** — Previous to the last massacre, King James had become displeased with the way matters were going in America. He did not like the freedom of debate nor the bold manner in which his subjects expressed their sentiments. He therefore recalled his former charter, and in October, 1623, issued a much less liberal one. In July, 1624, the company was dissolved. It must be admitted, however, that the king made wise use of his power. He retained in office those who had been opposed to him, but while engaged in a number of excellent reforms the monarch died, March 27, 1625.

The new king, Charles, carried out the wishes of his father and won the good-will of the colonists by his liberality. Virginia continued to prosper, so that in 1648 she had ten ships trading with London, two with Bristol, twelve with Holland, and seven with New England, while her population had increased to thirty thousand.

During the civil war in England a great many of the Cavaliers emigrated to Virginia. Sir William Berkeley proved to be bigoted, and thanked God that there were no free schools or printing in the province. He became very tyrannous, and from 1660 to 1676 the assembly of Virginia prevented the election of any new members, the taxes grew to enormous proportions, trade fell into the hands of a few monopolists, and industry ceased.

**Bacon's Rebellion.** — The danger from the Indians became so threatening that the forts were put in a condition of defence, and in the spring of 1675 the settlers gathered a force to march against them. When they were about to start, Governor Berkeley disbanded them. The angered settlers accused the governor of favoring the Indians, that he might reserve the monopoly in the fur trade, and declared that if he would not protect them, they would protect themselves.

Outrages soon followed, and the governor still refused to take any action. Nathaniel Bacon, a brave and popular young planter, after his own plantation was attacked and two of his employees killed, called out the militia for the purpose of chastising the savages. Before moving, he sent to the governor a request for a commission, which was refused. Bacon then marched with his men, but was overtaken by a messenger with peremptory orders from Berkeley for him to disband his force. Bacon told his men that those who chose to obey the order could do so. So many left that he found himself with only fifty-seven soldiers.

The governor was in a fury, and calling together a troop of horse, started in pursuit of Bacon and his company. Before he could reach them, an insurrection broke out among the settlers to the south, and the alarmed governor galloped back to straighten out matters.

Reaching Jamestown, the governor found everything topsy-turvy. The citizens demanded a new election and a reduction of taxes, and Berkeley had to grant both. Meanwhile, Bacon delivered a crushing blow against the hostile Indians, and then disbanding his force went to his home.

Bacon was elected as a member of the new assembly. He made formal acknowledgment of his error in taking up arms, and the assembly punished him by electing him commander-in-chief. The governor refused to sign the commission. Bacon insisted, and presented himself at Jamestown, at the head of his soldiers, with a demand for permission to protect themselves against the Indians, who were again committing atrocities. Berkeley thumped his breast and again refused. Crossing the Chesapeake, he gathered a large number of followers among the many slaves, to whom he promised plenty of plunder as well as their freedom in repayment for their services.

Bacon and his men decided to accept the governor's flight from Jamestown as an abandonment of his office, and writs were issued for the election of an assembly to provide for a new government. Sir William, on the other side of the bay, was agreeably surprised



about this time by the arrival of some English ships. Reinforced by them, he set out again for Jamestown, to which place Bacon had just returned from a successful campaign against the Indians.

To prevent the town being used by the governor for shelter, the torch was applied and the place reduced to ruins. Among Bacon's friends were several who owned fine residences, and they set the example by applying the torch with their own hands.

Bacon was on the eve of triumph, when he was stricken by fever and died, October 1, 1676. No one competent to succeed him remained and his forces dispersed. Governor Berkeley hunted them



BURNING OF JAMESTOWN

down without mercy. He hanged twenty-two, three died in prison, while five sentenced to be executed escaped. In the following January, Berkeley was recalled. Even King Charles detested him for his cruelty, and he was so crushed by his disgrace that he lived but a short time.

**Subsequent Colonial History of Virginia.** — Virginia suffered at the hands of bad rulers, though a number were wise and excellent men, but her prosperity continued. In 1732, a colony from Pennsylvania settled near the present site of Winchester. Others followed and pushed beyond the mountains, some making their homes in the valley of the Monongahela. The population more than quadrupled during the first half of the eighteenth century. William Parks set up a printing press at Williamsburg, the capital, in 1738, and published a weekly newspaper. William Byrd, a wealthy citizen, laid out the towns of Richmond and Petersburg. Norfolk, Fredericksburg, and Falmouth were incorporated and new counties formed, the prosperity of the province never again receiving any serious check.

**TOPICS.** — The settlement of the thirteen original colonies; why Portugal took no part; the situation of Holland; the leading events in England during the seventeenth century; in France; the colonizing work of Spain; the London and Plymouth companies; their respective grants; the efforts made by the Plymouth Company; by the London Company; the founding of Jamestown; Captain John Smith; the search for a passage to the South Sea; sufferings of the colonists; the services of Smith; the story of Smith and Pocahontas; his further services.

The second charter for the colony; Lord De la War; the experience of his fleet; the accident to John Smith; the "starving time"; what saved the colony from destruction; prosperity of the colony; the third charter; the lottery; the marriage of Pocahontas; her visit to England and her death; introduction of African slavery; the first legislative body in the New World; the first massacre by the Indians; retaliation; the second massacre; how the Indians were punished; Virginia as a royal province; the Cavaliers; cause of Bacon's rebellion; its history; good and bad rulers of Virginia; settlement of Winchester; increase of population; first printing press at Williamsburg; other towns laid out; those that were incorporated; the continuous prosperity.

## CHAPTER VI

### THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW YORK

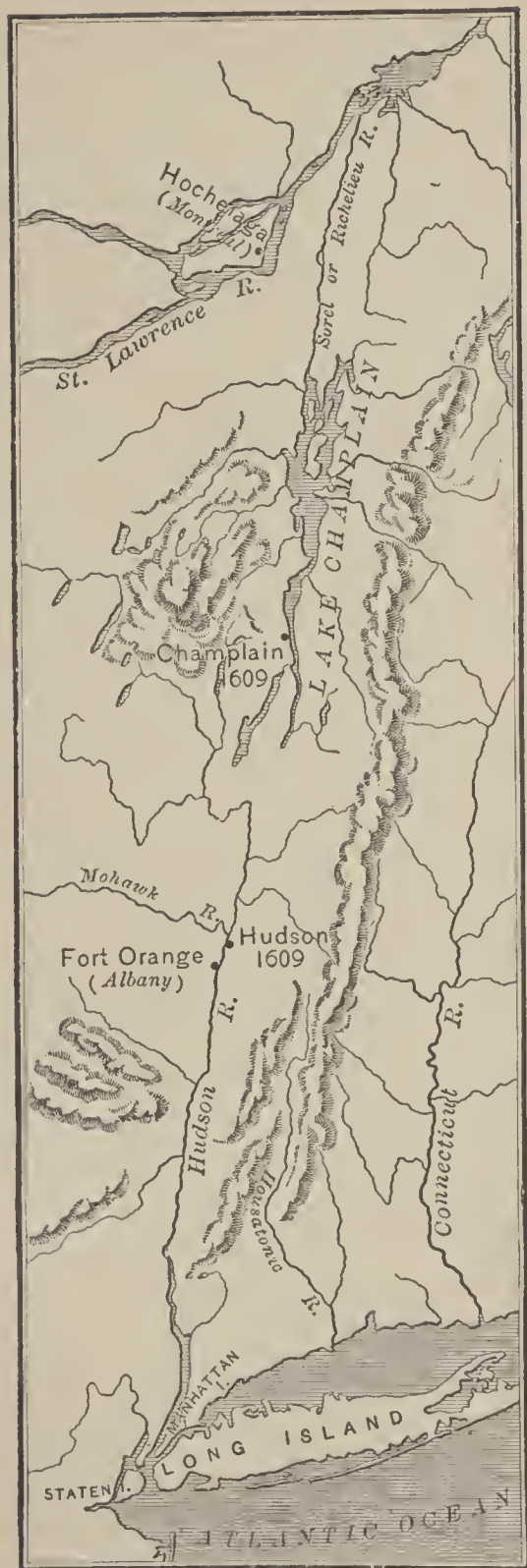


**I**N Search of a Shorter Route; Explorations by Henry Hudson. — The Dutch East India Company was formed, and employed Henry Hudson, an Englishman, to make search for a shorter route to India. In charge of the *Half Moon*, and with a crew of only twenty men, he sailed from Amsterdam, April 4, 1609. When he reached Nova Zembla, the vast quantities

of floating ice compelled him to turn back, and he headed to the southward. Touching at several points on the way, he sighted Cape Cod. Not knowing that it had already been named, both by Champlain and Gosnold, he called it New Holland. He continued southward to Chesapeake Bay, where, finding the English were ahead of him, he turned northward again, and dropped anchor, September 3, at Sandy Hook. There he stayed for one week, during which the crew made many visits to the neighboring land, shooting game and trading with the natives. Then he hoisted anchor and began a voyage up the Hudson.

It was repeating in a small way the experience of Columbus more than a century before. The Hudson is sometimes called the Rhine of America, because of its romantic and beautiful scenery. The voyage was a continual delight to the navigators, while the Indians peeped out from among the trees along the banks in wonder and awe. The *Half Moon* sailed so slowly, that at the end of ten days it had ascended the noble stream only a hundred miles. Hudson kept on until he reached the present





HISTORIC WATERWAYS

site of Albany, his smaller boats going some distance further. The men landed at different points and were treated well by the natives, to whom they showed kindness in return. The narrowing width of the river told Hudson, however, that he never could find the short route to Asia by following that course.

Having finished his task, Hudson returned to Dartmouth, England, whence he sent an account of what he had done to his employers at Amsterdam. The Dutch lost no time in setting up their claim to the new territory, for which they had a good title. The voyage so added to the fame of Hudson, that he was now sent out by England to make one more effort to discover the northwest passage, as it was called. He took with him a crew of twenty-three men, among whom was his son. This was in 1610.

On this voyage Hudson discovered the bay and strait which bear his name. Dreadful sufferings came to all who were compelled to spend the winter in that arctic country. His desperate crew mutinied and set him, his

son, and eight others, four of whom were sick, adrift in an open boat. None was ever heard of again.



DISCOVERY OF THE HUDSON

**Dutch Settlement and Rule in New Netherland.** — Holland, as we have learned, was more eager for trade than for territory. During the three years following Hudson's exploration of the stream, the Dutch ships sailed up and down the river, bartering with the natives. A profitable fur trade was thus built up. The headquarters were on Manhattan Island, where, in 1613, stood a fort and several cabins. This was the foundation of the present metropolis of America.

The Dutch did not neglect to explore the surrounding country. They sailed over Long Island Sound, Narragansett Bay, and some of the waters of New Jersey. The States General of Holland, in 1615, granted a charter to a company of New Amsterdam merchants, by which they were given a monopoly for three years of the trade of New Netherland, which was the name of the territory between Virginia and Canada (then called New France), or from the fortieth to the forty-fifth degree of latitude. This included all New England. A settlement was planted the same year on a small island just below where Albany now stands.

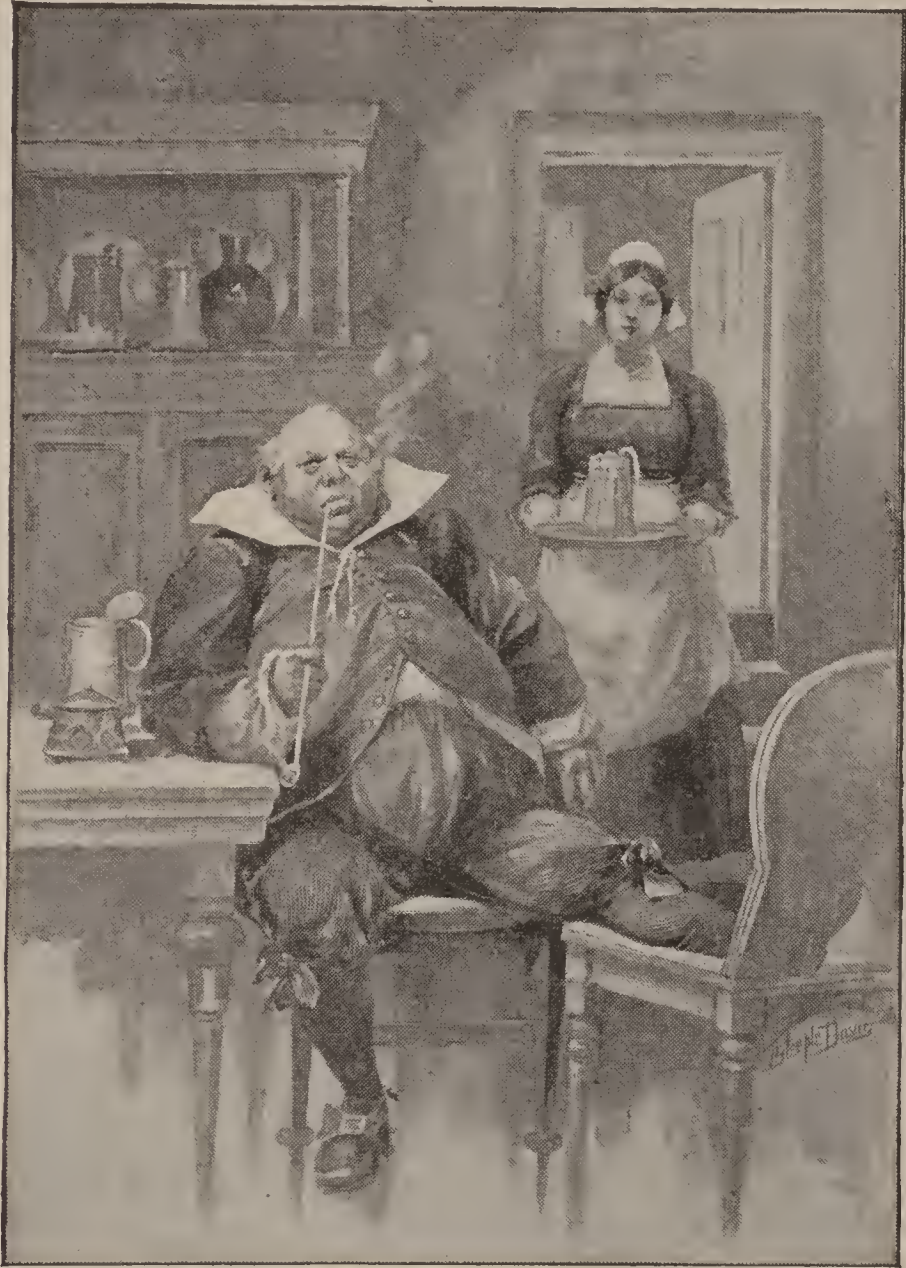
The West India Company, a corporation with vast powers, assumed charge of New Netherland. In March, 1623, it sent out the *New Netherland*, on which were several officers of the company, besides a number of settlers who were known as Walloons, and who had been driven from their homes by religious persecution. The first director of the company, Captain Cornelius Jacobsen May, had charge of the ship and landed them near the fort on Castle Island. The thrifty people set to work at once.

The Walloons built Fort Orange, on a part of the present site of Albany, and some of the company settled there. The colony was governed by Captain May until the close of 1624, then by William Verhult, and Peter Minuit took charge in 1626. Minuit may be considered the first real governor. He made Manhattan the chief place of New Netherland and brought all the settlements under one government. He bought Manhattan Island from the Indians for trinkets worth about twenty-four dollars.

Manhattan grew so slowly that in 1628 there were less than



three hundred persons on the whole island. The frugal people drove a profitable trade with the Indians, but in 1629 the West India Company took a step that caused a great deal of trouble in



WOUTER VAN TWILLER

later years. They decreed that every person who planted in New Netherland a colony of fifty persons over fifteen years of age, should become a patroon of the tract of which he took possession. By patroon was meant the sole owner of the land, and ruler of the people who settled upon it. The patroon could be a tyrant if he

chose, while the colonists on his lands were no better off than slaves. These rights were to continue to him and his heirs forever.

The greedy patroons snatched up large tracts, not only in New York, but in the present States of Delaware and New Jersey. The quarrels which soon followed resulted in the recall of Minuit, the



STUYVESANT'S APPEAL

governor, on the charge that he had favored the patroons. Two years later, Wouter Van Twiller arrived.

This man was a numskull and the part he played was that of burlesque. He would sit for hours smoking his long-stemmed pipe, drinking from his big mug of beer, while the thoughts that took shape in his sodden brain were as to how he could make money for himself or find means to gratify his gross taste for pleasure. William Kieft (keeft), his successor, was a man of strong sense and iron will, but was cruel to the Mohawk Indians, who, in re-

venge, ravaged the frontier of New Netherland.

Peter Stuyvesant (stive'sant) became governor in 1646 and was the ablest of all the Dutch rulers. He re-established friendly relations with the Indians, broke up the monopoly that had existed in trade, and took active measures to expel the English, who were entering his territory. Stuyvesant was called "Old Silver Leg,"



because of the silver rings about his wooden leg. He was hot-tempered and berated the enemies of his country and those who did not agree with his views. He was honest and brave, though often harsh to the verge of tyranny.

**Capture of New Amsterdam by the English.** — Charles II claimed the whole country between the parallels of  $35^{\circ}$  and  $45^{\circ}$  north latitude on the ground that it was granted to the London and Plymouth companies three years before Hudson saw the river named for him. The king sent a fleet across the Atlantic, which appeared off New Amsterdam and demanded the surrender of the town. Stuyvesant stormed and brandished his cane and called upon the citizens to rally and drive out the rogues, but the people had grown tired of Stuyvesant's rule and were quite willing to live under the English. So the surrender was made August 29, 1664, and the name of the town was changed to New York.

**Recapture of New York by the Dutch.** — At the time of the surrender, the place contained about fifteen hundred inhabitants. The Dutch welcomed their new rulers, who treated them liberally, and the prosperity of the town continued. By and by, France and England declared war against The Netherlands and unexpectedly a Dutch fleet of twenty-three ships, carrying sixteen hundred men, anchored in the outer bay of New York and demanded its surrender. The town was in a poor condition to defend itself, and, though the small force did its best, it was obliged to submit. New York came into the possession of the Dutch again in August, 1672.

**Cession of New Netherland to England.** — The war between England and The Netherlands ended in 1674. By the terms of the treaty, the Dutch were obliged to cede to England all their possessions in America. New Netherland, therefore, changed hands again and remained an English colony until the Revolution. Edmund Andros was the first governor, and, although somewhat of a tyrant, the colony prospered during the eight years that he remained at the head of affairs. Being appointed governor of New England also, he left Francis Nicholson, a lieutenant of the army, to act as governor of New York.



News reached New York on the 26th of April, 1689, of the arrest of Andros in Boston. In perplexity as to what he should do, Nicholson called the council together. It was decided to fortify the place against the French, with whom England was at war. An energetic man was needed to take the lead, and Jacob Leisler, one of the militia captains, was selected. At his request,



SIGNING LEISLER'S DEATH WARRANT

a large number of the soldiers signed a pledge to support whomever the Prince of Orange should appoint as governor. Word was soon received from William and Mary confirming for the time all Protestants holding office in the colonies. Nicholson was so distrusted by the colonists that he went back to England, without attempting to resume office, and Leisler, against the wishes of the council, continued to act as governor.

Colonel Sloughter, a favorite of King William, was appointed

governor of New York, and arrived March 19, 1691. Leisler was brought to trial for murder and treason. He was found guilty, but Governor Sloughter refused to sign his death warrant until the commands of the king should become known. The enemies of Leisler, however, succeeded in getting the governor intoxicated at a dinner in his honor, and he was persuaded to sign the fatal paper. Poor Leisler was hanged on the 16th of May, 1691, the act, as was afterward declared, being without the slightest justification.

The subsequent history of New York down to the Revolution, was uneventful. She took an active part in the colonial wars, the particulars of which we shall learn in another place.

**TOPICS.** — The explorations by Henry Hudson ; his death ; what Holland sought in the New World ; the first settlements on Manhattan Island ; other parts visited by the Dutch ; the charter granted by the States General of Holland ; the settlement below Albany ; the West India Company ; the *New Netherland* ; the Walloons ; the first director of the company ; Fort Orange ; William Verhult ; Peter Minuit ; the patroon system ; Wouter Van Twiller ; Peter Stuyvesant ; capture of New Amsterdam by the English ; its recapture by the Dutch : cession of New Netherland to England ; Governor Andros ; Francis Nicholson ; Jacob Leisler ; Colonel Sloughter ; the temperance lesson ; subsequent history of New York.

## CHAPTER VII

### THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW ENGLAND



'Welcome Englishman!'

**THE First Settlements in Canada.** — The French, during the early years of the seventeenth century, explored the coasts of Maine, Nova Scotia, and the shores of the St. Lawrence, making a few feeble attempts at settlement, but mostly without success. They claimed the whole region and named it New France. One of the French explorers was Samuel de Champlain (shamplain), who penetrated to the lake that bears his name. He cruised along the New England coast, and with De Monts (mōn) made a settlement at Port Royal, Nova Scotia, in 1605, which was the first permanent French settlement in America. The colony placed by Champlain at Quebec in 1608, was the first permanent French settlement in Canada.

**Early English Explorations in New England.** — Among the early visitors to New England was our old friend Captain John Smith. He came out with two ships in 1614, made careful observations of the coast, drew a good map, and named the section New England, by which it will always be known. He named also the Charles River, between Boston and Charlestown; a place near the present site of Boston he called Boston, and first applied the name of Plymouth to the spot where the Pilgrims afterward landed. Thus the fame of that remarkable man is not confined to Virginia, the scene of his principal labors.

King James I granted a patent to the Plymouth Company in 1620, comprehending all the land between the Pacific and the Atlantic, lying between the fortieth and forty-eighth parallels of



north latitude. This to-day includes British America, New England, New York, the upper half of New Jersey, most of Pennsylvania, and all the States to the westward of them. Surely here was plenty of room to grow up with the country.

**The Puritans.** — Bitter religious persecution prevailed in England at that time. Many thought the Church of England so corrupt that they withdrew from it. They were called Separatists or Independents, while those who aimed at reform within the church



SIGNING THE COMPACT

were called Puritans. To escape persecution many Independents removed to Holland; but, though they were well treated, they did not feel at home among those who were not their countrymen, who spoke another language and followed different customs. It was natural, therefore, that they should turn their thoughts to the New World. They opened negotiations with the London Company and completed them in 1619. Two vessels, the *Mayflower* of one hundred and eighty tons, and the *Speedwell* of sixty tons burden, were provided for those who wished to make the voyage across the Atlantic.



LANDING OF MYLES STANDISH

The *Speedwell* proved so unseaworthy that at Southampton the passengers were changed to the *Mayflower*, which sailed from Plymouth on the 6th of September, 1620. Besides her own crew, she carried one hundred and two persons with which to begin the settlement in the New World. On the passage there were one birth and one death, so that the original number remained. On the way across the ocean, the forty-one adult male emigrants signed a compact by which they pledged themselves to enact good laws and to submit to and obey them.

**Landing of the Pilgrims.** — The voyage was a rough one, but on the 9th of November the emigrants, who are known as Pilgrims, because of their wanderings, sighted the bleak lands of Cape Cod. Two days later they dropped anchor in Cape Cod harbor, now Provincetown. Before landing, John Carver was chosen governor for one year. In doubt whether they had fixed upon the right spot, Captain Myles Standish and sixteen men landed to look around. It was decided to search further, and a

month was spent in cruising along the coast. On Monday, December 11 (Old Style, or December 21, New Style), Myles Standish and a party of men were sent ashore again to examine the neighborhood.

Although those on the *Mayflower* did not follow until a couple of weeks later, the date named is the true anniversary of the landing of the Pilgrims. The erection of a storehouse for goods and



MEMORIAL ON PLYMOUTH ROCK

a small number of wooden huts was begun on Christmas Day. High, strong palisades were set around these to keep off wild beasts and wild men. The ground was partitioned, and the company divided into nineteen families; laws for civil and military government were adopted, and thus was laid the foundation of the first permanent settlement in New England.

**Life at Plymouth.** — These pioneers were hardy, God-fearing men, and those qualities were needed in the severe task they had taken upon themselves. It was not until March 21 that sufficient



accommodations were provided on shore for all, and in the meantime one-half the people had died. Governor Carver passed away in April, and his widow did not long survive him. William Bradford was chosen governor, and held the office for many years. To his ability and vigor was due in a great measure the success of the colony.



"WELCOME, ENGLISHMEN"

The people were astonished one day in March, when an Indian walked out of the woods and called to them:

"Welcome, Englishmen! welcome, Englishmen!"

He was treated kindly. His name was Samoset, and he belonged to the Wampanoag tribe of Indians. He had picked up a few words of English from some fishermen whom he saw years before on the coast of Maine. A few days later he came back with Massasoit, chief of his tribe. He in turn was won by the

kindness of the English,—so much so, indeed, that he made a treaty with them, by which both parties agreed to avoid mutual harm and to help each other against all enemies. This treaty was not broken for fifty years and caused nine other sachems to submit to the English king.

As spring advanced, the health of the colonists improved and their prospects brightened. The Indians taught them how to cultivate maize, and they planted a great deal of it. The *Mayflower* returned to England, and in the following November the ship *Fortune* arrived with thirty-five colonists, who, like the others, were of the right sort to make the best of pioneers.

There were some Indians who were not friendly. The Narragansetts, who, it is said, were powerful enough to put five thousand warriors in the field, looked upon the white men as invaders of their hunting grounds. They not only refused to sign a treaty of peace, but sent a bundle of arrows, wrapped around with a rattlesnake skin, to Governor Bradford. Accepting this for what it was intended,—a declaration of war,—the doughty governor stuffed the rattlesnake skin full of powder and balls and returned it. The Narragansetts knew what that meant, and decided to defer a declaration of war.

Captain Myles Standish reminds us of Captain John Smith. He was equally brave, and never hesitated to expose his life for the sake of those around him. He was at the head of military affairs, and no better selection could have been made. He was small of stature, yellow-bearded, fiery-tempered, and ready at all



GOV. BRADFORD'S MONUMENT



times for a fight. He was not a member of the Puritan church, but he liked the people for their honest ways and their moral, upright lives.

Friends continued to arrive at intervals from across the sea, and the colony prospered. No doubt other small settlements were made along the coast, though there is little trustworthy information about them.

**Massachusetts Bay Colony.** — The Massachusetts Bay Colony was formed of Puritans, some of them wealthy, and all of high character. They made a settlement in 1628 near Salem. Boston was founded two years later by Governor Winthrop, and between the years 1630 and 1640 twenty thousand people settled in Massachusetts. The various colonies scattered throughout the province all seemed to be on the road to prosperity.

**Religious Persecution in New England.** — It would be thought that after the Puritans had suffered so much from persecution



SETTLEMENT OF RHODE ISLAND

because of their religious belief, they would be charitable toward those who held different views. But such was not the fact. Among the passengers who arrived in 1631 were Roger Williams and his wife. They landed at Boston and settled in Salem. Williams was a preacher of ability, but was too advanced in his views for those around him. The offended people decided to arrest and send him back to England, but he escaped by fleeing to the Narragansett Indians, where he was made welcome. They gave him some land, and in the spring he began building a house. He was joined by several friends, but

because of their religious belief, they would be charitable toward those who held different views. But such was not the fact. Among the passengers who arrived in 1631 were Roger Williams and his wife. They landed at Boston and settled in Salem. Williams was a preacher of ability, but was too





ROGER WILLIAMS PLEADING WITH CANONICUS

as they were within the limits of the Plymouth grant, they moved further west and began a settlement which in time became the great city of Providence. The rock on which he stepped is still known as Roger Williams's Rock.

**Settlement of Connecticut.** — Just before this date (1636) there was a large emigration from Massachusetts to the Connecticut valley. The real settlement was begun in the autumn of 1635, by the son of Governor Winthrop, known in history as John Winthrop the younger. He arrived with a commission as governor of Connecticut, under the patent of Lord Say, Lord Brooke, John Hampden, John Pym, and others. He built a strong fort at Saybrook, and held it against the threats of the Dutch. That year three thousand emigrants arrived from Massachusetts, and Hartford was founded. Windsor and Wethersfield were started soon afterward, and Springfield was planted further up the river.

**Destruction of the Pequot Indians.** — The Pequot Indians began committing outrages upon the settlers. A partial punishment only emboldened them, and they plotted to destroy all the white people in the colony. They sent messengers to the neighboring tribes and urged them to unite in the terrible campaign. Roger Williams learned from his friends the Narragansetts of the peril, and sent a warning to Governor Winthrop. The governor begged him to do what he could to thwart the work of the emissaries. Williams made haste to comply, and by pleading with Canonicus, who seemed on the point of yielding, kept the Narragansetts out of the plot. The Pequots were incensed by their failure, but determined to undertake the work without help from others.

Accordingly they attacked the exposed settlers. Connecticut begged Massachusetts and Plymouth to help her, and a strong force under Captain Mason assailed the Pequot stronghold on the evening of May 25, 1636. The fort stood on high ground, on the bank of the Mystic River, and was very strong. The circular enclosure was more than an acre in extent and was surrounded by palisades a dozen feet high. The attack was made two hours before sunrise. When it ended, the wigwams within





DESTRUCTION OF THE PEQUOTS

had been burned to the ground and fully one thousand Pequots slain. The campaign was pressed without mercy in all directions, and at its conclusion the Pequots as a tribe no longer existed.

**Founding of Harvard College and setting up of the First Printing-press in America.** — The order of time requires mention of a matter in pleasing contrast to that which has just been told. While the Pequot war was raging, in October, 1636, the general court at Boston gave by vote four hundred pounds toward establishing a place for superior education. The Rev. John Harvard left his estate, worth about double the sum named, for the erection of a building at Cambridge,—then Newton,—three miles from Boston. He died shortly afterward, and the college was named in his honor. It was opened in 1638 and incorporated in 1650. A printing-press was attached to the college in 1639, and for a number of years was the only one in America. The first book printed was a collection of sermons.



**Settlement of New Hampshire and Maine.** — Although the region now partly composing the States of New Hampshire and Maine was the earliest known in New England, it was settled more slowly than the other portions. In 1623 the Plymouth Company granted to Sir Ferdinando Gorges and Captain John Mason all the territory between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers, limiting it at the north by the St. Lawrence and westward by the Great Lakes. The gentlemen named their grant Laconia, and divided it in 1631, Mason taking the western part and calling it New Hampshire, and Gorges the eastern part, which after a time became known as Maine. The majority preferred the government of Massachusetts, and in 1641 New Hampshire came under the jurisdiction of that province. Mason opposed this, and applied to the courts. The decisions were in his favor, but the people would not submit. So, to end the strife, Charles II made New Hampshire a royal province in 1679.

Mason bequeathed his land title to his two sons, and they sold it to Samuel Allen of London, who had received a commission to govern the province. Litigation continued among the heirs until 1715, when it ended because of the death of the principal litigant, and was never renewed.

**Formation of the United Colonies of New England.** — In May, 1643, a general court was held in Boston, at which two commissioners each from Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven were present, while Massachusetts, because of its prominence, was represented by the governor, two magistrates, and three deputies. The deliberations of the body resulted in the formation of the United Colonies of New England. They formed a league for defence and offence and mutual aid and advice upon all proper occasions. The present State of Maine was added to Massachusetts in 1652–1653, and the league, confined to the four colonies named, lasted until 1684.

**The Providence Plantations.** — Roger Williams visited England in 1644 and secured a charter which united the towns of Providence, Portsmouth, and Newport into a single community, by



Bradley & Poates, Engrs, N.Y.

SETTLEMENTS IN THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES

73

the name of the "Incorporation of Providence Plantations, in the Narragansett Bay, in New England." It was not until 1663, however, that a charter was obtained, extinguishing all those that preceded it, and the province was established under the name of "Rhode Island and Providence Plantations."

**Persecution of the Quakers.** — In July, 1656, a vessel arrived at Boston from the Barbadoes, bringing among the passengers two Quaker women. The colonists, who heartily disliked the sect, drove the two away, but some weeks later another vessel came into the same port with five male and four female Quakers. They were hardly given time to set foot on shore, when they were shipped to England. Convinced that these people would continue coming, Massachusetts persuaded the general courts of the United Colonies to pass cruel laws against them. The persecutions continued, until four Quakers had suffered death because of their faith. After this the laws were made less rigorous, and finally the persecution ceased.

**King Philip's War.** — Massasoit, the Wampanoag chieftain, remained a stanch friend of the English until his death in 1660. The oldest son of Massasoit dying, the other, named Pometacom, or Philip, succeeded him as chief. He was one of the famous Indians of history, a remarkable man, and as bitter an enemy of the white people as ever lived.

The real causes of King Philip's war are not clearly known. No doubt he was treated harshly by the whites, but it is probable that his soul was fired by the wild dream of driving the invaders from the hunting grounds of his race. He grew angered at the continuous distrust shown toward him, and let it become known that he meant to take the war-path.

The alarm became so general, that the 24th of June, 1675, was appointed as a day of fasting and prayer that the terrors of the threatened war might be averted. At Swansea, while the people were returning from church, they were fired upon by the Indians, and one was killed and several wounded. Two of the neighbors started to run for a surgeon, but both were shot down and six



others were slain. Several houses and barns were burned, when the Indians fled before they could be punished.

The New England settlements were so scattered that they were exposed to similar attacks. Philip struck quick and terrible blows, and some of the occurrences were of the most thrilling character. Those were the days when the New Englanders car-



ATTACK ON SWANSEA

ried their guns with them to church and stacked them outside, while a sentinel paced back and forth during service. Perhaps the zealous preacher, at the end of an hour or more, and just when he was becoming fairly warmed with his sermon, was interrupted by the crack of the sentinel's musket. Instantly the Bible was closed, down rushed the minister from the pulpit, and he was among the first of the throng hurrying outside to catch up his gun and prove that he was a loyal member of the church "militant."

A strange incident took place at Hadley, Connecticut, on the 1st of September, which was fast day. The attack of the Indians was so furious that the settlers were driven into the meeting-house, where the women and children had taken refuge. When all seemed lost, a tall, military man, with long, grizzled beard, suddenly appeared among the panic-stricken people, sword in hand. He wielded the weapon with marked effect, placed himself at the head of the men, called upon them to follow, and,



COLONEL GOFFE TO THE RESCUE

charging the Indians, scattered them in every direction. Then the stranger vanished as unaccountably as he had appeared.

This friend in need, it is said, was Colonel Goffe, the regicide, who, having escaped from England, was living in hiding at the house of Mr. Russell near Hadley. Nothing could have been more natural than that he should rush to the help of the settlers when he saw their great peril.

The people became convinced that the war could never be brought to a close except by a crushing campaign. Steps were taken to that end, and on December 19, 1675, the Narragansett stronghold at South Kingston, Rhode Island, was attacked by a





DEATH OF KING PHILIP



strong force. This defence, one of the strongest ever known among the Indians, contained between three and four thousand warriors and their families. It was captured and burned, more than seven hundred savages being killed, while the assailants lost about a hundred.

The settlers steadily gained ground, and finally Philip was run down in a swamp near the foot of Mount Hope. It was surrounded, and a party entered to drive out the chief and his warriors. Philip bounded to his feet on the approach of the soldiers and dashed toward a spot where a white man and a friendly Indian were on guard. The white man's gun missed fire, but the warrior sent a bullet through the heart of Philip, who, with a shriek, leaped in the air, fell headlong into a pool of water, and never stirred afterward.

Hostilities did not fully cease for six months. From the beginning to the close of King Philip's war six hundred white men were killed and many more wounded; thirteen towns were destroyed and five hundred buildings burned, but the power of the Indians in southern New England was broken forever.

**Massachusetts made a Royal Province.** — Massachusetts disputed with England for a long time over the right to govern herself, with the result that in 1684 she lost her charter. Charles II died in 1685, and James II, his successor, sent Sir Edmund Andros out the following year as governor-general of all the New England provinces, which were united in a single royal province. We have learned that Andros had already served as governor of New York and New Jersey and was not liked.

One source of dispute between the colonies and England was the Navigation Act. This compelled the settlers to carry on their commerce in English vessels and required Virginia to send all her tobacco to England. It bore hard upon New England also, and she violated its provisions continually.

**The Charter Oak.** — Andros, as was expected, carried matters with a high hand. He crushed opposition and brought Rhode Island to terms. Connecticut, however, was defiant. His mes-

sage to the governor demanding the surrender of the charter was not obeyed. The angry Andros appeared at Hartford in October, 1687, at the head of sixty soldiers, resolved to take the document by force.

Assured of success, he was willing to let the members of the court talk awhile, though they could have had no hope of shaking his resolution. He sat at the head of the table and listened to their arguments until the afternoon drew to a close. Then, when it was dark, the candles were brought in.

During all this time the precious charter lay in a box on the table, in sight of every one. At last Andros grew tired and ordered the charter to be handed to him. At that instant, in obedience to a signal, all the candles were blown out. A few minutes later they were relighted, but when the governor looked around, nothing was to be seen of the document. A brief search made it clear it was not in the room. During the temporary darkness, Captain Wadsworth slipped out of doors with the box and quietly thrust it into the hollow of an oak growing near. There it lay undisturbed for several years. The tree became famous as the "Charter Oak," and was preserved with great care until 1856, when a violent storm shattered it to fragments.

The hiding of the charter did Connecticut no good, for she was obliged to submit to the rule of Andros, which happily did not last long. In April, 1689, news reached Boston that James II had been dethroned, and with the news came that of the proclamation of William, Prince of Orange, when he landed in England as king. The news caused great excitement. Andros was promptly deprived of power and recalled to England, though, as told elsewhere, he turned up again on this side of the Atlantic some years later.

**King William's War.** — War broke out between France and England in 1689 and lasted until 1697. It naturally involved the colonies in this country, for it will be remembered that the French had settled Canada. They were wise enough to cultivate the friendship of the Indians, who helped them to desolate our

frontiers. It was determined in retaliation to invade Canada. Sir William Phipps set out with a large fleet, but returned without achieving much success, while the land force did nothing at all. The war continued in a desultory way, when, as we have learned, a treaty of peace was signed in 1697.

**The Salem Witchcraft Delusion.**—Two hundred years ago nearly everybody believed in witchcraft. We can afford to smile in these days at the superstition of our ancestors, but if we had



WITCHCRAFT DELUSION: SCENE IN COURT

lived in Salem, Massachusetts, in 1692, we should have felt like anything but smiling. Cotton Mather, the most famous preacher of colonial times, had more to do than any one else in spreading the hideous delusion.

The craze began in 1688, when some little girls were scared into convulsions by an Irish woman, who was accused of witchcraft and hanged.

Then it seemed as if everybody took leave of his senses. Some of the cases were most pitiful. Christian mothers were torn from their families and suffered disgraceful death; children were left helpless, scorned, and heartbroken; gentle, meek ministers were executed, and sorrow and woe were everywhere. Twenty-eight persons in all were sentenced to death, of whom nineteen were hanged and one had his life crushed out of him. A good many saved themselves by confessing they were wizards or witches.



By the close of September, 1692, besides those put to death, fifty-five had been tortured or frightened into making confessions, a hundred and fifty were in prison, and two hundred were under accusation. When the delusion reached the point that no one was safe, the people came to their senses. Reaction set in, and most of the leaders in the persecutions were at a loss to understand how they ever came to act as they did. Judge Sewall, one of those that had condemned the victims to death, rose trembling to his feet in church and read a recantation. Once every year afterward, to the close of his life, he shut himself in his room and spent the day in fasting and prayer, as a penance for the awful mistake of his life. The Salem jurors of 1692 published an abject confession and humbly asked the forgiveness of God and the surviving sufferers. The witchcraft delusion will always remain one of the darkest blots in the early history of New England.

**Queen Anne's War.** — Queen Anne's war was brought about by war between France and Spain on one hand and England on the other. It began in 1702 and ended in 1713. The powerful confederation of Indians in New York, known as the Iroquois or Six Nations, because of their treaty with France took no part in the hostilities. As a consequence, the New England frontier suffered the most. At Deerfield, Massachusetts, the Indians hacked a hole with their tomahawks in the door of the principal house, where a number of the people had taken refuge, and one of the warriors thrust his musket through and shot a woman who was in the act of rising from bed.

A formidable invasion by sea and land was planned in the summer of 1711. A fourth of the vessels were wrecked when a short way up the St. Lawrence. As a consequence, the land forces retreated, and the invasion came to naught. The only thing done by the colonists was during the preceding year, when they captured Port Royal and changed its name to Annapolis. The treaty of peace between the contending nations ceded Acadia (now Nova Scotia) to England.



ATTACK ON DEERFIELD

**The First Newspapers in America.** — The first issue of anything resembling a newspaper in this country was *Publick Occurrences, both Foreign and Domestic*. Benjamin Harris brought it out in Boston, in September, 1690, but never issued a second number, because the royal authorities would not license it. The pioneer paper is generally conceded to be the *Boston News Letter*, published by John Campbell in 1704. The next was the *The Gazette*, published in Boston by William Brooker, in December, 1719. On the next day Andrew Bradford issued the *American Weekly Mercury* in Philadelphia. James Franklin brought out the *New England Courant* in August, 1721. It was in this office that his famous brother Benjamin learned to set type. The first paper published in New York city was the *New York Gazette*, put to press by William Bradford, October 23, 1725. The first daily was the *Daily Advertiser*, which appeared in Philadelphia in 1785.

**King George's War.** — War began between England and France in 1744. The French colonies in America learned of it first, and, moving rapidly, captured the island of Canso, off the eastern coast of Nova Scotia, burned the fort, and made the garrison prisoners. They attacked, but failed to capture Placentia in Newfoundland and Annapolis in Nova Scotia.

The fortress of Louisburg was one of the strongest in the world. France spent ten million dollars and labored for twenty-five years to build it, but, impregnable as it seemed, the New England colonies determined to capture it. The land forces were helped by a powerful fleet, and the siege lasted from May 11, 1745, to the 17th of June following, when the fortress surrendered. In the provinces the bells were set ringing and rejoicing was everywhere. Even England was illuminated with bonfires, and France could hardly credit the astounding news; but when peace was made in April, 1748, Louisburg was given back to France.

**TOPICS.** — The first permanent French settlement in America; in Canada; the early English explorations in New England; what was done by Captain John Smith; the grant to the Plymouth Company; the Puritans; their emigration to America; landing of the Pilgrims; life at Plymouth; the first and second governors; the visit of Samoset; prosperity of the colony; the Narragansetts; Captain Myles Standish; other settlements.

Massachusetts Bay Colony; its prosperity; religious persecution; Roger Williams; settlement of Connecticut; the founding of Hartford and other towns; the plot of the Pequots; the services of Roger Williams; the destruction of the Pequots; founding of Harvard College; the first printing-press in America; New Hampshire and Maine; the grants to Gorges and Mason; subsequent history of New Hampshire; of Maine; formation of the United Colonies of New England; the Providence Plantations; persecution of the Quakers; King Philip; the causes of his war; the attack at Swansea; church services in those times; the strange incident at Hadley; crushing defeat of the Narragansetts; death of Philip; the deaths and destruction caused by the war; Massachusetts as a royal province; the incident of the Charter Oak; the end of Andros's rule; King Williams's war; the Salem witchcraft delusion; extent of the craze; Queen Anne's war; the attempt to invade Canada; the first newspaper in America; the pioneer paper; the next one issued; others; the first daily; King George's war; the capture of Louisburg; the treaty of 1748.



## CHAPTER VIII

### THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF NEW JERSEY, PENNSYLVANIA, AND DELAWARE



Dutch Trading Post.

**I**MMIGRANTS to New Jersey. — Several of the colonies were settled, not by immigrants from across the ocean, but from other colonies. In this way their history became interwoven. Thus, about the year 1660, while New York was under Dutch rule, a number of its settlers passed over into what is now known as New Jersey, and made their homes there.

The precise date of such settlement is not known. The territory formed a part of New Netherland, and that portion lying between the Hudson and the Delaware, extending north of the latter river to  $41^{\circ} 40'$ , was given by the Duke of York to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret, proprietors of Carolina. To this new province was assigned the name of New Cæsarea, or New Jersey, in honor of Carteret's defence of the island of Jersey, in 1649, against Cromwell.

Several Swedish and Dutch families had settled in New Jersey in 1664, but little has been learned of them. Governor Nichols, of New York, knew nothing of the grant until June, 1665, when Captain Philip Carteret arrived as the new governor of the province. Carteret anchored in the Kill von Kull, in July, opposite Elizabethport, and landed with thirty emigrants. Resting a hoe on his shoulder, he led the way inland and selected a place for settlement. He named it Elizabeth, in honor of the wife of Sir George Carteret. This settlement is generally regarded as the first made in New Jersey.

The site of the present city of Newark was bought from the Indians, in 1666, by a party from Milford, Connecticut. It received its name in compliment to Rev. Abraham Pierson, the first minister, whose home in England was Newark. The soil was fertile, the government liberal, and New Jersey prospered until 1670, when trouble came. In that year the proprietors demanded the quit rents, which were due. The settlers refused to pay them, and soon everything was in a tangle. When the



ARRIVAL OF GOVERNOR CARTERET

people were on the verge of revolt, James Carteret, the second son of Sir George, appeared on the scene as the new governor.

This man was a vagabond, but in 1672 the assembly at Elizabethport deposed Philip Carteret and elected James in his place. The indignant Philip sailed to Europe for redress. James quickly proved his unfitness and was set adrift in May, 1673, when Captain Berry, Philip Carteret's deputy, arrived and took charge. James left for Virginia. He turned up in New York a few years later and wandered about the country, sleeping in barns and begging food, like many tramps of the present day.

Philip Carteret became governor again and was well liked. He

postponed the collection of quit rents; guaranteed liberty of conscience, and encouraged representative institutions. All went well for a while, but another snarl of titles came, involving the claims of Berkeley, the old partner of Carteret, and parties to whom he had sold his rights.

**East and West Jersey.** — The difficulties were finally settled by the division of the province into two parts. East Jersey belonged to Carteret, and West Jersey was bought by William Penn and his associates. The dividing line ran from Little Egg harbor on the coast to latitude  $41^{\circ} 40'$  on the upper Delaware River. This was on July 1, 1676, and the distinction prevails to some extent to the present day.

Upon the invitation of Penn, a large colony of Friends arrived from Europe, in 1677, and settled at Burlington, which, therefore, is the oldest town on the Delaware above Philadelphia. The dispute between the original proprietors of the province continued until 1680, when the commissioners, to whom the quarrel was referred for final settlement, decided against the Duke of York's claim to West Jersey. Thereupon he gave a deed of East Jersey to George Carteret, grandson of James. Two years later, Penn and a number of his associates bought East Jersey of its new proprietor, and thus the entire province came into the possession of the Friends.

Large numbers of Quakers flocked to New Jersey from Scotland, England, and New England, and on July 27 Penn appointed Robert Barclay, an eminent Quaker preacher, governor for life. When King James ascended the throne of England, the Jerseys were obliged to surrender their charter, and they had no nominal government for several years. In April, 1702, the settlers waived their proprietary rights and the Jerseys became a royal province, which was attached to the government of New York, each province, however, retaining its own assembly and separate territorial organization. Mainly through the efforts of Lewis Morris, New Jersey again became independent in 1738, and Morris was commissioned the first royal governor of the province. Its location



preserved it from the subsequent Indian wars, and no important events followed until the breaking out of the Revolution.

**William Penn.** — The name of William Penn will always be honored in the history of our country. He was the son of Admiral Penn, and was held in high respect by the sovereigns of England and those in authority. He inherited wealth from



FROZEN IN ON THE DELAWARE

his father, among which was a debt of eighty thousand dollars due the admiral for services to his country. The son offered to accept in payment a grant of land in America, and the king was glad to make the bargain. He signed, March 4, 1681, a grant of forty thousand square miles, comprising the present State of Pennsylvania. Penn wished to name the province New Wales, but the king would not consent, and gave it its appropriate name.

Such a man as Penn was certain to establish a wise system of

government. The foundation was perfect freedom of conscience, and all his efforts were turned to winning instead of forcing men into the right path. He guided his own life by the Golden Rule, and strove to persuade others to do right because it was right.

**Settlement of Pennsylvania.** — Penn decided that land should be sold at forty shillings per hundred acres, and servants were allowed to hold fifty acres in fee simple. The confidence in Penn was so universal that a large immigration began at once, the people, as a rule, being of the thrifty and industrious sort. Three vessels were sent out in 1681, but one was frozen fast in the Delaware at Chester. Penn himself sailed with a hundred passengers in the ship *Welcome*, landing at Newcastle, October 27, 1682. The Dutch and Swedes gave him welcome, and he won their good-will by his fair-minded address. They asked to be taken in as a part of the province of Pennsylvania, and this was afterward done.

The first general assembly was held in the Friends' meeting-house at Chester, the Delaware settlers taking part in the proceedings. Under the branches of a spreading elm, at Shackamaxon, November 30, 1682, Penn met the leading warriors, chieftains, and sachems of the Lenni-Lenape, or Delaware Indians. His kind words and manner gained their confidence, and he paid them the price agreed upon for their lands. Besides this, he made numerous presents and signed a treaty of peace, which was not broken for sixty years.

**Philadelphia laid out.** — Philadelphia, meaning "The City of Brotherly Love," was laid out in 1681, and prospered from the first. Two years later it had six hundred houses, and during the Revolution was a larger city than New York. In a single year seven thousand immigrants arrived and settled in the province. The first legislative assembly met in March, 1683, and the town was soon provided with schools, chapels, and a printing-office.

Penn sailed for England in August, 1684, led to do so by the previous visit of Lord Baltimore, who was trying to procure a





PENN'S TREATY



confirmation of his claim to the country along the west side of the Delaware from Philadelphia to Cape Henlopen. After a long trial, the dispute was decided in favor of Penn.

The difficulties in which he was involved kept Penn in Europe for fifteen years. When he came back, he found Philadelphia with two thousand houses, while the province contained twenty thousand inhabitants. Such streets as Chestnut, Vine, Spruce, and others were already in existence. Prosperity prevailed, but the province had grown away from Penn's authority.

**Formation of Delaware.** — Penn sailed a second time for England in October, 1701. Before going, he reluctantly signed the new constitution, which allowed the three lower counties — now the State of Delaware — the right to a separate government. A period of misrule followed in Pennsylvania, and the steward, to whom Penn entrusted his affairs, robbed him of everything. He was so involved, indeed, that he spent nine months in prison for debt. While negotiating a sale of the province to the crown, he was stricken with paralysis, and died in 1718.

The will of Penn left his property in England and Ireland to his eldest son William, who was a scapegrace. The proprietorship in his American colony went to his widow and her three sons, and after them to their heirs, and thus it remained until the Revolution. In 1779, the State bought the claim of the heirs for half a million dollars.

**Settlement of Delaware.** — In 1638, a small number of Swedes and Finns were guided to Delaware Bay by Peter Minuit, the first governor of New Amsterdam. He was resentful toward the Dutch because of their treatment of him, and, buying the land of the Indians, he erected a fort, which was named Christina, in honor of the infant queen of his country. Governor Kieft of New York warned the settlers that they were intruders and ordered them to leave. They did not obey, and he was afraid to expel them. In the course of a few years, fully a hundred families were settled a few miles below the present city of Philadelphia.

Governor Stuyvesant, however, gave unpleasant attention to New Sweden, as the whole country was called on both sides of the Delaware, which was occupied by the Swedes. The Swedish governor was named Printz. He was of gigantic frame and as fiery tempered as Stuyvesant. He allowed the few Dutch in the province to stay, because their petty military post, Fort Nassau, was too far up the river to interfere with his people or their trade. Stuyvesant put up Fort Casimir on the present site of Newcastle. Printz furiously protested, but he and Stuyvesant were more afraid of English intrusion than of each other, and both refrained from violence.

The first thing done by the new Swedish governor was to capture Fort Casimir. Then Stuyvesant stormed, and finally, in the spring of 1655, sent out a force which captured Forts Casimir and Christina. That was the end of Swedish rule in America. The Swedes who remained became Dutch, the province being called New Amstel. We have already learned how it came under the rule of Penn, who finally conceded a separate government to it, which it has retained ever since.

**TOPICS.** — How some of the colonies were settled; the first settlements in New Jersey; who first owned it; how it was divided; origin of the name; Captain Philip Carteret; the settlement of Elizabeth; the trouble in 1670; James Carteret; Captain Berry; Philip Carteret's second rule; East and West Jersey; the settlement of Burlington; how the province came into the possession of the Friends.

Robert Barclay; the Jerseys as a royal province; New Jersey's independence; from what it was saved by its location; William Penn; the grant obtained from the king; Penn's system of government; how the land was sold; the first vessels sent out; Penn's arrival; the Dutch and Swedes; the first general assembly; the treaty at Shackamaxon; founding of the city of Philadelphia; its prosperity; the first legislative assembly; Penn's visit to England; what he found on his return to Pennsylvania; the formation of Delaware; Penn's death; his will; the proprietorship of Pennsylvania; settlement of Delaware; course of Governor Stuyvesant; of the Swedish governor; Stuyvesant's action in 1655; the result.

## CHAPTER IX

### THE COLONIAL HISTORY OF MARYLAND, THE CAROLINAS, AND GEORGIA



**S**ETTLEMENT of Maryland. — At the time of the settlement of Jamestown, the Roman Catholics suffered persecution in England. Sir George Calvert, or Lord Baltimore, a nobleman of that faith, applied to King James for a grant of land in America, his wish being to offer an asylum for his people. He died in 1632, and the patent was issued to his son, Cecil Calvert, in June of that year. He named the new territory Maryland, in honor of Queen Maria, and, in addition to the State now known by that name, the territory included Delaware and a part of New Jersey and Pennsylvania.

Leonard Calvert, a younger brother of Cecil, sighted Point Comfort, February 24, 1634. He came in the *Ark*, accompanied by a pinnace the *Dove*, the two containing three hundred emigrants. The colonists landed at or near Chancellor's Point and began the settlement of St. Mary's. They gave the same kind treatment to the Indians that was shown by Penn. and his associates and thus gained their friendship.

**Trouble with Virginia.** — The Virginians were angered at what they considered the intrusion of the Catholics upon their domain. The fact that Lord Baltimore's title was unquestionable made no difference. The most indignant member of the Virginia council was William Clayborne, who drove a good trade within the territory covered by the patent of Lord Baltimore. Early in the spring of 1635, Clayborne sent his small vessel on its regular



trading voyage, but it was captured by the Marylanders. Learning of this, Clayborne despatched an armed boat to recapture her or to seize any Maryland boat within reach. A fight followed, in which the captain of Clayborne's boat and two of his men were killed and one also of the Marylanders.

The news threw Virginia into a tumult, which was intensified when Lord Baltimore demanded the surrender of Clayborne. Instead of complying, the Virginia governor insisted that Clayborne should go to England to meet the charges. The governor showed so friendly a spirit to Lord Baltimore that he was turned out of office and sent to England. Clayborne accompanied him. The king sent back the governor and sharply reproved the Virginia assembly for their unlawful course.

**Civil War.** — Lord Baltimore and the Catholics were so liberal toward those of other faiths that many dissatisfied people in Virginia settled in Maryland. Governor Calvert sent an invitation to those who were persecuted for conscience' sake in Massachusetts to make their homes under his jurisdiction and many did so. Among the members of the assembly and council were a number of Protestants.

Matters became so threatening in England, that Lord Baltimore sailed thither in 1643 to consult with his brother. When he returned the following year he found Maryland in a state of anarchy. Clayborne had reoccupied his old quarters on Kent Island, and stirred up a faction against the administration of the governor. This was so strong that Calvert was driven out of the colony and a Virginian was elected as his successor.

Across the line in Virginia, Calvert gathered a number of adherents, recrossed to Maryland, captured St. Mary's, and resumed government in August, 1646. Then it was Clayborne's turn to run and he promptly did so.

**Religious Troubles.** — From this point, it may be said the history of Maryland is partly merged into that of Virginia. There was much strife between the Catholics and Protestants, with varying success to each side. The Catholics had been liberal,

as we have learned, toward those of other faiths, but when the Protestants came into power, they persecuted the Catholics. The agents of the rival governments were continually begging England to fix matters to suit their tastes. Finally in November, 1657, an agreement was reached which was confirmed in the following March by Virginia and Maryland. Amnesty was granted for all past offences ; liberty of conscience was guaranteed ; the Puritans then living in Maryland were required simply to submit to the authority of Lord Baltimore, without taking the oath of allegiance, and the action of past assemblies was held to be legal, regardless of the political disturbances that had taken place.

Lord Baltimore was stripped of his rights as proprietor in 1691 and Maryland was a royal province, remaining such for a quarter of a century. The proprietary rights were returned to the grandson, the fourth Lord Baltimore, and were continued until the Revolution.

**Settlement of the Carolinas.** — In 1663, the king of England granted to Lord Clarendon and a number of other noblemen, a tract of country south of Virginia, extending from about the thirtieth to the thirty-sixth parallels of latitude ; or, in other words, between the southern boundary of Virginia and the St. John's River in Florida. The western boundary was the Pacific Ocean, though no person knew precisely where that was. Two years afterward the grant was expanded half a degree north and a degree southward.

In 1663, a party from Barbadoes, who were searching for a suitable place upon which to settle, bought a tract of land at the mouth of Cape Fear River from the Indians, and located thereon. The tract was thirty-two miles square. In the following spring the colony was joined by Sir John Yeamans and several hundred immigrants. The older colony asked the proprietors to confirm their purchase from the Indians. The request was denied, but satisfactory terms were granted. The province over which Yeamans was made governor extended from Cape Fear to the St. John's River in Florida, and was named Clarendon.

In addition to the colonists named, immigrants from New England, from Virginia, and from Bermuda were distributed along the northern shore of Albemarle Sound. In 1670, two ships loaded with immigrants and supplies sailed up the present harbor of Charleston to a point three miles above the mouth of the Ashley River, where they began a settlement called Charles-town. The site proved unhealthful, and in 1680 a change was made to the present city of Charleston.

There was continual friction between the Carolinas and the proprietors. Some of the governors were rogues, or incompetents, and much misrule prevailed, varied now and then by a wise administration, like that of John Archdale the Quaker. Finally the proprietors became discouraged, and in 1729 surrendered the right of government and seven-eighths of the land to the crown. The colonies were separated and remained royal provinces to the Revolution.

**Settlement of Georgia.**—In 1732, General James Edward Oglethorpe obtained a grant of land from King George II which, in honor of the sovereign, he named Georgia. Oglethorpe was a skilful general, wealthy, charitable, and philanthropic, and he interested the king, parliament, the Bank of England, and a number of rich persons in his enterprise.

The most horrible sufferings prevailed at that time in England among those who were thrown into prison because they could not pay their debts. Their misfortune might be due to illness, but hundreds of people were kept starving in wretched cells until they died for no other crime than that of being poor. While the fathers and husbands were thus suffering death, it might be that their families were also perishing for the sake of food.

The project of Oglethorpe, and his own admirable character, secured all the friends and help it could need. Indeed it looked after a while as if it would have been better had the friends been fewer, for they threatened to dwarf if not to kill the grand scheme by their overwhelming kindness.

The province secured by Oglethorpe extended from Savannah



on the north to the Altamaha on the south, and, from the sources of those rivers westward to the Pacific, with a very hazy idea on the part of all as to where the Pacific lay. The highest hopes were entertained of the prosperity and success of the new colony, for the natural advantages of Georgia are so great that it has long been known as the Empire State of the South.

The *Annie*, with one hundred and twenty emigrants, sailed from Gravesend in November, 1732, and, after a tedious voyage



GOVERNOR OGLETHORPE AND THE INDIANS

of fifty-seven days, reached Charleston, where a warm welcome awaited the pioneers. The assembly voted the company a large number of breeding cattle and other supplies and escorted them away as they sailed for Port Royal. Landing at Beaufort, Oglethorpe ascended the river and selected the present site of Savannah. He followed the example of William Penn, bought the consent of the Indians, and by his wise course retained their friendship. Leaving everything in the most promising shape, he sailed for England, after a little more than a year. On his return

to Georgia in the winter of 1735-1736, he brought back a company of men, among whom were the revered leaders of Methodism, John and Charles Wesley. Charles was the governor's secretary, while John was sent by the trustees as a missionary to the Indians.

The Wesleys became dissatisfied with the country and soon returned to England. George Whitefield, one of the most famous preachers of the eighteenth century, came over to take their place. He did a most beneficent work in America.

**War with the Spaniards.** — The Spanish in Florida were incensed at what they looked upon as an intrusion of their territory. They insisted that the English should withdraw from the entire country south of St. Helena Sound, and threatened dire things in case of refusal. As this was a demand to give up all Georgia, and a part of South Carolina, Oglethorpe politely, but firmly, declined. Knowing the revengeful nature of the Spaniards, Oglethorpe decided to move first. He invaded Florida without waiting for the help of South Carolina. His force consisted of four hundred soldiers and a strong party of Indians. He dressed like a common soldier, shared the hardships of his men, and was beloved by all.

Fort Diego was invested and captured, and, leaving a garrison of sixty men, Oglethorpe pushed forward to Fort Moosa, the more important post, and within a couple of miles of St. Augustine. He found the fort had been abandoned and the defenders were concentrated at the town. Oglethorpe was too weak to attack this and went to Charleston to hurry forward the men promised by that province. He brought back enough Virginians, and North and South Carolinians, to swell his attacking force to two thousand, including the Indians. But the fort was very strong, the Indian allies deserted, many men fell sick, and finally Oglethorpe himself became ill of a fever. All this compelled him to raise the siege.

The Spaniards in retaliation invaded Georgia in May, 1744. They numbered from three to five thousand men, opposed to whom, Oglethorpe could muster only about eight hundred, but these were handled with such masterly skill, that he inflicted a

crushing defeat upon the invaders. The brilliant manner in which he conducted this unequal campaign to a triumphant conclusion added greatly to his military fame, and brought disgrace to the Spaniards. On his return to England, he was raised to the grade of major general, and afterward to that of lieutenant general. He lived to be nearly one hundred years old and was said to be the handsomest old man in all England. People stopped on the streets of London to admire him.

His character was as admirable as his person. He would have been given command of the British armies in America at the breaking out of the Revolution, but for his well-known chivalrous disposition. It was feared that he would not be harsh enough with the rebels, for Oglethorpe was always fond of them, and was not only a wonderfully skilful soldier but a Christian one.

**Georgia a Royal Province.** — Many of the laws governing Georgia were impracticable. Prosperity languished, so that in 1752 the province contained only three small villages, and the white population numbered less than two thousand. The exports were about three thousand dollars annually. Industry had ceased and the trustees became discouraged. Too much indulgence and mistaken kindness had been shown to the colony. So in June, 1752, just twenty years after the granting of the charter, the patent was surrendered to the crown. The colony took a new start on the road to prosperity, and, as we have learned, forged ahead, until in the fulness of time Georgia won the proud name of the Empire State of the South.

**TOPICS.** — Persecution of the Roman Catholics in England; what was done by Sir George Calvert; Maryland; the first settlement made; cause of the trouble with Virginia; William Clayborne; his conflict with the Marylanders; what followed; the liberal course of the Catholics; history of the civil war in Maryland; the religious troubles; the final settlement of the disputes; subsequent history of Maryland; the grant made by the king of England in 1663; the Carolina settlement made in that year; Sir John Yeamans; the Clarendon colony; the other immigrants; founding of Charleston; separation of the two provinces.



James Edward Oglethorpe; sufferings in England because of imprisonment for debt; the project of Oglethorpe; its success; extent of the province; its natural advantages; the *Annie*; assistance given by Charleston; wise course of Oglethorpe; the Wesley brothers; Rev. George Whitefield; anger of the Spaniards; how Oglethorpe anticipated their action; his success; his failure; his final triumph; the admirable qualities of Oglethorpe; cause of the stagnation in the progress of Georgia; its condition in 1752; the step that was taken in that year.

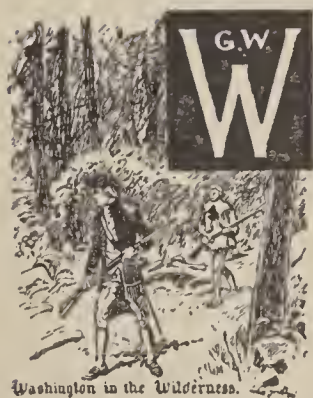
TO THE PUPIL. — Complete the following skeleton history, from what you have studied, so as to include all the thirteen colonies, in the order in which they were settled :

SKELETON HISTORY OF PERIOD II

NAME	WHEN SETTLED	WHERE SETTLED	BY WHOM SETTLED
1. Virginia	1607	Jamestown	English
2.			
3.			
4.			
5.			
6.			
7.			
8.			
9.			
10.			
11.			
12.			
13.			

## CHAPTER X

### THE FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR



**ARRING** Interests of England and France in the New World. — As events moved onward, England and France became the great rivals of each other in the New World. They had grown in power and importance at home and each pushed its explorations and settlements on this side of the Atlantic. It was inevitable that the time would come when a tremendous and final struggle should take place between them in North America.

Spain discovered the country and made the first permanent settlement at St. Augustine in 1565; but England and France increased much faster than she did. Spain founded missions among the Indians and held fast to many of her possessions, but a hundred years after the founding of St. Augustine the Spanish population in Florida was less than at first. She continually lost ground and the time at last came when she owned not a foot of soil on the continent.

Regarding England and France, matters stood thus at the middle of the eighteenth century: The settlements of England were strung along the Atlantic coast from Maine to Florida. On the ground that the Cabots had discovered America, England claimed all the country westward to the Pacific Ocean, a claim which it will be noted embraced about all there is of our country to-day.

France first colonized the valley of the St. Lawrence. One of her oldest towns, Montreal, is five hundred miles from the sea.

She kept pushing westward and southward. Planting her colonies on the shores of the Great Lakes, she extended them to the sources of the Wabash, the Illinois, the Wisconsin, the St. Croix (croy), and thence down those streams to the Mississippi. Then she aimed for the Gulf of Mexico. While the English colonies occupied the thousand miles of seacoast named, the French territory reached from Canada down the Father of Waters to New Orleans. This long line was guarded by more than sixty military posts.

A vast area of country lay between the English and French settlements. Both nations claimed it, and both began colonizing it, and it was there that the clash must inevitably come. The Ohio valley was destined by nature to be the scene of the opening battle between England and France for the possession of North America. No thought was given to the rights of the Indians in the matter. They having been unwise enough to place themselves between the upper and nether millstone had no choice but to be ground to powder.

The trade with the Indians in furs and peltries had long been profitable. For many years, traders from Virginia and Pennsylvania made tours to the Indian towns on the upper tributaries of the Ohio. In 1749, these men met other traders from Canada engaged upon the same business. They scowled at each other, and the Englishmen made up their minds to stop the trade of the others within their territory.

Virginia, through her old charter, claimed all the country between her western borders and Lake Erie, including all the territory northwest of the Ohio River and east of the Mississippi. To exclude the intruders, the Ohio Company was formed and received a land grant from George II, covering half a million acres, to be located either between the Kanawha and the Monongahela, or on the northern bank of the Ohio. In granting the land, the king ordered its selection at once and required the location of one hundred families upon it within seven years.

This was prompt work on the part of Virginia, but the French



were more prompt. Before the Ohio Company could colonize the land, Bienville, by order of the governor of Canada, appeared on the scene with three hundred men. He began exploring the Ohio valley, burying leaden plates at different points along the river, as proof that the territory had been pre-empted by France. His men went as far west as the Miami (me-am'e) towns, drove out the English traders, and forwarded a letter to the governor of Pennsylvania, warning him to keep off the lands that belonged to the king of France.

The Ohio Company sent an exploring party to the Ohio opposite the mouth of Beaver Creek. Crossing to the northern bank, they advanced to the Great Miami and thence to within a few miles of the falls opposite Louisville. The rival parties approached closer to each other, collisions took place, and the ill feeling deepened, until the situation was so strained that the different tribes of Indians became interested.

In the spring of 1753, Du Quesne (kane), the French governor of Canada, sent twelve hundred men down the Allegheny to colonize that section. This angered the Indian tribes and they protested. The French coolly replied that the land belonged to them and they meant to take it. This reply did not tend to soothe the red men.

The Virginians were greatly roused, but before flying to arms Governor Dinwiddie decided to make one more remonstrance. He drew up a paper setting forth upon what grounds the English claimed the territory, using courteous language, for he was hopeful of convincing the French of the injustice of their course.

St. Pierre (san-peer' or pe-air'), commander of the French forces in the West, was five hundred miles off at Erie, as it is now known, in the northwestern corner of the present State of Pennsylvania. The route thither was through an unbroken wilderness. The journey, therefore, would be a thousand miles in length, through a hostile country, and attended by hardships and dangers which no ordinary man could overcome.

But Governor Dinwiddie knew who was the right person for the

delicate and difficult task. He sent for him and the young man promptly appeared. There was a great contrast between the two, for the governor was a short, fat man, partly bald, and in middle life, while the handsome athletic youth who stood before him was more than six feet tall and the picture of manly youth and strength. He was **GEORGE WASHINGTON**.

**George Washington.**  
— Washington will always be regarded as the greatest American that ever lived. No one ever can hold his place in the reverence and affectionate gratitude of his countrymen. It is proper, therefore, that we should learn a few facts about him.

George Washington was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, February 22, 1732. His father died when the son was eleven years old, and his education was left to his

excellent mother. He was a truthful boy, who had no superior in running, throwing, leaping, swimming, horsemanship, and all athletic sports. When only sixteen years old, he was employed to survey the valleys of the Allegheny Mountains, and he acquitted himself well at the task. At nineteen, he was appointed adjutant



WASHINGTON AND GOVERNOR DINWIDDIE

general over one of the districts of Virginia, his rank being that of major. He studied tactics under his brother and other officers and developed exceptional military skill. As a result, when the districts of Virginia were reduced to four, he was left in command of one. We shall see as we study his career, that he was the grandest character in American history.

On the same day that Washington received his letter and his instructions, he set out on his toilsome and dangerous journey through the wilderness. He had five companions, all mounted on horseback, one being a famous guide of the Ohio Company, Christopher Gist by name.

The start was made on the last day of October, when the woods were brilliant with the varied hues of autumn and the season delightful. Before long the wind as it moaned among the leafless branches brought flurries of snow, which at times almost blinded them. Then the fine rain, driven by the gale almost horizontally between the trees, turned to sleet and cut their faces like bird shot. The camp-fires kindled against rocks or the huge trunks were not sufficient to warm their bodies, but all were rugged and strong and cared nothing for trials of that kind. When their food gave out, they knew how to bring down some of the game that was all around them, and they were pleased to find most of the Indians whom they met friendly and willing to guide them for a portion at least of the journey.

Washington expected to keep on to Presque Isle (presk-eel) before meeting the French commander, but on arriving at Le Bœuf (leh-buf'), fourteen miles south, he found him superintending the building of fortifications. The officer received his visitors courteously and read the letter from Governor Dinwiddie. St. Pierre being a soldier replied that he was there by orders of his superior officers and could not discuss the question. Furthermore, it was his purpose to expel every Englishman from the valley of the Ohio.

The return of the party was attended by dangers and hardships tenfold worse than accompanied them in going. It was now the



depth of winter, the weather was bitterly cold, and the streams were filled with floating ice. Often when the men lay down to sleep, their clothing was frozen to their limbs; they struggled through the icy creeks and rivers until the packhorses gave out, when Washington and Gist gave up their animals and trudged forward on foot.

In crossing one of the rivers on a raft, the pole in Washington's hand was wrenched from his grasp by the masses of grinding ice and he was flung into the water, but his skill in swimming saved him.

One day an Indian, who was acting as their guide, levelled his gun when barely twenty yards away and fired point blank at Washington. Before he could reload or flee Gist seized him by the throat. He wanted to kill him for his treachery, but Washington would not permit. The Indian was kept a prisoner until night and then allowed to go. Finally, on the 16th of January, 1754, Washington and Gist arrived at Williamsburg, and the reply of St. Pierre was placed in the hands of Governor Dinwiddie.

**The Breaking out of War.**—The reply meant war and Virginia acted promptly. The assembly voted ten thousand pounds for fitting out an expedition, one of whose duties was to build a fort at the junction of the Allegheny and Monongahela rivers, so as to protect the Ohio Company in its operations. But the French anticipated this action and erected Fort Du Quesne on the present site of Pittsburg.

Washington moved forward to reconnoitre, leading the way, musket in hand. The French commander, Jumonville (zhoo-mon-veel), was hiding with his men among the rocks and trees awaiting him, but was himself surprised and defeated. Colonel Frye soon dying, Washington assumed command and built a stockade, well named Fort Necessity. Attacked by a large force of French and Indians, Washington was obliged to surrender, but he and his men were released on their promise to leave the country.

**Convention of the Colonies.**—A convention of all the colonies was held at Albany, New York, June 19, 1754. Twenty-five delegates

were present, representing every colony north of the Potomac. One result was the signing of a treaty with the Iroquois, by which they agreed to remain neutral during the hostilities. Benjamin Franklin brought forward a plan for the more perfect union of the colonies, but it was rejected by the king, who was alarmed at the growing tendency to a closer union by his subjects in America. Even then the stubborn monarch may have had a glimmering of what followed in the course of a few years.



WASHINGTON'S FIRST VICTORY

**Braddock's Massacre.** — General Braddock led an expedition the following spring against Fort Du Quesne, Washington acting as his aide-de-camp (kong). Braddock was a brave officer, but puffed up with conceit. Washington warned him that the Indians did not fight like white men, but the general took offence and gave the young Virginian to understand that he wished no instruction from him. When within ten miles of the fort, and while ascending a slope with thick underbrush on every hand, the stillness was broken by the fearful war-whoop, and the concealed Indians poured a destructive fire among the troops. The regulars, recov-

ering from their panic, fired by platoons at the invisible enemy, while Washington and his men leaped among the trees and fought in the style of the savages themselves. He begged Braddock to do the same, but he was too proud, and continued the unequal fight.

No one could have acted more bravely than the British commander. He had five horses shot under him, and exposed himself to every danger. Finally a bullet passed through his lungs and brought him to the ground. Washington ran to his help.

"What can be done?" feebly asked the officer.

"We must retreat at once," replied Washington.

The officer was reluctant to do so, and rallying slightly continued to give orders while reclining on the ground. By and by the retreat had to be made, and Washington brought off the remnant of the once proud army. Out of eighty-two officers, twenty-six were killed and thirty-seven wounded. Of the force of two thousand men, one-half were killed or disabled, while of the French only three officers and thirty men were slain and about the same number wounded.

The only officer of Braddock's staff unhurt was Washington. His escape was remarkable. He was so prominent in the fight, that he was singled out as a special target and fired at again and again. Four bullets passed through his coat and two horses were killed under him, but he was not touched. Heaven must have preserved him for the great work he was to perform, for never throughout his wonderful career did he receive the slightest wound.



GENERAL BRADDOCK



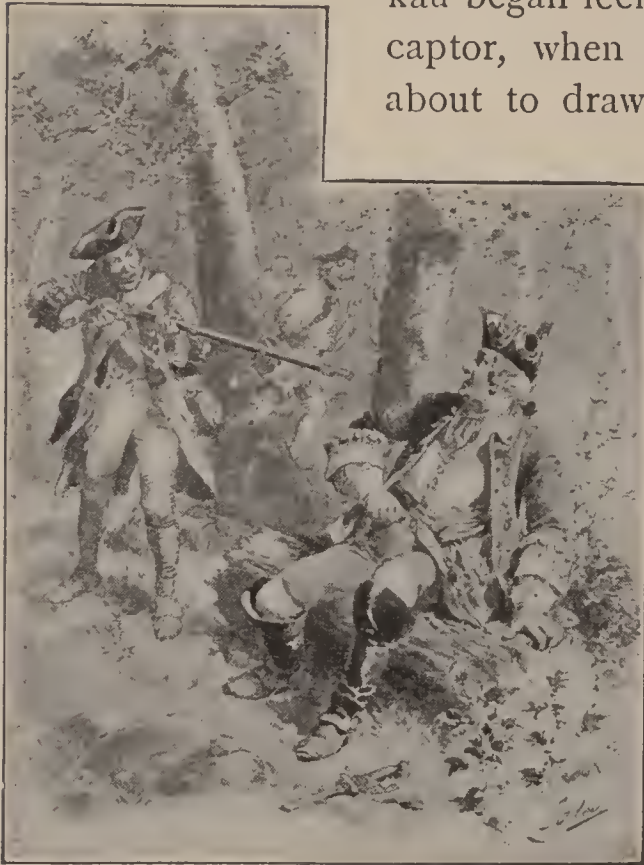
**Expulsion of the Acadians.** — The disaster was so shocking that it spread a gloom not only through the colonies but in England. The next step taken by England under the plea of military necessity was a cruel act. The simple folk living in Acadia (Nova Scotia) were French in their feelings and sympathies. They



EXPULSION OF THE ACADIANS

wished to remain neutral in the war, but refused to take the oath of allegiance to King George. Because of this, their dwellings were burned, and they were driven aboard a number of waiting vessels at the point of the bayonet. Families were broken up in the confusion and never reunited. Seven thousand of the poor people were distributed among the colonies, and untold suffering was inflicted.

**Success of the French.** — Sir William Johnson captured Crown Point for the English. General Dieskau (dees'cow) was badly wounded and was sitting on a stump giving orders, when he was approached by a Frenchman fighting with the Americans. Dieskau began feeling for his watch to give to his captor, when the latter, supposing he was about to draw his pistol, fired and mortally wounded him.



SHOOTING OF DIESKAU

The victory was of little moment for the English, and for two years the French were almost uniformly successful. It seemed indeed as if England would be forced to give up all her possessions in America. At the close of 1757, France held twenty times as much territory as at first, and was still gaining ground.

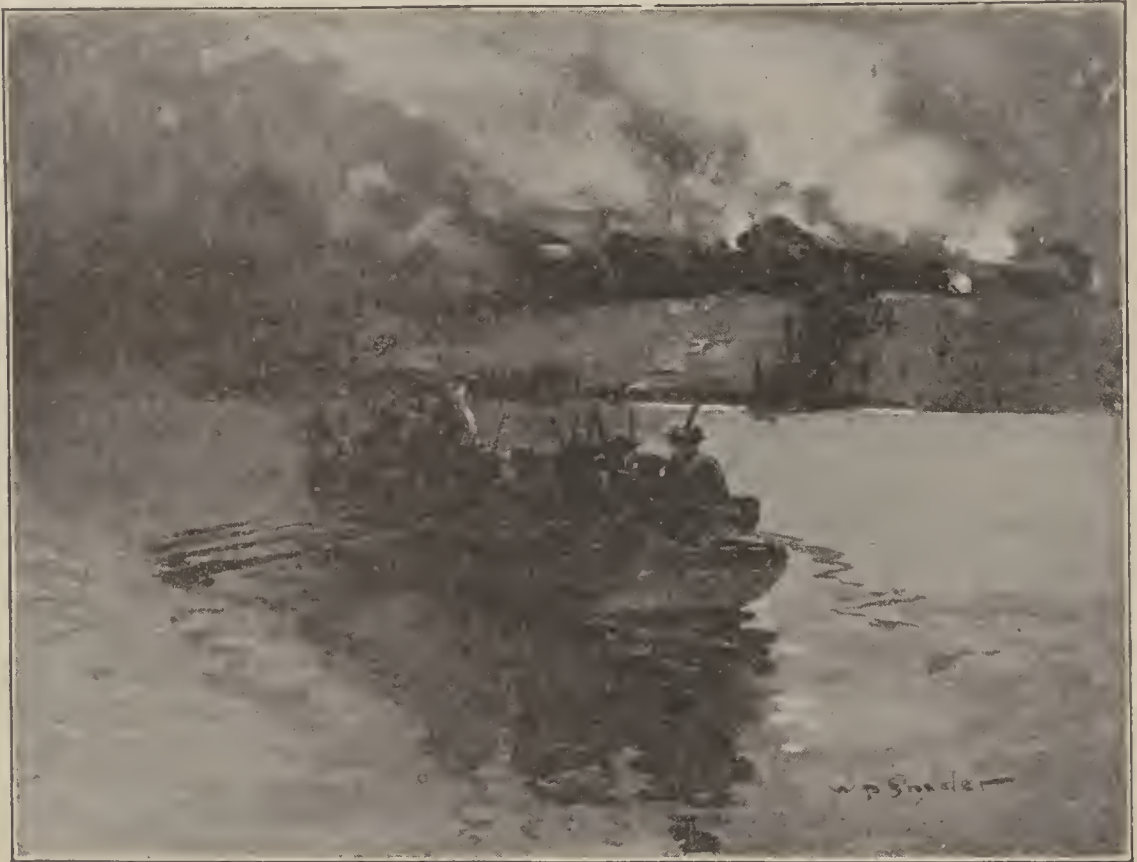
In the summer of the year named, Fort William Henry was compelled to

surrender. The English were guaranteed a safe escort to Fort Edward, fourteen miles away, but had hardly started when the Indians attacked them. Montcalm and his officers strove desperately to restrain the savages, the distressed commander calling upon them to kill him but to spare the captives, whom he had promised to protect. Thirty of the English were tomahawked and others dragged off to captivity.

**England's Triumph.** — Brighter days came with 1758. William Pitt had become prime minister of England and was a firm friend of the colonies. An army of twenty-two thousand British regulars and twenty-eight thousand colonial troops was raised for the prosecution of the war. Fort Du Quesne was evacuated by

the French, and when occupied by the provincials was named Pittsburg in honor of England's prime minister.

To Washington was due the chief glory of expelling the French from Fort Du Quesne. He himself planted the English flag on the ramparts. On his return to Virginia, he was elected to the house of burgesses. He had just sat down, when the speaker, in the name of Virginia, returned thanks to him for his services



EVACUATION OF FORT DU QUESNE

to his country. Washington had no thought of anything of the kind, and blushed like a school-boy. He rose to his feet to reply and became more embarrassed and confused.

"Sit down, Mr. Washington," said the speaker, kindly, "your modesty equals your valor, and that surpasses the power of language to express."

It will be remembered that the immense fortress of Louisburg had been returned to the French on the conclusion of King George's war in 1748. It was recaptured during the campaign



of 1758 by Generals Amherst and Wolfe, after a severe struggle. But the incompetent Abercrombie was driven from before Fort Ticonderoga, though he had the larger army, numbering fifteen thousand men.

The year brought the final and decisive campaign. Forts Niagara, Crown Point, and Ticonderoga soon fell. France was feebly supporting her armies in America, while England gathered all her mighty energies for their overthrow. General Wolfe, with eight thousand men and a powerful fleet, laid siege to Quebec. Canada was impoverished, food was scarce, and Montcalm had received no reinforcements from home.

The task undertaken by Wolfe looked impossible. Quebec, standing on a high promontory at the junction of the St. Lawrence and the St. Charles, seemed safe against any assault. The citadel is three hundred and forty-five feet above the river, and the fortifications, extending almost across the peninsula, enclose a circuit of three miles.

Week after week Wolfe searched in vain for some path by which to climb to the Heights of Abraham, as the plain is called. Montcalm was on the alert. He slept only a few minutes at a time, and when he could keep awake no longer. He did not wholly remove his clothing for several days, and kept his horses continually saddled, ready to dash at any moment to the spot where needed.

Finally Wolfe discovered the narrow path for which he had



WOLFE'S COVE, QUEBEC

been searching so long. In the darkness of night his army silently climbed to the Heights of Abraham, and when the sun rose, the astounded Montcalm and his officers saw the sunlight reflected from the thousands of gleaming bayonets where the English army were drawn up in battle array.

The opposing forces were about equal in number. The impetuous Montcalm assailed the English with his usual bravery, and for a time the issue was doubtful. At the critical moment, Wolfe led a bayonet charge. He was twice wounded, but cheered his men on until mortally hurt by a third bullet. Leaning on a



QUEBEC DURING THE SIEGE

brother officer, he was painfully moving to the rear, when one of his men exclaimed: "They run! they run!" "Who run?" asked Wolfe, in a faint voice. "The French," was the reply. "God be praised! now I can die happy," he murmured with a smile, and soon afterward expired.

Strange to say, Montcalm was mortally wounded almost at the same moment that Wolfe was stricken down. He received two bad injuries, and was told by the surgeon that he had but a short time to live. "So much the better," he replied; "I shall not see the surrender of Quebec." He passed away a short time before daylight of the 14th. Quebec surrendered on the 18th of September, and Montreal was captured about a year later. In February, 1763, England and France signed a treaty of peace at Paris, by which France gave to England all her possessions east of the Mississippi, except two small islands south of Newfoundland. She ceded New Orleans and all her territory west of the Mississippi



to Spain, thus leaving her successful rival virtual master in the New World.

It was a bitter humiliation for France, but her course was a wise one. She saw that the colonies were growing fast in strength and self-confidence and before many years would demand their independence. Not only that, but they would be quite certain to gain it at the cost of immense treasure and loss of life to the nation claiming them as her subjects.

**The Conspiracy of Pontiac.** —

Pontiac, chief of the Ottawas, was one of the great Indians of history. He hated the English, and when they took possession of the surrendered posts in the West, he formed a conspiracy for the massacre of all the garrisons. He conducted the campaign with much skill, and several of the forts were captured. He besieged Detroit for a number of months, and more than once it

was in great danger; but finally the confederacy of Indians was broken and peace firmly established. Pontiac was assassinated on the spot where East St. Louis now stands, in 1769, by a Kaskaskia Indian, bribed thereto by an English trader. Thus, like King Philip, he fell by the hand of one of his own race.



WOLFE'S MONUMENT

**TOPICS.** — England and France as rivals in the New World; the decline of Spain; the situation as regarded England and France; the system of colonization followed by France; by England; the disputed territory; the rights of the Indians; the fur trade; the claim of Virginia; the Ohio Company; how the French anticipated the work of Virginia; the exploring party sent by the Ohio Company; the action of Governor Du Quesne; the decision of Governor Dinwiddie.



George Washington; the facts regarding his birth and his character; the story of his journey through the wilderness to Fort Le Bœuf; the return journey; breaking out of the French and Indian war; Washington's first battle; the affair at Fort Necessity; convention of the colonies at Albany, New York; Franklin's plan for a more perfect union; General Braddock; the account of his massacre; the service performed by Washington; expulsion of the Canadians; success of the French; death of Dieskau; the situation at the close of 1757; Fort William Henry; massacre of the prisoners; William Pitt; Washington's part in expelling the French from Fort Du Quesne; his election to the house of burgesses; anecdote relating thereto; the campaign of 1759; the task of General Wolfe; how Quebec was captured; death of Wolfe; of Montcalm; the treaty of 1763; its terms; why the course of France was a wise one; the conspiracy of Pontiac.

## CHAPTER XI

### HOME LIFE IN THE COLONIES



**T**HE Households of the Olden Times. — There was much that was interesting in the home life of our forefathers. Having learned what they did in the way of making history, from the first settlement down to the eve of the Revolution, let us see how it was with the boys and girls and their parents when within their homes.

In the first place, the houses in which the people lived were very different from those of to-day. In the earliest times they were made of logs, dovetailed at the corners, the chinks filled with clay, and put together as strongly as possible, because often they had to serve as forts against the Indians. The windows were small and narrow, so as to allow them to be used as portholes and to prevent an enemy from climbing through. Glass was so hard to obtain that oiled paper generally answered for panes. The interior rarely contained more than two or three rooms. The upper one, which was usually open and occupied only a part of the second story, was reached by a ladder which served for stairs.

The fireplace was wide, and the roaring flames burned a huge quantity of knots and logs of wood. This created a good deal of heat, but most of it passed up the chimney. In wintry weather the room would be chilly within a few feet of the fire. Accordingly, seats were fixed in the fireplace and something like comfort secured.

Carpets were not used at first. The bare floor was strewn with

white sand, which the thrifty housewife wrought into pretty designs with her broom. Sometimes the floor was only the hard, smooth earth. A few benches, a table, and stools made up the furniture. The big wooden latch of the door was lifted by means of a string shoved through a hole and left hanging outside. At night the door was locked by drawing in the string.

For a long time no forks were used. The food was cut with a knife and handled with the fingers, after being placed on blocks of wood. By and by, however, pewter plates came into use, and



A NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN

were kept polished and bright as a mirror. From the iron crane in the fireplace were hung the pots and kettles, and the cooking was done on a skillet or a griddle standing on legs, under which the glowing coals were raked.

Coffee and tea were luxuries denied at the beginning. Most families brewed their own beer. The well-to-do, who had brought their massive furniture and silverware across the sea, imported Madeira wine, but hard cider and rum were the most common drinks. The only condition required by the church was that none of its members should drink to excess.

**The Money used.**—Money was scarce. Business was done almost wholly by barter. Eggs, chickens, or produce were exchanged for whatever might be wanted at the store. In 1635, bullets were used for farthings. Massachusetts set up a mint in 1652 and was the only colony that coined money. The coins were known as the pine-tree shillings, sixpences, etc., because a pine tree formed the design upon them. For thirty years all the coins bore the same date.



**The Dress.** — The trousers of our great-grandfathers, even after the Revolution, ended at the knee, below which were the stockings and shoes. The trousers of the poor folks were made of coarse cloth, and sometimes of deerskin or leather. The wealthy used fine silk or velvet caps, gold and silver shoe and knee buckles, lace ruffles, and elaborate embroidery. The coat reached to the knees and was fastened in front with buttons, clasps, or hooks and eyes and decorated with gold lace. Then with a pleated stock of fine cambric around the throat, with a large silver buckle at the back of the neck, a broad-brimmed, sugar-loaf hat, from beneath which rippled the curls of the bleached or powdered wig, and with a brilliant red cloak the New Englander made a genteel appearance.

The women dressed much as they do to-day; that is to say, the fashions often changed. Certain styles would be in vogue for a time and then give place to others, which in turn were supplanted by still others. It may be said that fashions travel in circles. The costumes of the boys and girls resembled those of their parents, some of the present ones being close copies of what was common many years ago.

**Methods of Travel.** — The common mode of travel was by foot or on horseback. The roads were poor, and most of the streams had to be crossed by fording or by ferry. Chaises were seen, and the gigs, with their big wheels and bodies hung low on wooden springs, occasionally bobbed around the country. Those living near the coast generally journeyed on sloops. The voyage from New York to Philadelphia could be made, with favoring winds, in two or three days; now it is done in two hours. *By train!*

**In New England.** — The early New Englanders were very strict as to their religious opinions and attendance at church, and their morals were looked after by church and State. The rule of the minister was almost absolute. A church reproof was the deepest disgrace that could befall a person. The profane man was stood in a public place, with his tongue squeezed in a cleft stick, and left to meditate upon his wickedness. The head of a household

who broke up some sticks to rekindle his fire one Sunday was called to stern account for violating the sanctity of the day. If a man's profanity was too shocking, he was set in the stocks, fined, or imprisoned. Scolding women were gagged and placed

in front of their own doors for all to scoff at. If that failed to work a cure, they were ducked or soused in running water.

**Public Worship. —**

The meeting-houses were small and as plain as they could be made. The suggestion of a carpet, cushioned seats, or instrumental music would have shocked the good folk. In the early days of Plymouth, worshippers were summoned by tap of drum. Men and women were not allowed to sit together. The boys were perched on the pulpit stairs or in the galleries, where the constable or tithing man kept a sharp



PURITANS

eye on them. The popular length of a sermon was one hour, and the sexton turned the hour-glass on the minister's desk, but the sermons were often two, three, or even more hours in length.

If a boy became drowsy and nodded his head, he received a tap from the end of the stick held by the vigilant constable. On

that end of the stick was tied the foot of a hare. On the other end was the tail of the animal, which was brushed against the forehead of the wearied mother who allowed her eyes to close for a few minutes. No matter how cold the weather, the only fires permitted in the church were the warming contrivances brought by the people and placed at their feet. Sunday-schools were unknown until the nineteenth century.

**The Holidays.** — Thanksgiving and, later, Christmas (frowned upon at first) were marked by family reunions, good cheer, and much merriment. Weddings were times of great rejoicing, the festivities sometimes lasting for one or two days. There was plenty of feasting and drinking at funerals. Training day was a great event. All the men from sixteen to sixty years of age had to take part. At Plymouth the exercises or drill were always begun and closed with prayer. During the seventeenth century the guns were of the clumsy matchlock pattern. This was supplanted by the flintlock, which was used to some extent by our troops as late as the war with Mexico. Lucifer matches did not take the place of the flint and steel until well on in the nineteenth century.

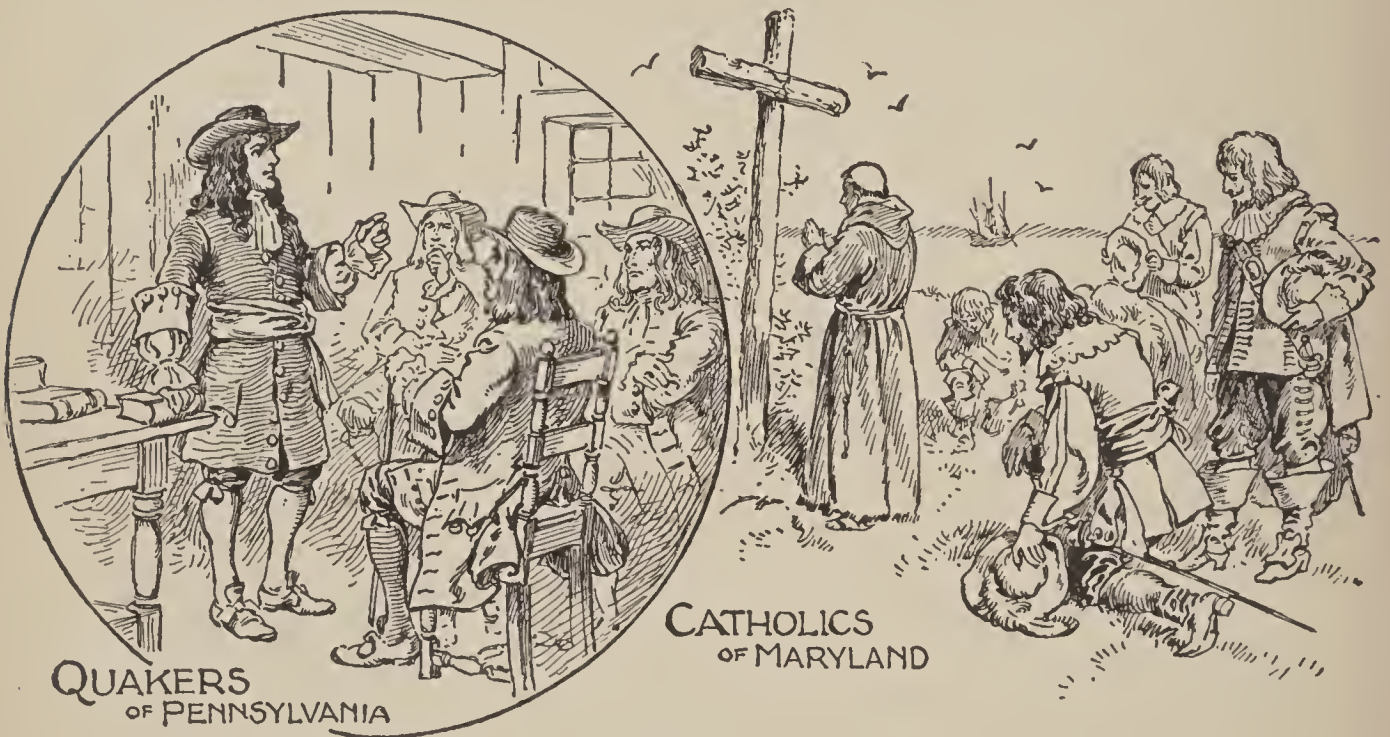
**The Dutch in New York.** — The Dutch were an easy-tempered, good-natured, moral people, resembling the New Englanders in one respect — their extreme neatness. They almost wore out the floors from continual scrubbing. The cows were kept as clean as the children, and sometimes their tails were decorated with ribbons. Their home life in the colonies was much the same as it is to-day in Holland.

**In the South.** — Though similar at first, there soon grew up a wide difference between life in New England and in the South. The Virginians, who constituted the real South until the Revolution, developed a taste for cock-fighting, bull-baiting, horse-racing, and fox-hunting, which form of amusements was not tolerated in New England. The best of horses were imported and trained for the exciting contests of speed. The people were very hospitable. The master of a plantation would send his servant at



nightfall to the crossing of the highways to bring to his house such travellers as he might see. These were made welcome, no matter how long they chose to stay, and hospitality has always been a notable characteristic of the Southern people.

**Relaxation of Rigor.** — The eighteenth century brought with it a softening of Puritan rigor. Popular assemblies, as they were called, were introduced in Boston in 1740, at which were music and dancing. A theatrical performance, however, about the same



time, caused so much indignation that Massachusetts hastened to pass a law which banished the drama for nearly a generation.

**Changes of Fashion.** — Wigs went out of fashion about the middle of the eighteenth century, when umbrellas came into use. Previous to that men wore "rain coats," and the women used "quintasols," small articles resembling a parasol, introduced from India. A marked improvement in houses, too, began to appear. Large mirrors, marble tables, and Turkey carpets were seen in the fine stone mansions of the wealthy. The spinning-wheel kept its place so long that it is still found among the valued relics in many old families. The small wheel, worked by the foot, was

for spinning linen thread, while the large wheel, turned by hand, was for woollen yarn.

**The Schools.** — The schools were poor affairs. They were not graded, and the teacher, as a rule, was a man of little learning, harsh and tyrannical, rarely with any love for his work, and with no sympathy for those intrusted to his care. His long switch, or "gad," rested on his rough desk in front of him, when he was not vigorously using it; for no one insisted more strongly than he that sparing the rod spoiled the child, and he was as severe to the girl as to the boy who violated his rules. If the man was fond of his pipe, he did not hesitate to smoke it during school hours. If the little boys and girls coughed too much or showed their displeasure, they were likely to feel the switch about their shoulders.

School hours lasted from eight o'clock until five, or even later, with one or two hours' intermission at noon. Instead of the long summer vacation now universal, two weeks in August were considered abundant time for boys and girls to run wild. I have attended school on the 4th of July. During the Christmas holidays, as they were called, Christmas was the only day on which the school was closed. If that happened to fall on Sunday, as it seemed to have a tendency to do, the disappointment can be imagined. The Saturday holiday is a modern innovation. It is not so long since every other Saturday, or every half Saturday, was the rule. Many a boy has walked straight home from his country school when it closed in the afternoon and made the latter part of the journey by moonlight.

And yet boys and girls are the same the world over and at all times. When our grandparents were young, they found as much entertainment as the lads and lassies do in these days. The May parties, the skating, snow-balling, the game of ball (quite different from the game as now played), fishing, hunting, shooting-matches, and many other methods of amusement were all enjoyed to their full; and though the benches at school were hard, the room crowded and ill-ventilated, the teacher often severe, the

church service tedious, and the parents stern and strict, the pupils grew up to be good men and women, many of whom won for themselves honored names in the history of our country.

**TOPICS.** — The houses of the olden time; the interior; the fireplace; carpets; the furniture; knives and forks; how the cooking was done; coffee and tea; the drinks; money; how trade was carried on; the dress of the poor people; of the wealthy; of the women; costumes of the boys and girls.

The different methods of travelling; church attendance in New England; the rule of the minister; how profanity was punished; what was done with a scolding woman; the meeting-houses; a description of church service in colonial times; the discomforts in church; the holidays; weddings and funerals; training day; the firearms; lucifer matches; the Dutch in New York; life in the South; hospitality of the people; a relaxation of rigor; some of the changes in fashion; the old-fashioned school-house: the teacher; the school hours; vacations; some of the means by which our ancestors found entertainment and enjoyment.

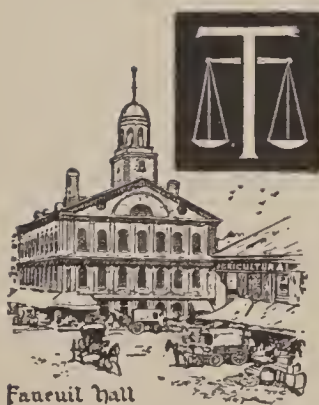


## PART III

### THE PERIOD OF THE REVOLUTION

#### CHAPTER XII

##### OPENING OF THE REVOLUTION



Faneuil Hall



**THE** Strength of the Colonies.—The French and Indian war was the training-school of the officers and soldiers of the Revolution. It gave them all-important military knowledge and experience and taught them their own strength. Our forefathers came across the Atlantic in search of civil liberty, and nothing could prevent their final separation from the mother country. But had England treated the colonies with justice, the separation would have been deferred, and, when it came, probably would have been a peaceable one; but Great Britain acted as if she meant to goad us to resistance, and she succeeded.

In 1766, Benjamin Franklin estimated the number of white men between the ages of sixteen and sixty years in the original thirteen colonies to be three hundred thousand. At one time there were nearly twenty-five thousand men under arms. Although there was a wide difference of character among the colonists, they were drawn together by a common destiny. Free schools were established in New England, and private institutions of learning were scattered throughout the country. Harvard

College, established in 1638, was succeeded by William and Mary in Virginia in 1692; Yale in Connecticut in 1700; Princeton in New Jersey in 1746; King's (now Columbia) in New York in 1754; Brown in Rhode Island in 1764; while Queen's (now Rutgers), Dartmouth, and Hampden-Sidney soon appeared, and did their part in the education of the rising generation. The first medical college was founded in Philadelphia in 1764.

But compared with what it is to-day, our country was but a young giant in its infancy. The population of New York city was about twelve thousand, and of Boston and Philadelphia barely eighteen thousand each. There was not an important town south of Philadelphia, and the villages and hamlets were few.

**Causes of the Revolution.** — The prosperity of the colonies was seriously crippled by the Navigation Act passed in the seventeenth century. It was often evaded, but the people were too weak to enforce its repeal. The Importation Act of 1733 laid oppressive duties on sugar, molasses, and rum brought into the country, and in 1750 the manufacture of steel was forbidden, and the felling of pines outside of enclosures was prohibited.

Attempts to enforce the Importation Act in 1761 caused great indignation among the people. Writs of Assistance, issued by the colonial courts, empowered petty constables to search any house to seize goods upon which there was reason to believe duty had not been paid. The Americans claimed that their own assemblies had the right to decide what taxes and customs should be raised. England would not permit this, but kept the right to herself. Her law-making body was the parliament, and she would not allow the Americans to have a member in it. Since this deprived our people of the right to take any part in taxing themselves, it was "taxation without representation," a phrase of which great use was made in forming a list of grievances against the mother country.

**The Stamp Act.** — On the 22d of March, 1765, England passed the Stamp Act, which was the direct cause of the Revolution. The colonies expended sixteen million dollars during the French

and Indian war, of which England repaid only five million dollars. She now determined to compel the Americans to raise the rest through her system of taxation. The Stamp Act ordered that stamps should be bought of the British government and put on all legal documents, newspapers, pamphlets, etc.

The resentment of the Americans was not confined to words. They mobbed the houses of the British officials, hanged some in effigy, destroyed the odious stamps, and caused so great a turmoil that the agents hastened to resign to save their lives. England was frightened by the storm she had raised, and repealed the act in 1766. Her surrender caused rejoicing throughout the country.

**The First Colonial Congress.** — The first colonial congress was held in New York, from October 7 to October 25, 1765. Twenty-eight delegates were present, representing Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, Pennsylvania, Maryland, South Carolina, Delaware, New Jersey, and New York. New Hampshire and Georgia pledged themselves to stand by the action of the congress. It adopted a Declaration of Rights, expressing its loyalty to England, but affirming that the people would never consent to taxation without representation.

**The Boston Massacre.** — The rejoicing over the repeal of the Stamp Act did not last long. England passed another law, affirming her right to tax the colonies. Troops were quartered on them at their own expense. This was intolerable. On the evening of March 5, 1770, a collision took place between the soldiers and a mob in the streets of Boston, in which Samuel Gray and a half-breed Indian, named Attucks, were killed at the first fire of the troops. Another citizen fell, and eight were wounded, two of them afterward dying. This is known in history as the Boston Massacre. The anger of the people was so intense that the governor removed the soldiers from the city.

It was on the day of the Boston Massacre that the English parliament repealed the duty on all American imports except tea. This exception was made to show the colonies that England did not mean to give up the right of taxation. But the



Americans were fighting for a principle, and though the tea, including the tax, was cheaper in America than it was in England without the tax, they would have none of it. The cargoes sent to New York and Philadelphia were not allowed to be landed, and at Charleston the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it soon spoiled.



BOSTON MASSACRE

**The Boston Tea Party.** — On the night of December 16, 1773, fifty or more men, painted and disguised as Indians, marched from near the Old South Church and boarded the three vessels lying in Boston harbor, loaded with tea. In the course of a few hours three hundred and forty-two chests were emptied into the water. Then the “Mohawks” quietly separated to their homes, keeping their secret so well that, outside the actors themselves, no one was ever able to name a half-dozen who took part in the famous Boston Tea Party.

**Retaliation by England.** — England now lost her patience and adopted retaliatory measures. She closed the port of Boston in the following year and appointed General Gage military governor of Massachusetts. The closing of the port caused much suffering, but Massachusetts had the sympathy of her sister colonies, who gave her help. Other oppressive measures were carried out, and General Gage brought a powerful army with which to bring the "rebels" to terms.

**The First Continental Congress.** — This body



FIRST CONTINENTAL CONGRESS



JOHN HANCOCK

met in Philadelphia, September 5, 1774. Representatives from all the colonies were present, except from Georgia, whose loyalist governor succeeded in preventing an election. Among the fifty-three members were some of the ablest men in the country, such as George Washington, Samuel and John Adams, Patrick Henry, John Hancock, and Richard Henry Lee. They pledged themselves to support Massachusetts in her struggle against the



British ministry, and a resolution was adopted, favoring the cessation of all commercial intercourse with Great Britain until the colonies should receive justice at her hands.

**The Battle of Lexington.** — The citizens of Boston secretly removed ammunition to Concord, about twenty miles to the northwest. Learning of this, General Gage prepared to capture or destroy the stores. Late on the night of April 18, 1775, he



MAJOR PITCAIRN AND THE MINUTE-MEN

sent out a body of eight hundred regulars, under the command of Lieutenant Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn. They moved cautiously, so as to surprise the patriots, but failed to do so.

The moon shone from a clear sky. British guards were stationed along the roads leading out of the city, to prevent any one giving the alarm. Suddenly two points of light flashed in the belfry of the Old North Church, and the many anxious eyes watching for the signal knew what it meant. Paul Revere, leaping



into the saddle started his horse on a dead run. Efforts were made to check him, but he speedily reached the open country on his mission to alarm the people.

Meanwhile the British troops were pushing rapidly forward. Observing the general uprising, Colonel Smith sent for reinforcements. General Gage despatched them at nine o'clock in the morning. They consisted of a brigade, which took the roundabout route through Roxbury and Brookline.

When the soldiers reached Lexington, the minute-men were gathering from all directions. It was beginning to grow light. Major Pitcairn in vigorous language ordered the rebels to disperse. Who fired the first shot is not known, but a skirmish was quickly started, in which eight Americans were killed and several wounded. Then the troops marched to Concord, where they found the men hiding military stores, while women and children were running to the woods for shelter. The angry minute-men were forming, and another collision was imminent. The stores having been destroyed, the British started back to Boston.

Every man who had a weapon now began firing at the "red coats." From behind fences, stone walls, trees, bushes, and everything that offered a chance for taking aim, the Americans, white with anger because of the slaughter at Lexing-



OLD NORTH CHURCH, BOSTON

ton, fired as fast as they could load and sight their guns. Their deadly aim destroyed the discipline of the troops, and probably all would have been captured or killed but for the arrival of the reinforcements. Under their protection the retreat was continued and Boston finally reached.



OLD BELFRY, LEXINGTON

As nearly as can be ascertained, the loss of the Americans in the battle of Lexington, which opened the Revolution, was forty-nine killed, thirty-six wounded, and five missing. The English had sixty-five killed, one hundred and seventy-eight wounded, and twenty-six missing. Swift messengers rode in all directions through the colonies, carrying the momentous tidings that the struggle for American independence had begun. The news set the people aflame with patriotic excitement.

Men dropped whatever they had in hand and hastened to Boston, where, in a short time, twenty thousand men were gathered around the city engaged in throwing up intrenchments to prevent the British from leaving.

**Capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point.** — The stirring doings were not confined to the vicinity of Boston. Some time before

the battle of Lexington, Connecticut voted to appropriate a thousand dollars toward the capture of Ticonderoga and Crown Point. The former fort was an important one, holding one hundred and twenty cannon, and had cost Great Britain several million dollars.

On the evening of May 9, about three hundred men, under Ethan Allen and Benedict Arnold, marched secretly against Ticonderoga. The garrison was taken completely by surprise. When the British colonel was summoned from his bed by the tumult, and stared through the door, with his startled wife peeping over his shoulder, he was confronted by his old acquaintance, Allen, who compelled him to surrender at once. Crown Point, of less importance, was captured two days later.



**Assembling of the Second Continental Congress.**—On the morning of the capture of Ticonderoga, the second continental congress assembled in Philadelphia. It voted to raise a force of twenty thousand men and to issue three million dollars in paper money for carrying on the war. Washington, to his own astonishment and embarrassment, was made commander-in-chief. His modesty prompted him to decline, but his patriotism would not permit, and thus he was fairly entered upon his illustrious career.

One fact about Washington should never be forgotten. For his inestimable services through the trying days and years of the Revolution he never accepted a penny by way of payment. All that he asked was that his expenses should be met. He kept strict account of every dollar received from the government, but was not so careful in noting what he paid out. When he found



his account "short," he balanced it by taking the deficiency from his own funds. So it is safe to say that he not only secured our independence, but paid for the privilege of doing so.

Congress also appointed a number of major generals, brigadier generals, and made Horatio Gates adjutant general. He and Washington set out for Cambridge to take charge of the army there. Upon reaching New York, they heard for the first time the news of the battle of Bunker Hill.

**The Battle of Bunker Hill.** — It was on the 25th of May that General Gage was joined in Boston by Generals Howe, Clinton, and Burgoyne, who brought reinforcements to the force, which was already considerable. The British decided to fortify Dorchester Heights and Bunker Hill, which overlooked the city. Learning of this, the Americans determined to anticipate them. General Artemas Ward, in command of the patriot camp, ordered Colonel Prescott, with one thousand men, to occupy Bunker Hill.

The start was made on the evening of June 16. The men first assembled at Cambridge, where President Langdon of Harvard College offered a prayer for the success of the expedition. Inasmuch as Breed's Hill was a half-mile nearer the city than Bunker Hill, it was decided that it was the better location. The men wrought so quietly that no alarm was given. At daylight, when the British saw what had been done, they opened fire on the earthworks, but the Americans did not cease work until the intrenchments were completed.

General Gage saw that unless these works were captured, he would have to abandon the city, for he would be at the mercy of the patriots. The intrenchments were defended by fifteen hundred undisciplined troops under a brave leader with little skill, while the forces sent against them were double that number, and, with their veteran leaders, had helped to win more than one famous victory in Europe. On the other hand, the earthworks gave the Americans the advantage of a strong position.

It was between two and three o'clock on the afternoon of June 17, 1775, that the British advanced to the assault. They

kept step to their stirring music, except when some slight confusion was caused by a brief pause to clear away the fences and obstructions. They advanced in two lines, their brilliant uniforms and beautiful, even marching making the sight a thrilling one. The housetops and steeples in Boston were black with people anxiously watching the scene.

The enemy moved slowly, so as to give the artillery opportunity to bombard the works. From the ships this was continuous, as well as from the floating batteries in the harbor. As the



BUNKER HILL MONUMENT



FANEUIL HALL

troops drew near the redoubts, they began firing by platoons, but the patriots waited. "Don't fire till you see the whites of their

eyes!" was the order of Prescott, who held his men mute until the enemy was within fifty yards. Then, circling his sword over his head, he shouted, "*Fire!*"

The outblast of flame mowed down the ranks, and the troops broke and fled in disorder to the bottom of the hill. There they were rallied, only to be driven back a second time by the withering fire. Once again, but with difficulty, they were rallied, and came up the slope on the double quick with fixed bayonets. By

this time the rapid fire of the patriots had exhausted their ammunition. Clubbing their muskets, they fought with desperation, but were driven out of their intrenchments. The battle of Bunker Hill was over and was a defeat for the Americans.

The loss of the patriots was one hundred and fifty killed, two hundred and seventy wounded, and thirty taken prisoners. The British loss, as stated by General Gage, was two hundred and



WASHINGTON ASSUMES COMMAND

twenty-four killed and eight hundred and thirty wounded. Among the British who fell was Major Pitcairn, and among the Americans, Joseph Warren, who, although he bore a major general's commission in his pocket, served as a volunteer in the redoubt.

**Effect of the Defeat.** — The moral effect of the battle of Bunker Hill upon the Americans was better than a victory. It saved them from the peril of overconfidence, while it served to draw all closer to one another and to make them more resolute in their



struggle for liberty. They knew the cost and were willing to pay it. They had learned, too, not to be afraid of the British regulars.

**Washington assumes Command.** — Washington reached Cambridge on Sunday, July 3, and the following day, under the historic elm, assumed command of the army. He was sorely needed.



EXPEDITION INTO CANADA

The thousands of men were without discipline, but most of them were eager to serve their country. They were of the right sort, but required moulding into effective form, and Washington set to work to train the patriots for duty.

**Montgomery's Expedition into Canada.** — While the siege of Boston was pressed, an expedition was organized for the invasion of Canada, under General Philip Schuyler. He falling ill, the command devolved upon Richard Montgomery, a brave Irish-

man, who had had military experience. He captured St. John, at the foot of Lake Champlain, then pushed on and took Montreal, and in the depth of winter forced his way through snow and ice to the front of Quebec.

Meanwhile, Benedict Arnold had ascended the Kennebec with a small force and was fighting his way, amid almost incredible suffering and hardship, through the wilderness. Gaunt, ragged, and half-starving, they reached the bank of the St. Lawrence opposite Quebec, November 10. Arnold led his men up the same path that Wolfe and his troops had climbed sixteen years before to the Heights of Abraham. Notwithstanding the fact that the force behind the walls had two hundred cannon, and were more than three times as numerous as the Americans, Arnold summoned General Carleton, the commander, to surrender.

Montgomery soon arrived and took command. The siege was pressed without the slightest promise of success, and on the last day of the year everything was risked upon an assault. Montgomery was killed, Arnold badly wounded, and most of the attacking force were compelled to surrender. Those who escaped kept up the siege until May, when the British forces scattered them right and left. Carleton was filled with pity for their sufferings, and, gathering up all that could be found, placed them in the hospitals, where they received the best of care, and when able to travel were allowed to return to their homes. The invasion of Canada was a complete failure.

**TOPICS.** — Strength of the colonies; the unwise course of England; Benjamin Franklin's estimate; the principal educational institutions; New York, Boston, and Philadelphia; the Navigation Act; the Importation Act; Writs of Assistance; taxation without representation; history of the Stamp Act; the first colonial congress.

The Boston Massacre; the tax on tea; fate of the different cargoes of tea sent to this country; the Boston Tea Party; the retaliatory acts by England; sympathy of other colonies for Massachusetts; General Gage; the second continental congress; its leading members; the story of the battle of Lexington; the losses on each side; Ticonderoga and Crown Point; reassembling





DEATH OF MONTGOMERY



of the second continental congress; its important action; one fact about Washington; what caused the battle of Bunker Hill; the story of the battle; its effect upon the Americans; assumption of command by Washington; the force under him; Montgomery's expedition into Canada; Benedict Arnold's part; result of the invasion.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Benjamin Franklin**, one of the greatest of American statesmen, philosophers, and writers, was born in Boston in 1706, and was the son of a tallow chandler and soap boiler, being the youngest of seventeen children. He was apprenticed to his brother who was a printer, but ran away to Philadelphia, where he established a paper in 1729. His ability brought him wealth, while his talents as a writer and his scientific discoveries made him famous on both sides of the Atlantic. In 1753, he was appointed deputy postmaster general of the British colonies. From 1757 to 1762, and again from 1764 to the Revolution, he was the agent of Pennsylvania in England, and for a part of the time agent also for Massachusetts, New Jersey, and Georgia. He was among the foremost in advocating American independence, and rendered invaluable service to his country. The leading events in his career will be learned as we advance in the study of our history. He died in Philadelphia in 1790, with a fame second only to that of Washington.

**General Thomas Gage**, born in 1721, commanded a regiment at Braddock's massacre. He was made governor of Montreal in 1760, and from 1763 to 1772 was British commander-in-chief in America. He resigned his commission soon after the battle of Bunker Hill and died in 1787.

**Samuel Adams** was born in Boston in 1722 and was a cousin of John Adams second President of the United States. No one did more with voice and pen to bring about the Revolution than he. As early as 1764, he drew up the protest of Boston against Grenville's system of taxation. From 1765 to 1774, Samuel Adams represented Boston in the Massachusetts house of representatives. He was a member of the continental congress from 1774 to 1781, and a signer of the Declaration of Independence. From 1789 to 1794 he was lieutenant governor of Massachusetts, and from 1794 to 1797 was governor. He died in 1803.

**Patrick Henry** was born in Virginia in 1736. He became a lawyer and was soon noted for his eloquence. He entered the house of burgesses in 1765, where he denounced the Stamp Act. He was a delegate to the first continental congress, and in 1775 made his famous "give me liberty or give me death" speech. He led in the formation of the State government of Virginia, and was its first governor, being elected in 1776, 1777, and 1778, and in 1784 and 1785. He was United States senator for a brief time (1794-1795), and was for many years in the Virginia legislature. He died in 1799.

**Richard Henry Lee** was born in Virginia in 1732, and from 1761 to 1788 was a leader in the Virginia house of burgesses and in the legislature. He was a prominent patriot and a delegate to the first continental congress, was on the committee to draft the address, and in the second continental congress he drew up the address to the people of Great Britain. On June 7, 1776, he moved the resolution of independence. He was president of congress, and a United States senator from 1789 to 1792, and died in 1794.



PATRICK HENRY'S FAMOUS SPEECH

**Paul Revere**, born in 1735, was a copper-plate engraver in Boston and made many caricatures of the exciting events immediately preceding the Revolution. Revere was one of the very few men who is known of a certainty to have been a leader at the famous Boston Tea Party. His ride on the night of April 18 to 19, 1775, when he warned the citizens of Lexington and Concord of the approach of the British troops, has been celebrated by Longfellow in his poem "Paul Revere's Ride." He printed the provincial paper money of Massachusetts in 1775, and put up a mill for the manufacture of gunpowder. He died in 1818.

**Joseph Warren**, born in 1741, was a graduate of Harvard and a physician in Boston. He was an ardent patriot and a leader in the events which ushered

in the Revolution. He was a gifted orator, a member of the committees on correspondence, president of the provincial congress of 1774, and chairman of the committee of public safety. He aided in organizing volunteers in the spring of 1775, and was made a major general by the Massachusetts provincial congress, but as has been stated, served as a volunteer private at the battle of Bunker Hill. He was recognized while fighting in the intrenchments by a British officer, who snatched a musket from a private soldier and shot him dead.

**Artemus Ward**, born in 1727, became a major in 1755, and served with Abercrombie against the French and Indians. He was made commander-in-chief of the Massachusetts forces in 1775, but though in nominal command at Bunker Hill was not in the battle. He conducted the siege of Boston until the arrival of Washington, when he became second in command. He was not successful as a military leader, and represented Massachusetts in congress from 1791 to 1795. He died in 1800.

**William Prescott**, born in 1726, was a provincial captain in the Nova Scotia expedition of 1755. He commanded a regiment of minute-men in 1774, and was among the last to leave the intrenchments at Bunker Hill, when the Americans were driven out by the British. He rendered good service under Gates in the Burgoyne campaign, and was a member for several years of the Massachusetts legislature. He died in 1795.

**Sir Guy Carleton**, born in England in 1724, won honor at the siege of Louisburg and Quebec. He was governor of Quebec from 1766 to 1770 and from 1775 to 1778. He commanded the army that invaded New York in 1776, and fought a hotly contested battle with Benedict Arnold on Lake Champlain. He was made a lieutenant general in 1777. In 1782 he superseded Sir Henry Clinton as commander-in-chief of the British forces in America. He was governor, as Lord Dorchester, of Canada from 1786 to 1796, and died in 1808.



## CHAPTER XIII

### EVENTS OF 1776

Where the  
first Congress  
met



#### GENERAL Howe's Evacuation of Boston. —

Washington faced every possible discouragement in pressing the siege of Boston. Two thousand of his men had no muskets; for six months he had not enough powder to risk a battle; the expiration of the terms of enlistment kept men continually going and coming; the Connecticut troops left in a body, despite his appeals to their patriotism, and the country was impatient with the commander's inactivity. But by his genius and ability he gradually brought a well-disciplined army out of the chaos. In the dusk of early evening, on the 4th of March, he opened fire on the city from all the batteries, and in the confusion occupied and fortified Dorchester Heights.

General Howe, who was now in command, soon found no choice left to him, and on the 17th of March he evacuated the city. Taking with him a number of tories, who dared not remain to meet their indignant neighbors, he sailed for Halifax, Nova Scotia. Washington occupied the place amid great rejoicing. Both branches of the Massachusetts legislature voted thanks to him, and congress ordered a commemorative medal to be struck. This was in gold and bronze, and is now in the possession of the Massachusetts Historical Society. The new American flag contained thirteen alternate red and white stripes, but the blue ground in the corner displayed the united crosses of St. Andrew and St. George.



MAP SHOWING THE AMERICAN LINES, 1775

**British Repulse at Charleston.** — The next blow of the enemy was struck in the South. Early in June, Admiral Parker, with twenty-five hundred troops, appeared off Charleston, which, hav-



ing been warned of his coming, was prepared. The bombardment opened on the morning of June 28. Fort Moultrie replied with such precision that every shot was effective, and in a short time the ships were riddled. The fleet consisted of ten men-of-



EXPLOIT OF SERGEANT JASPER

war, carrying two hundred and fifty-four guns. In the early part of the action the flag of South Carolina, blue in color, with a silver crescent and the single word "Liberty," was carried away by a shot from one of the ships. Sergeant William Jasper sprang through one of the embrasures, seized the fallen ensign, climbed



the wall amid a hot fire, coolly fixed it in place, and dropped down among his comrades. Finding it impossible to reduce the forts, the enemy withdrew, leaving the Americans triumphant.

**The Declaration of Independence.** — With every collision between the royalists and the patriots, the chasm separating England and the colonies widened. Washington affirmed that nothing but independence could save the nation. On the 7th of June,



THE NEW AMERICAN FLAG

as we have learned, Richard Henry Lee offered in congress a resolution that "these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States." Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston were appointed as a committee to prepare and submit a suitable declaration. Jefferson was selected to draft it. On July 2 Lee's resolution was formally passed by twelve of the colonies, New York not voting. On the 4th of July, after discussion

and a few trifling amendments, the Declaration of Independence was adopted.

The bell-ringer waited at his post for hours before the news reached him that the Declaration had been passed. Grasping the rope, he swung it with frenzied joy. As the tones rang over the city, the crowds on the street shouted, hurrahed, and became frantic with excitement. Bonfires were kindled at night, and as the news spread, the same rejoicing and enthusiasm attended it in the army and in the remotest corner of the colonies. The 4th of July will always be the most ardently celebrated holiday of our country.

**British Success on Long Island.** — At the time the British were bombarding Charleston, a part of the English fleet arrived from Nova Scotia, their purpose being the capture

of New York. Washington, in anticipation of this movement, had done his utmost to strengthen the defences after the departure of General Lee for the South. He succeeded in gathering an army of twenty-seven thousand men, of whom perhaps one-half were fit for duty. The British forces numbered thirty-two thousand, all of whom were well disciplined and well armed.



SIGNING THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE



A fourth of them were Hessians, so called because they were hired by the king of England from the ruler of Hesse-Cassel in Germany.

In the latter part of August, Clinton crossed over the Narrows to Long Island. The fortifications at Brooklyn extended from Gowanus Bay to Wallabout, where nine thousand men were stationed, under Generals Sullivan and Lord Stirling. General Greene was ill, and General Putnam was sent over to take charge of the defence. Between two and three miles to the south were three roads, over any one of which the British commander could advance. By a fatal oversight one of these roads was left unguarded, and the enemy quickly took advantage of it. The consequence was the rout of the Americans. They were caught between the different detachments of the British army and driven pell-mell out of their intrenchments. Had Howe pushed his advantage, he might have captured the whole patriot army, including Washington and his officers. But confident that he was certain soon to do so, he wished to spare the lives of his men. The British lost about four hundred and the Americans two thousand, of whom a thousand were prisoners. Among the latter were Generals Sullivan and Stirling. The leading officers were soon exchanged, but the privates suffered frightfully in the sugar-house and old hulks at Wallabout, where it is said eleven thousand died miserable deaths before the close of the war.

A singular providence saved the American army from capture. An adverse wind delayed the operations of the fleet, and then a dense fog enveloped Brooklyn, while New York had a clear atmosphere. Under cover of this screen the Americans withdrew unnoticed from Brooklyn, and were in New York before the British learned of their departure.

**Nathan Hale, the Martyr.** — It was of the highest importance that Washington should learn something of the intentions of the enemy, as well as the distribution of his forces. Captain Nathan Hale volunteered to enter the British camp as a spy and attempt to gain the information. He disguised himself as a country



school-teacher, but after completing his work was discovered, arrested, and hanged as a spy. When he stood on the scaffold, with the fatal noose about to be placed about his neck, he said: "My only regret is that I have but one life to give to my country."

It being impossible to hold New York, Washington strongly fortified Harlem Heights, but the condition of his army was distressful. Desertions and the expirations of the terms of enlistments threatened to dissolve it. On the 12th of October, Howe's advance passed through Hell Gate in flat boats, landing at Frog's Point, on the mainland of New York. Waiting several days for reinforcements and supplies, he moved up to Pell's Point, between East Chester and New Rochelle. He was soon joined by a large number of Hessians.

**American Defeat at White Plains.** — A council of war decided that Harlem Heights could not be held, and all the forces were withdrawn except the garrison at Fort Washington. The position at White Plains was attacked by Howe and Clinton on the 28th of October. The patriots fought bravely, but were forced back, Washington withdrawing to Northcastle Heights, while Howe turned



NATHAN HALE AS A SPY

about, and by an overwhelming attack on the 16th of November compelled Fort Washington to surrender.

**The Retreat through New Jersey.** — Washington's dread now was of a British campaign against Philadelphia, the most important city of the colonies, where congress was in session. He had crossed to the west bank of the Hudson and stationed him-



THE RETREAT THROUGH NEW JERSEY

self with General Greene at Fort Lee. Cornwallis, the most skilful of all the British leaders, landed at a point opposite Yonkers with six thousand troops two days after the surrender of Fort Washington. Fort Lee could not hold out against so strong a force, and the American army withdrew to the other side of the Hackensack. Then Washington began his retreat through New Jersey, with Cornwallis in pursuit.

Through Newark and Brunswick (now New Brunswick) the

patriot army tramped to Trenton, on the Delaware. Cornwallis followed by way of Elizabethtown (now a part of Elizabeth), Uniontown, and Woodbridge, gathering horses, cattle, and all the plunder within reach, the two armies so near each other that they continually exchanged shots. The patriots were in rags, many barefooted, and the route was marked at times by their bloody footprints.

General Charles Lee followed the army at so laggard a pace that a scouting party of the British captured him at Baskingridge, in New Jersey. Stirling succeeded to his command and joined Washington at Trenton. The force, barely five thousand strong, crossed the Delaware at the same hour that Cornwallis, with a much larger army, entered the upper part of the town.

With his body of shivering, half-starved patriots, and with congress fleeing in a panic from Philadelphia, Washington determined to strike a blow that should revive the drooping hopes of his countrymen. His plan was to recross the river in three divisions and fall upon the Hessians at Trenton, when they did not dream of anything of the kind.

One division was to force the passage at Bristol, ten miles below Trenton; a second opposite the town; while Washington was to make the passage at the present village of Taylorsville, Pennsylvania, eight miles above. Neither of his aids could effect a crossing, because of the immense quantities of floating ice in the river. The whole task, therefore, fell upon Washington himself. He had seized all the boats along the Delaware for many miles up and down stream, and Cornwallis therefore could not continue the pursuit into Pennsylvania.

**Battle of Trenton.** — Amid a storm of sleet and snow, with the weather bitterly cold, Washington gathered his twenty-four hundred men, the best of the army, on the shore. With him were Generals Greene, Stirling, Sullivan, Stephen, Stark, Mercer, St. Clair, Knox, and other fine officers. It was Christmas night, that time having been chosen because the Hessians at Trenton were sure to be spending it in festivity and merriment.



The flat boats were pushed through the grinding blocks of ice, and the entire force landed on the New Jersey side before the bleak, wintry morning dawned. It was still snowing, with the wind blowing hard. The patriot army marched inland to the present village of Birmingham, four miles from the river. There the force divided, Greene taking what is known as the "Scotch road," which leads into the upper part of the town, over the present Pennington turnpike. Sullivan followed the river road,



VICTORY AT TRENTON

entering the lower part of the town. The distance is about the same by the two routes, and it was intended that the divisions should arrive at the same time. Washington accompanied Greene.

In the gray light of the early morning, Washington drove in the pickets and entered the "head" of the town. While doing so, the sound of musketry firing showed that Sullivan had also arrived and was pressing the attack from the river side at the lower end of Trenton.

Colonel Rall, the Hessian commander, was a brave man, and,

though surprised, made a gallant effort to rally his men. Several pieces of artillery were brought up, but the Americans captured them before they could be brought into use. In this exploit, Lieutenant Monroe, afterward President of the United States, was the leader. Colonel Rall, while striving to form his men for a charge, was mortally wounded. This threw the Hessians into a panic. Most of them started on a run toward Princeton, but were headed off by Hand's riflemen and surrendered. A few of the British troops and yagers dashed over the Assunpink bridge and escaped in the direction of Bordentown. Colonel Rall, supported on either side by a sergeant, and suffering intensely, walked slowly up to where Washington was seated on his horse, and handed him his sword, begging that he would be merciful to his captured men. Washington gave the promise, and expressed his sympathy with the stricken officer, upon whom he called after he was carried to a house and laid upon a bed, and spent some time in striving to cheer his last moments.

**Effects of the Victory.** — By this brilliant victory the Americans secured nine hundred and fifty prisoners, six guns, and a large number of small arms, besides killing about twenty men and wounding four times as many. Four of the patriots were wounded and two killed, the latter probably from exposure, rather than the bullets of the enemy. Compared with many battles since then, that of Trenton was only a skirmish, and yet its importance can hardly be overestimated. It did what Washington intended — electrified the despairing patriots, gave an impetus to enlistments, and inspired hope through the country. Trenton was the turning-point of the Revolution.

But the skilful Cornwallis with his powerful army was a few miles away, and Washington dared not linger. Before night he had crossed with his army and prisoners to the Pennsylvania side. Cornwallis's scouts reporting this to him, he fell back to Princeton. The British at Burlington, learning what had been done, abandoned South Jersey.

Washington remained three days on the Pennsylvania shore,

when he crossed once more to Trenton, where he received reinforcements which increased his army to six thousand men. Robert Morris, the wealthy Philadelphian, who did noble work in raising funds for carrying on the war for independence, sent fifty thousand dollars in specie to Washington, with which to pay his suffering patriots.

**TOPICS.**—The discouragements of Washington; what he accomplished; the evacuation of Boston; the British repulse at Charleston; exploit of Sergeant Jasper; history of the Declaration of Independence; how it was celebrated; the work of Washington for the defence of New York; the American defeat on Long Island; the providence which saved the American army.

Nathan Hale the martyr; Washington's withdrawal from New York; the defeat at White Plains; other disasters; Washington's retreat through New Jersey; capture of General Charles Lee; Washington's plan for striking a blow at Trenton; why he had no assistance; Washington's crossing of the Delaware; the battle of Trenton; the prisoners and spoils secured by Washington; the losses on each side; the effect of the victory; movements of Cornwallis; of Washington; the timely help given by Robert Morris.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.**—**Richard, Earl Howe**, was a British rear-admiral when appointed, in 1776, commander-in-chief of the naval forces in North America. After taking possession of Long Island and New York, he occupied Philadelphia as we shall learn in the next chapter, in 1777. In 1778, he resigned his charge to Admiral Byron and returned to England, where he became an admiral, won a great victory over the French in June, 1794, and died in 1799.

**Sir William Howe**, brother of the above, was four years his junior and served under General Wolfe at Quebec in 1759. He was commander of the British troops at Bunker Hill, and, as we have learned, was successful on Long Island, at White Plains, and at Forts Mifflin and Mifflin. He defeated Washington at Brandywine, in 1777, and occupied Philadelphia. He was superseded in 1778 by Sir Henry Clinton. He was an indolent man, well educated, and popular with his officers, but never seemed to put his heart in any duty he undertook. He died in 1814.

**Roger Sherman**, born in 1721, was a shoemaker, and became in turn a surveyor, a lawyer, judge of the superior court of Connecticut, and a member of its legislature. He was a delegate to the first and second continental congresses, was one of the five who drafted the Declaration of Independence, of which he was a signer, a member of the Connecticut committee of safety, and a delegate to the Federal constitutional convention of 1787.



He served in the national house of representatives, 1789-1791, and as United States senator, 1791-1793. Once when addressing the senate, he was interrupted by the cynical John Randolph of Roanoke (who claimed descent from Pocahontas), with the sarcastic inquiry: "I would like to ask the gentleman what he did with his leather apron when he came to congress?" "I cut it up to make moccasins for the descendants of Pocahontas," was the instant reply. Sherman died in 1793, leaving a record for honorable usefulness, which has been equalled by few public men.

**Robert R. Livingston**, born in 1746, was a graduate of King's (Columbia) College, a lawyer, member of the New York assembly, and delegate to the continental congress, where he was one of the five who drafted the Declaration of Independence. He was secretary for foreign affairs in 1781-1783, and from 1777 to 1801 chancellor of the State of New York, and as such administered the oath of office to Washington in 1789. While minister to France, 1801-1805, he helped negotiate the Louisiana purchase, and gave great aid to Robert Fulton in developing steamboat navigation. He died in 1813.

**Sir Henry Clinton**, born in 1738, was a major general when he came to Boston, in 1775, with Howe and Burgoyne. In 1778, he became commander-in-chief of the British forces in this country. In May, 1778, he captured Charleston and the whole army of Lincoln, and in the following month fought the battle of Monmouth. He planned with Benedict Arnold, the traitor, the surrender of West Point, but failed to relieve Cornwallis in 1781, and returning to England in 1782, died in 1795.

**Israel Putnam**, born in Massachusetts in 1718, settled in Connecticut as a farmer. He served in the French and Indian war, and was the hero of many romantic and stirring adventures. He commanded a regiment in the Canadian campaign of 1760, and was a leader among the "Sons of Liberty," before the Revolution. He left his plough in the furrow upon hearing the news of the battle of Lexington, and rode a hundred miles almost without drawing rein to Boston. He was made brigadier general, and was in joint command with Prescott at Bunker Hill. He soon became a major general and commanded the centre at the siege at Boston. He was actively engaged throughout the Revolution and died in 1790.

**William Alexander** was born of English parentage in New York city in 1726. He inherited the title of earl from his father, and, in 1757, laid claim to the same before the house of lords, but it was refused to him. Since he was entitled to the honor, however, he figures in history as Lord Stirling. He was a colonel in 1775, a brigadier general in 1776, and a major general in 1777. He was exchanged after his capture at Long Island, and rendered good service at Trenton, Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. He died in 1783.

**Nathan Hale** was one of the most admirable characters developed by our

Revolutionary period. He was noted as the finest athlete and foremost student at Yale College, where for many years the marks were carefully preserved which showed a prodigious leap made by him in a contest with his young friends. He was only twenty years old at the outbreak of the Revolution, but immediately enlisted and persuaded others to join with him. He was made captain in 1776, and his company was the best disciplined in the whole army. After entering the British lines in the garb of a school-teacher, he remained two weeks, during which he gathered invaluable information for Washington, though it is not known where he spent all the time, nor precisely where he went. While sitting in a tavern, on Long Island Sound, waiting for a boat, he was recognized by a tory relative, who betrayed him to an English vessel lying near. Hale walked several paces into the edge of the water to meet his supposed friends, when several guns were levelled at him, and he was ordered to surrender. He ran a few steps, when, looking back over his shoulder and seeing no escape, he submitted. He did not deny his character, and met his fate with the loftiest heroism. It is not known where the body of the patriot martyr was buried.

Johann G. Rall (sometimes erroneously spelled Rahl), born about 1725, was the Hessian commander at Trenton. He had previously fought at White Plains, and helped to capture Fort Washington. In Trenton he made his headquarters with Abraham Hunt, the principal merchant of the place. He was fond of his pipe, whiskey toddy, and cards. He and Hunt were playing cards on Christmas night, 1776, when a note was sent in for Rall, who thrust it into his pocket intending to read it after finishing the game, but he forgot the matter until he was carried, mortally wounded, into the old tavern in Queen (now Warren) Street. Then, when the letter was examined, it was found to be a warning of the approach of Washington, and had been written by a tory who brought it in haste to the door of Hunt's house. But for that game of cards, the history of the Revolution would have been changed. The remains of the Hessian commander rest in the burying-ground of the First Presbyterian Church of Trenton.

## CHAPTER XIV

### EVENTS OF 1777



Where the first Stars and Stripes was made.

**OLD GLORY."** — The Stars and Stripes were created by resolution of congress on the 14th of June, 1777. Washington, assisted by a committee, had much to do in preparing the design. They called upon Mrs. Elizabeth Ross, in Philadelphia, and requested her to make a flag from a rough draft prepared by Washington. It was at the suggestion of Mrs. Ross that Washington's six-pointed star was changed to a five-pointed one. She completed the flag the next day and it was greatly admired. Mrs. Ross manufactured the flags for many years for the government, and her children succeeded to the business. The house in which "Old Glory" was first made is still standing at 239 Arch Street.

**The Struggle at the Assunpink Bridge.** — Returning to the military events at the beginning of the year, it should be said that as soon as Cornwallis learned that Washington had appeared again in Trenton, he prepared to crush him. He advanced upon the town, January 2. The Assunpink Creek, running through the middle of Trenton, was spanned by a wooden bridge built nearly a hundred years before. Washington drew up his army on the eastern side of the structure and checked the advance of Cornwallis. His cannonade killed a number of the enemy (precisely how many is not known), and the engagement, omitted by most historians, has come to be known as the battle of the Assunpink.

**The Victory at Princeton.** — The opposing forces encamped on opposite sides of the Assunpink. The situation of Washington



was critical. The Delaware behind him had become impassable, while in front the powerful British were waiting for daylight, so as to overwhelm him. The bivouac fires were kept burning bright, and the men were seen digging the intrenchments throughout the night. The foe was completely deceived, for Washington stealthily withdrew from the town, and taking a circuitous course reached Princeton, ten miles away, at dawn. There he fell upon the astonished enemy, attacking them with such vigor that they were driven pell-mell out of the town. In this battle of Prince-



GENERAL BURGoyNE

ton, fought on the 3d of January, Washington exposed himself to great personal danger, and infused courage among his troops by his heroic example. The loss was considerable on both sides, General Mercer being among the patriots who fell.

Cornwallis at Trenton heard the boom of the cannon to the northward and knew what it meant. He started in all haste for Princeton, but when he reached the town the patriots were gone. Cornwallis pressed on to Brunswick to protect the

valuable stores there, while Washington withdrew to Morristown, where he went into winter quarters and remained until the following May.

**Burgoyne's Campaign.** — A formidable campaign was planned by the enemy for 1777. Lieutenant General Burgoyne, with an army of seven thousand British and Hessians, besides a corps of artillery and a large number of Indians, was to invade New York from Canada, by way of Lake Champlain and Albany. The aim was to cut off New England from the other States. If successful, the country would be so weakened that its conquest was inevitable.

Another body of troops, under St. Leger, with more Indians and Tories, was to ascend the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario, and make its way to Albany along the Mohawk, while Clinton expected to send a strong force up the Hudson from New York.

Upon the approach of the enemy, the Americans abandoned Ticonderoga, which was occupied by the British. Burgoyne reached Fort Edward on the 30th of July, and General Schuyler took position at Saratoga.

**Relief of Fort Schuyler.** — Ascending the St. Lawrence to Lake Ontario, St. Leger invested Fort Schuyler with a force of eighteen hundred men. The garrison was one-third as large. General Nicholas Herkimer, a brave militia officer, gathered the militia in the vicinity and set out to relieve the garrison. He fell into an ambuscade of regulars and Indians and was among the mortally wounded. The grim old hero, however, lit his pipe, propped himself against the saddle of his horse on the ground, and continued to give orders as coolly as if directing a parade. A force from the garrison drove away the British and Indians.

St. Leger pressed the siege, and Benedict Arnold was sent against him. His force was too weak to attack, but he released a prisoner who had agreed to rush into the British camp, pretending to be a deserter, and bearing a terrifying story of the strength of the Americans. He did his work so well that St. Leger hastily retreated.

**Victory at Bennington.** — Burgoyne began to suffer for food. He sent six hundred Hessian troops, soon followed by five hundred more, to Bennington, Vermont, to seize a lot of provisions. General Stark, who was on his way with sixteen hundred recruits to join General Gates (who had superseded Schuyler), met these detachments on the 16th of August, and routed them with heavy loss.

Every day improved the situation of Gates, for recruits were continually arriving, while Burgoyne's dilemma grew steadily worse. His Indians deserted, and his supply of provisions was not only running low, but there was no way of getting more.



The danger of starvation became imminent, nor did anything appear of the promised diversion of Clinton from New York. Burgoyne therefore decided to drive aside the Americans on his left and retreat to the lakes.

**Surrender of Burgoyne.** — He attempted to carry out this plan, but was defeated, with the loss of several hundred men, among whom were some of his best officers. General Gates neglected no possible advantage. He posted fifteen hundred men on Bemis Heights, opposite the ford at Saratoga, two thousand in the rear, and fifteen hundred at a post higher up. Then Burgoyne was



BENNINGTON BATTLEGROUND

almost surrounded, with his supplies running short and his army rapidly losing strength through desertions, while that of the Americans was as rapidly increasing. The situation soon became hopeless.

General Burgoyne surrendered on the forenoon of October 17. The army which thus became prisoners of war included five thousand seven hundred and sixty-three officers and men, among whom were six members of the British parliament, who had joined the lieutenant general, that they might be entertained by witnessing the overthrow of the American rebels. Some of the trophies were a fine train of brass artillery, consisting of forty-two pieces,



five thousand muskets, and an enormous quantity of ammunition. The Americans treated the prisoners with kindness, sharing their food with the troops, and showing them every consideration.

The capture of Burgoyne and his army was the most substantial triumph that the Americans had thus far gained during the war. It spread dismay in England and caused unbounded rejoicing on this side of the Atlantic.

#### **The Campaign in Pennsylvania.**

—Having followed the campaign in the North to its triumphant conclusion, we must return to Washington and learn of his movements. The skilful manner in which he baffled Cornwallis won the praise not only of his countrymen, but excited the admiration of Europe. Frederick the Great pronounced his achievements among the most brilliant in history.

Washington left his winter quarters at Morristown in the latter part of May. His army numbered less than eight thousand, while that of Howe was fully twice as strong. The latter was still at Brunswick, and Washington, from behind the



BENNINGTON MONUMENT

Raritan at Middlebrook, closely watched his movements. Howe marched to Staten Island, embarked his army on his brother's fleet, and some days later entered Chesapeake Bay. Washington had moved to Germantown, in anticipation of events, and when he learned what had taken place, saw that the enemy's ultimate destination was Philadelphia.

Howe reached the head of Elk River, in Maryland, on the 24th of August, and defeated the American army, September 11, on the Brandywine, inflicting considerable loss. Washington entered Philadelphia the next day, and on the 19th crossed the Schuylkill and took station on the eastern bank of the river, with detachments at the different fords where the enemy was likely to cross.

**The Paoli Massacre.** — General Anthony Wayne hid himself in the woods with fifteen hundred men, intending to assail the enemy in the rear. His presence, however, was revealed to the British, who, on the night of September 20, fell upon him with great fury and killed about three hundred troops. This event is known as the Paoli Massacre.

**Fall of Philadelphia.** — Howe had now secured command of the Schuylkill and crossed with his whole army. Meeting with no opposition at Germantown, he took possession of Philadelphia. The Americans, reinforced by eleven thousand men, stationed themselves on the east side of the Schuylkill, about eighteen miles from Germantown, where the main body of the British army was posted.

**American Defeat at Germantown.** — Howe set out to reduce the forts below Philadelphia, so as to open the way for the fleet. While he was thus engaged, Washington attempted to surprise the enemy at Germantown. Everything was going well, when a stubborn resistance was encountered at the "Chew-House." This structure was built of stone and could not be fired, while it successfully resisted the cannon brought to bear upon it. A dense fog hid the troops from each other, and a number of companies were fired into by their own friends. The confusion became so great that the enemy was given time to rally, and since everything



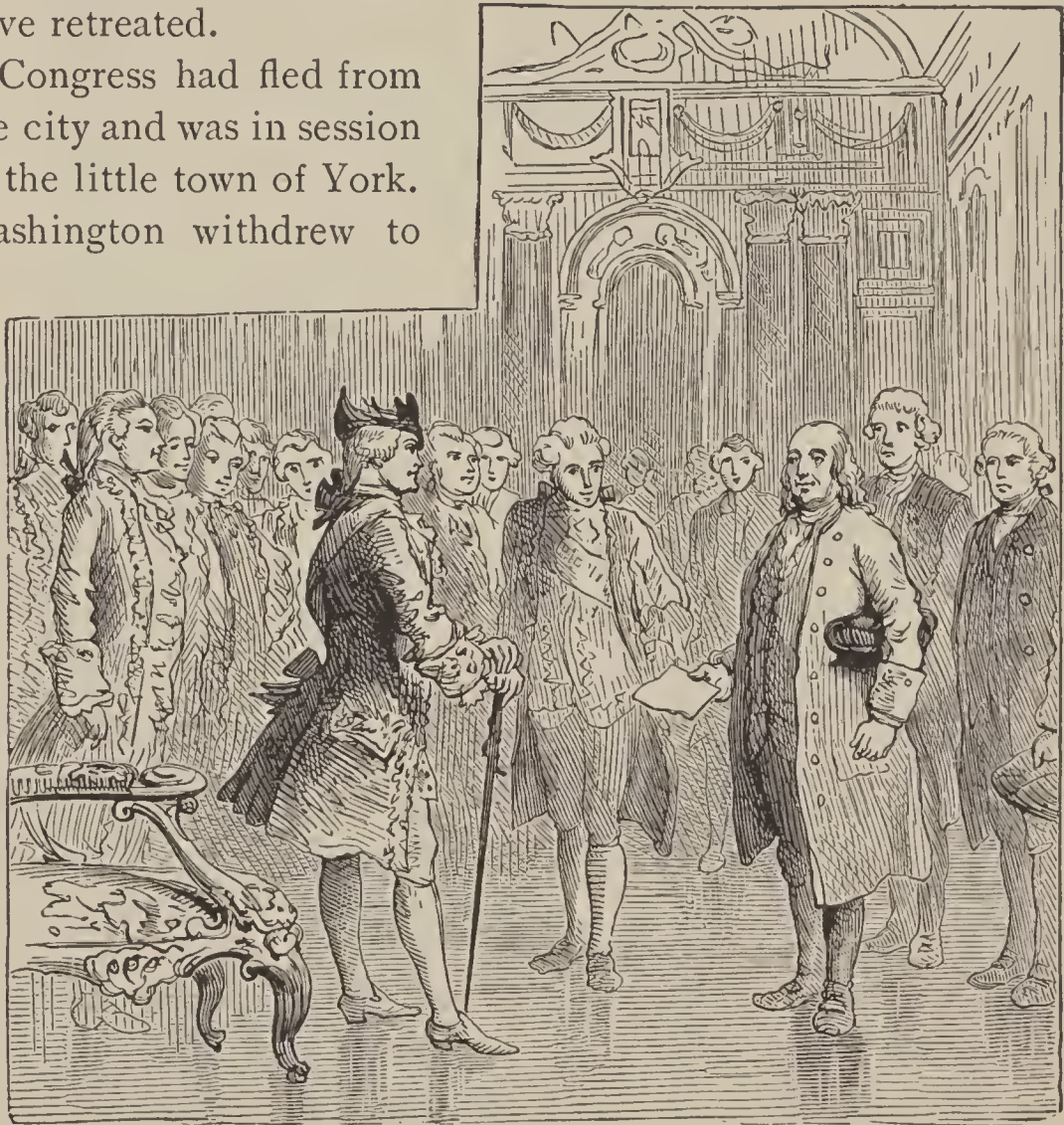


CHEW-HOUSE



was going wrong, Washington was obliged to order a retreat. This was accomplished without leaving a gun behind, but one thousand men were lost, that of the British being six hundred. It was afterward learned that had the fight continued a few minutes longer, Howe would have retreated.

Congress had fled from the city and was in session in the little town of York. Washington withdrew to



FRANKLIN AT THE COURT OF FRANCE

Valley Forge, and the invaders settled in Philadelphia for the winter, where, having plenty of gold, they were enabled to live upon the fat of the land.

**The Articles of Confederation.** — On the 15th of November, congress adopted the Articles of Confederation and Perpetual Union. The States, although urged to ratify them, were so

deliberate that it was not until 1781 that New Hampshire, which was the last, complied.

**Foreign Assistance.** — From the opening of the war, congress had been striving to secure foreign assistance. The French showed a friendly interest in the colonies, and as early as 1776 Silas Deane was sent as a commissioner to France. He did little, and Benjamin Franklin and Arthur Lee took his place. Franklin's wit, good sense, and quaint dress and ways captured the volatile people. The government, however, was not yet ready to recognize the struggling patriots, but Franklin secured valuable aid. More than twenty thousand stands of arms and a thousand barrels of gunpowder reached this country from France in 1778.

**Valley Forge.** — The winter of 1777-1778 was unusually severe. Hundreds of our soldiers were without shoes and stockings, their clothing was in tatters, and gnawing hunger tormented them continually. The continental army was much weaker than the British, who held high revel in Philadelphia, twenty miles away.

At Valley Forge the camp was laid out in streets of log-cabins, and the position was a strong one. Every precaution was taken against surprise. In the huts, each fourteen by sixteen feet, twelve privates made their home. Only a few had anything resembling bedding, and many could not secure even straw. When the snow sifted through the crevices, and the tiny fire gave out scarcely any heat, the men huddled together, and by keeping close saved themselves from freezing to death.

Those were the times that tried men's souls. Washington's patriotism inspired all around him. Isaac Potts, at whose house he was quartered, was walking through the woods one day near his dwelling, when he heard the voice of some one in prayer. Peeping among the trees, he saw Washington on his knees, petitioning heaven to save his beloved country. In relating the incident to his wife, Mr. Potts added: "If there is any one to whom the Lord will listen, it is George Washington, and with him as leader our independence is certain."



**TOPICS.** — The struggle at the Assunpink bridge; Washington's strategy; the battle of Princeton; the formidable campaign planned by the enemy for 1777; the siege of Fort Schuyler; Nicholas Herkimer; how the fort was relieved; Stark's victory at Bennington; the desperate situation of Burgoyne; his surrender; the spoils of the victory; the admiration caused by Washington's skill; his departure from Morristown; the movement of Howe against Philadelphia; Washington's movements; the Paoli Massacre; fall of Philadelphia; American defeat at Germantown; congress; the Articles of Confederation; assistance given by France; Franklin's tactful course; the patriots at Valley Forge; anecdote of Mr. Potts.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — Charles, Earl and later Marquis, Cornwallis, born in 1737, was an officer in the Seven Years' war. He was a member of parliament and friendly disposed toward the Americans when trouble first

appeared. His prominent part in the Revolution is set forth in the chapters that follow. He was the ablest of the British commanders, and was impatient with Clinton, who, though his superior in rank, was his inferior in skill. He was governor general of India in 1786-1793 and in 1805, where his services were of a high character. He was lord lieutenant of Ireland, 1798-1801, and died in 1805.



HORATIO GATES

Horatio Gates was an Englishman, born in 1728. He served as captain in Braddock's expedition and was made adjutant of the continental army in 1776. His success over Burgoyne was mainly due to good fortune and the skill of his

officers, but he was so puffed up that he plotted to obtain Washington's place as commander-in-chief; but fortunately for his country, he and the cabal which favored the scheme were unsuccessful. He failed so ignobly in the South that he was removed from command, though in 1782 a court-martial acquitted him of blame. He died in 1806.

**Hugh Mercer**, born in Scotland about 1720, served in the French and Indian war and was made a brigadier general in 1776. He commanded a column at Trenton and led the advance at Princeton. He was surrounded, and although repeatedly ordered to surrender, refused to do so and died des-



perately fighting. Mercer county, in which Princeton and Trenton are located, was named in his honor.

**Barry St. Leger**, born in 1737, took part in the capture of Louisburg and of Quebec. After his repulse from before Fort Stanwix, he made his headquarters at Montreal and carried on a guerilla warfare. He died in 1789.

**John Burgoyne**, born in 1723, was a member of parliament and an officer who was soon made lieutenant general. He was in disfavor in England for a long time because of his surrender, but justice was finally done him. Burgoyne was a writer of considerable merit, and published a number of poems and comedies. He died in 1792.

**John Stark** was born in New Hampshire in 1728. He was a valiant soldier in the wars of the border and in the French and Indian war, serving also in Canada and at Trenton and Princeton. Feeling aggrieved at his treatment by Congress, he resigned in 1777. When the New Hampshire militia were called out by the danger from Burgoyne's invasion, they demanded Stark as their leader. We have learned of the decisive defeat he administered to the Hessian detachment. When the battle was about to open, Stark addressed his men: "There they are, boys; we must beat them to-day, or this night Molly Stark's a widow." The loss of the Americans was fifty-four, and that of the Hessians some eight hundred. This brilliant exploit brought Stark forward again. He was made a brigadier general and did valiant service to the close of the war. General Stark was in his ninety-fifth year at the time of his death.

**Anthony Wayne** was born in Pennsylvania in 1745. He was a surveyor and afterward a member of the legislature and of the committee of public safety. He had charge of a regiment in the Canadian invasion of 1775, and later of the Ticonderoga forts. He was commissioned as a brigadier general and displayed great bravery and skill at Brandywine, where he commanded a division. His further services will be learned in the course of our study of the following pages. His impetuous bravery caused him to be known as "Mad Anthony," but never was there more method in a man's madness, for he was careful and weighed all the chances before plunging into battle. One of the most striking examples of his caution, followed by overwhelming success, was given in 1794 at the battle of the Fallen Timbers. He died in 1796.

**Arthur Lee**, born in 1740, was a brother of Richard Henry and Francis Lightfoot Lee, all prominent in early Virginia and in national matters. He was appointed with Deane and Franklin in 1776 to secure a treaty of alliance with France, and was afterward commissioner to Spain and Prussia and a member of congress. He possessed brilliant parts, but often repelled by his arrogance and displeasing ways.

**Silas Deane**, the associate of Franklin and Lee in 1776, was born in Connecticut in 1737, which State he represented in the continental congress. Lee accused him of extravagance and dishonesty in France and secured his recall in 1778. Congress demanded a full statement from Deane and he returned to France to obtain the necessary papers. He found himself so unwelcome in that country that he was obliged to withdraw to Holland. He died in 1789, when on the eve of sailing from England for home.

## CHAPTER XV

### EVENTS OF 1778



**IMPORTANT Allies.**—One day in February, 1778, there came to Valley Forge a veteran of the Seven Years' war under Frederick the Great. He was two years older than Washington and had been a soldier from the age of fourteen. He was Baron Frederick William von Steuben, and was undoubtedly the most valuable ally that joined the patriot army during the Revolution. His thorough mili-

tary education, his iron frame, and his devotion to our cause soon produced the best results. Washington read his character at once and gave him his fullest confidence. He was made inspector-general and threw his whole energies into the arduous work.

Previous to this there had been other allies from across the ocean, who were moved by their love of liberty and their ardent sympathy with the Americans struggling for independence. The most prominent were Kosciusko and Pulaski, both Poles, and the Marquis de Lafayette of France. These men sealed with their blood their devotion to the sacred cause which inspired our forefathers to all manner of hardships, sufferings, and sacrifices that our country might be free.

**Aid from France.**—We have learned of the friendship of France for the patriots. All she was waiting for was a good pretext for openly helping them. That pretext was furnished by the surrender of Burgoyne. The king of France concluded a treaty February 6, 1778, acknowledging our independence, forming





WASHINGTON AND LAFAYETTE



reciprocal relations with us, and agreeing that neither should treat with Great Britain without the consent of the other. This first treaty between the United States and a foreign nation was drafted by Benjamin Franklin. Congress ratified the treaty on the 2d of May. England was alarmed and offered to treat with the colonies, but the only terms which the Americans would listen to were independence, which England, of course, would not grant.

**Evacuation of Philadelphia.** — The British army occupied Philadelphia from September 26, 1777, to June 17, 1778. The prospect of a war with France led Great Britain to prepare for a descent upon some of the French West India Islands. It was ordered, therefore, that five thousand troops should be detached from the main army, three thousand to be forwarded to Florida, and the rest to New York. The transports were too few to carry them all to New York, and Clinton set out with the rest overland.

**Battle of Monmouth Court House.** — Washington was so close that his vanguard entered the city while the British rear-guard was marching out. The main army started in pursuit of the British and overtook them at Monmouth Court House, now Freehold, the county seat of Monmouth county, New Jersey. Lafayette was sent forward with a strong force to attack as opportunity offered. General Lee also followed with another body of troops.

The weather was suffocatingly hot, and many men of both armies dropped exhausted by the wayside. At early light Washington, learning that Clinton had set out for New York, ordered Lee to advance at once and attack. At the same time the commander-in-chief hurried forward to support him. Lafayette, being younger than Lee, yielded the command of the advance to him. This was on June 28.

The battle soon opened, and all was going well for the Americans, when confusion came, and General Lee started for the rear with most of the troops. A decisive defeat was impending, when Washington galloped up and came face to face with Lee. The

great man was aflame with anger and thundered out a demand for the meaning of the movement. Lee stammered a reply and offered to lead the troops back into action, but Washington ordered him to the rear, and the real battle immediately opened. The fighting was determined and made more trying by the intense heat, which caused the death of many on both sides. The British fought well, and for a time the advantage was with them, but at



MOLLY PITCHER

five o'clock in the afternoon they retreated, and the advantage went to the Americans. Washington impatiently waited for daylight to complete his victory, but Clinton slipped off in the night, and, making his way to Sandy Hook, was taken on board of Admiral Howe's fleet. The British landed in New York July 5, and Washington, crossing the Hudson at King's Ferry, took position near his old camp at White Plains.

**Molly Pitcher.** — The account of the battle of

Monmouth would not be complete without the story of Molly Pitcher. While carrying water for the thirsty soldiers, she saw her husband shot down at the cannon he was serving. Molly dropped the pail and ran to his side, but he was dead when she reached him. The commander ordered the piece to be withdrawn, because he had not the right man to take the place of the cannoneer. Molly asked that she might handle the gun, and she was allowed to do so. She loaded and fired it all through the battle, and with a skill and bravery that no one



could have excelled. She was presented to Washington afterward, and he was so impressed by what she had done that he conferred upon her the rank of lieutenant, and congress granted her half-pay for life (see biographical note).

**The Wyoming Massacre.** — Early in July, Colonel John Butler led a band of Indians and tories into the lovely valley of Wyoming, Pennsylvania, where his cousin, John Butler, was in command. Most of the able-bodied men were absent, fighting the battles of their country, but the patriot Butler gathered between three and four hundred old men and boys, who made the best defence possible; sad to say, they were defeated, and a terrifying massacre followed, including many men, women, and children.

**Retreat of General Sullivan.** — The hope of aid from France was followed for a time by disappointment. The French fleet reached the Delaware too late to intercept the English, who had gone to New York. Count D'Estaing (des-tang') moored off Sandy Hook, but was afraid to attack, and sailed for Newport, Rhode Island, where there were six thousand British troops, while Sullivan, Greene, and Lafayette were present with a larger force. Before the plans of capturing the enemy could be carried out, Howe appeared with his fleet in the offing, and D'Estaing began manœuvring for battle. Before a gun was fired, the ships were scattered by a tempest. Finally Howe returned to New York, and D'Estaing went to Newport, taking all his troops with him. When Sullivan was about to attack the British force at Newport, he received warning from Washington that Clinton was advancing against him with five thousand men. Sullivan retreated in time to escape an overwhelming defeat. The Americans were much incensed against the French, who gave no help whatever. D'Estaing sailed for the West Indies without striking a blow, and until the closing year of the war, it was the rule with the Frenchmen to find it necessary to go to the West Indies whenever a chance presented itself for aiding the Americans.

**Major Clarke's Expedition.** — So many outrages were committed by the tories and Indians, that the Americans determined to

strike back. The most important of these expeditions was that of Major George Rogers Clarke. Under the commission of Governor Patrick Henry, of Virginia, Clarke descended the Ohio, in the month of May, with one hundred and fifty men, their destination being the Indian villages west of the Alleghenies. He advanced with such vigor that with little difficulty he captured Kaskaskia, Cahokia, and Vincennes, after which he struck the savages a decisive blow.

The indignant British governor at Detroit recaptured Vincennes. Clarke returned later in the year, his men marching through icy marshes and swamps with the water to their waists, and not only retook Vincennes, but captured the governor, who was sent as a prisoner to Virginia, where he was kept for a time in irons, because of his many violations of the laws of civilized warfare.

The results of Major Clarke's expedition were more important than would be supposed. Competent authorities declare that, but for what he did, the western boundary of the United States at the close of the Revolution would have been the Allegheny Mountains instead of the Mississippi River. All the territory north of the Ohio was organized into the "County of Illinois," and Major Clarke and his men were publicly thanked by Virginia for their services, while to each man was voted two hundred acres of land.

**Fall of Savannah.** — The British had met with so little success in the Northern and Middle States that they concentrated their operations against the South. On December 23, three thousand men, under Lieutenant Colonel Campbell, appeared off Tybee Island, in ships sent from New York. Passing the bar, the troops landed near Five Fathom Hole. General Howe's force was only one-third of the enemy's, but he made a brave defence, only to suffer a disastrous defeat. Thus Savannah, the capital of Georgia, with its extensive stores, fell into the hands of the invaders, December 29.

**TOPICS.** — Baron Steuben; other valuable allies from across the ocean; aid from France; the treaty made with her; the alarm of England; evacuation of Philadelphia; the preparations made by Great Britain for a war with France; pursuit of Clinton by Washington; the battle of Monmouth; the course of General Lee; indignation of Washington; the real battle; the result; the story of Molly Pitcher; the Wyoming Massacre; disappointment caused by the course of France; the retreat of General Sullivan; Major Clarke's expedition; what it accomplished; its important consequences; fall of Savannah.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Baron Steuben** held a lucrative office under Frederick the Great, which he resigned to come to America and assist the patriots in their struggle for independence. He was a fiery-tempered soldier, and, when his imperfect knowledge of English would not permit him to berate the troops whom he was drilling to the extent he felt they deserved, he would turn to some officer and beg him to scold the "awkward rascals." He commanded the left wing at Monmouth, was a member of the board which condemned André, and helped at the siege of Yorktown. At the close of the war he settled in New York and received a grant of land from congress. He died in 1794.

**Thaddeus Kosciusko** came to this country in 1775, when about thirty years old, and served as a colonel under General Gates. He was remarkably skilful as an engineer, his most important work being the fortifications at West Point. He was made a brigadier general in 1783, and, returning to his native land, was an active participant in the defence of Poland in 1794. He died in 1817.

**Casimir Pulaski**, born in Poland in 1748, came to America in 1777. He served on Washington's staff, and was in the battles of Brandywine and Germantown. He was a brigadier general under Wayne from 1777 to 1778, and was then placed in command of the famous "Pulaski's Legion," composed of deserters, prisoners of war, and foreigners. He fought furiously in the siege of Savannah, in 1779, when he commanded the French and American cavalry and was mortally wounded.

**Marquis de Lafayette** was born of a noble family in France in 1746. His sympathy for the struggling Americans led him to fit out a ship at his own expense, in which he sailed from Bordeaux in 1777. Landing at Charleston, he made his way northward to Washington's headquarters and offered his services without pay. He was commissioned as a major general and became an intimate friend of Washington. He was wounded at Brandywine, and again in the Rhode Island campaign. He returned to France in 1779 and spurred his government to more effective aid for the Americans. He was in this country again in time to sit on the board which tried Major André. He was in command in Virginia against Arnold, and afterward Cornwallis, and displayed



considerable military ability. He was a leader for a time in France in the terrible revolution at the close of the eighteenth century. He visited the United States in 1824-1825, and made a tour of the country. He was received with unbounded enthusiasm everywhere, congress granted him a valuable tract of land, a large sum of money, and then sent him home in a vessel named the *Brandywine*, in honor of the battle in which he was wounded. He commanded the National Guard in Paris during the revolutionary day of 1830, and died in 1834.

**Charles Lee** was born in England in 1731, and served as an officer at Braddock's defeat and through the French and Indian war. He came to America in 1773, and so impressed the authorities that he was appointed second in rank of the major generals. He took part in the siege of Boston, made vigorous preparations in New York against attack, and, having been sent south, commanded at the defence of Charleston in 1776. He was captured in the autumn of that year, because of his disobedience of Washington's orders. It is not unlikely that Lee lagged behind on purpose that he might fall into the hands of the enemy, for a few years since Dr. George H. Moore, of New York city, brought documents to light, which proved beyond question that Lee offered to betray the American cause to the Howes at the time he was a prisoner. The Howes did not buy him, probably because Lee held himself at his own valuation. After his disgraceful behavior at Monmouth, he was suspended for disobedience, misbehavior, and disrespect, and was finally dismissed from the army. He died in obscurity in Philadelphia in 1782.

**Molly Pitcher's** right name was Mary McCauley. She has been described as a "red-haired, freckle-faced young woman," and the scene of her loading and firing the cannon at the battle of Monmouth is depicted in bronze relief on the battle monument at Freehold. There has been an impression for years, in many quarters, that proper honor was not done this remarkable woman for her action in the famous engagement, but this is an error. She died in Carlisle, Pennsylvania, in January, 1833, at the age of seventy-nine years, her days having been spent in comparative comfort. On the 4th of July, 1876, the citizens of Cumberland county, Pennsylvania, erected a monument to the heroine of Monmouth, and it now stands over her remains in the public graveyard at Carlisle.

**John Sullivan**, born in Maine in 1740, was a New Hampshire delegate to the first continental congress, and became a brigadier general in 1775, and major general in the following year. He was at the siege of Boston, and to him was due a part of the discredit for the disastrous defeat on Long Island. He fought well at Trenton and Princeton, and commanded the right wing at Brandywine and Germantown. In 1779, as will be shown, he conducted the

crushing campaign against the Six Nations of Indians. He was a member of congress after the war and died in 1795.

**George Rogers Clarke** was born in 1752, and became famous through his important expedition into the Northwest against the British and Indians, which secured to us that section to our country. As stated, Virginia not only publicly thanked Clarke and his men for their valuable services, but voted a tract of land to each of them. It is our unpleasant duty to add, however, that neither Clarke nor any of his men ever received a single acre of the grant.

## CHAPTER XVI

### EVENTS OF 1779



**THE Conquest of Georgia.** — The cause of American independence made little progress in 1779. The British pushed their success in the South. General Benjamin Lincoln, of Massachusetts, superseded Howe, who had suffered a disastrous repulse. He found the situation discouraging, and, though he did all that was possible under the circumstances, Georgia was so overrun and conquered that the royal governor was reinstated, and Great Britain could boast that one at least of the revolted colonies had been restored to the crown.

The hot weather deferred the attempt to recapture Savannah until September, when the Americans and French laid siege to it. A desperate assault was made on the 9th of October, in which D'Estaing and his men redeemed themselves, and fought with a bravery that could not be surpassed. Sergeant Jasper, the hero of the exploit at Fort Moultrie, and Count Pulaski were among the thousand killed, while the loss of the enemy was less than fifty. The siege was abandoned, and recrossing the Savannah, the Americans returned to Charleston, while the French fleet again sailed for the West Indies.

**The Campaign in the North.** — It will be remembered that Washington, after pursuing Clinton and winning the victory at Monmouth Court-House, returned to his old camp near White Plains. He passed the winter in a line of positions reaching from the Highlands to the Delaware. No important military



movements followed, but numbers of raids and predatory excursions were made by both sides.

**Capture of Stony Point.** — Stony Point having fallen into the hands of the enemy, Washington asked Wayne whether he would undertake to recapture it. “I will undertake to capture the lower regions, if you will give me the plan,” replied “Mad Anthony.” Washington remarked that the second enterprise would be deferred, but he was anxious that Wayne should lose no time in carrying out the first.

On the hot evening of July 15, Wayne, with four regiments, marched twelve miles and halted within a mile of the fort. The men threw aside all superfluous clothing, and having obtained the countersign from a negro who sold berries at the fort, Wayne divided his force into two columns, which at midnight attacked from opposite sides. The men charged impetuously, and the fight, though brief, was fierce. Wayne, at the head of his troops, was struck in the forehead by a bullet and fell to the ground. Believing he was about to die, he ordered his aids to carry him forward, that he might pass his last moments within the fort. Before they could do so, he rallied, and, leaping to his feet, decided that he would postpone his death to some other occasion. Sixty-three of the garrison were killed before they surrendered, and five hundred and forty-three made prisoners. The Americans lost only fifteen, while eighty-three were wounded. Valuable ordnance and stores were secured, the fort destroyed, and the patriots withdrew.

**Sullivan's Campaign against the Indians.** — The atrocities of the Indians and Tories in the Wyoming and Mohawk valleys threatened the destruction of the settlements. The Iroquois, or Six Nations, were so aggressive that Washington felt they must be sternly punished. Accordingly, he organized a powerful expedition, which was placed under the command of General Sullivan, which late in August advanced northward from Wyoming and burned forty villages of those fierce warriors, who never fully recovered from the blow.

**The War on the Ocean.** — Our little navy proved a thorn in the side of Great Britain. As early as 1775, Washington sent out several privateers to cruise along the New England coast, and in the same year congress established a naval department. Two battalions of seamen were enlisted, and thirteen ships were ordered to be fitted out. The number increased so that in three years they captured five hundred ships of the enemy. The daring Yankee privateers even entered the waters among the British Isles and burned ships at their wharves.

**Great Victory of Paul Jones.** — John Paul Jones was one of the bravest men that ever trod the quarter-deck. His remarkable success caused him to be made a captain. One night, while cruising off Solway Firth, near his birthplace, he rowed ashore on the coast of Cumberland, with thirty-one volunteers, and in the harbor of Whitehaven burned three vessels and spiked a number of cannon in the guard-room of the fort. All England was startled by this exploit. When, in 1779, he put to sea in command of the *Bon Homme Richard* (bo-nom're-shar'), and accompanied by two consorts, the *Alliance* and the *Pallas*, everybody wondered what was coming next. That which did follow was one of the most terrific sea-fights known in history.

The *Bon Homme Richard* was an old Indiaman given to Jones by the king of France. When off Scarborough, he sighted the homeward-bound Baltic fleet of merchantmen, under the escort of the frigates *Countess of Scarborough* and the *Serapis* (se-rā'pis). The former carried twenty-two guns and the latter fifty. Jones had forty-four guns and three hundred and seventy-five men. Although two-thirds of those with him were prisoners of war, and he had weakened his regular crews in order to take charge of his many prizes, he at once signalled to his consorts to join him in pursuit of the enemy.

It was the month of September, the sun had set, and the full moon was shining, when the captain of the *Serapis* hailed Jones, who replied by opening fire. The enemy promptly responded, and the famous battle began. It had hardly opened, when two

of the guns on the lower deck of the *Bon Homme Richard* burst, killing several men. The rest scrambled up to the main-deck, the guns left behind not being worked again during the fight.

Jones manœuvred to close in with the *Serapis*, but finding he could not bring his guns to bear, he let his ship fall off again. "Have you struck?" shouted Captain Pearson of the *Serapis*. "Struck!" replied Jones, "I haven't begun to fight!"

While the *Serapis* was swinging round, her jib-boom caught in the mizzen rigging of the *Richard*. Jones sprang forward and lashed the boom to the mast, but the hold was broken by the lurching of the vessels. One of the enemy's anchors caught the quarter of the *Richard*, however, and held fast.

Upon attempting to fire from the starboard side, the *Serapis* could not open her ports, because the *Richard* lay so close to her. She therefore fired with her ports closed, blowing away her own port-lids; but there were no Americans on the lower deck, and the main deck of the *Richard* was so high that the broadsides of the *Serapis* did not hurt any one, though they did great injury to the ship.



THE SERAPIS AND THE BON HOMME RICHARD



For two hours the crews fought hand to hand with musket, pike, and cutlass. The muzzles of the guns continually scraped each other, and the gunners, in working their pieces, repeatedly thrust their ramrods into the portholes of the opposing ship. The cannon were discharged as fast as they could be loaded. The *Richard* was a rotten old hulk and soon became unmanageable. Water poured into the hold, and only three of the guns could be worked. Both vessels caught fire again and again. In this crisis, Jones discovered that his ally, Captain Landais, commanding the *Alliance*, was firing first a broadside into the *Scarborough* and then into the *Bon Homme Richard*. But leaving Landais to be settled with afterward, Jones kept up his awful struggle with the *Serapis*, whose men fought as bravely as his own.

One of the sailors perched in the rigging of the *Bon Homme Richard*, and engaged in throwing hand-grenades upon the deck of the *Serapis*, crept out to the end of the main-yard, carrying a bucket of the fearful missiles. Coolly lighting these, he dropped them, one after the other, down the hatchway of the *Serapis*. The powder boys had left a row of eighteen-pound cartridges stretched along the whole length of the ship, into which the American aloft dropped one of his hissing grenades. The explosion which followed killed a score of sailors and severely wounded forty others.

Captain Pearson again called to Jones to know whether he had struck, but Jones, at the other end of the ship, did not hear him. Then the British commander, at the head of his boarders, made a rush for the deck of the *Richard*. Jones seized a pike and, leading his own men, drove the enemy back. The *Serapis* caught fire repeatedly, but the explosion caused by the hand-grenade decided the battle. The main battery, which was Captain Pearson's chief reliance, was silenced, and he struck his colors. Even then, in the smoke, uproar, fire, and tumult, half the men on the *Serapis* believed it was the *Richard* that had surrendered; but Captain Pearson himself hauled down his own flag.

At dawn of day the *Richard* was a wallowing wreck, still on fire, riddled like a sieve, and fast sinking. Jones had barely

time to remove his crew to the *Serapis*, when his own ship went to the bottom. Four-fifths of his men were killed or wounded in this most memorable battle of the infant American navy.

Landais's amazing conduct in firing into Jones during the fight was probably due to insanity, though many believed it was because of his intense envy of the American commander. At any rate, he was deprived of his command on the ground of insanity. Jones's battle with the *Serapis* was the last one in which he engaged for the Americans.

**TOPICS.** — Conquest of Georgia; the American attempt to recapture Savannah; the campaign in the North; capture of Stony Point by Wayne; Sullivan's crushing chastisement of the Six Nations; the first American privateers; their work in three years; John Paul Jones; his exploit at Whitehaven; his terrific battle with the *Serapis*; what decided the battle; the victory; the conduct of Landais.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Benjamin Lincoln**, born in 1733, was major general of the Massachusetts militia from 1774 to 1775, and was their commander at the battle of White Plains. In the Burgoyne campaign, he was second in command under Gates. He was transferred to the South, as we have learned, in 1778, and two years later he was obliged to surrender Charleston to the British. Washington designated him to receive the sword of Cornwallis at Yorktown in 1781. Lincoln was secretary of war 1781-1784, and died in 1810.

**John Paul Jones** was born in Scotland in 1747, engaged in the merchant marine, and settled in Virginia shortly before the Revolution. He was among the first to volunteer, and was commissioned as a lieutenant in the infant American navy. He made a number of successful cruises, and proved his skill and daring, while he threw all England into terror by his amazing exploits. For his great victory over the *Serapis*, Jones received the thanks of congress and a gold sword from the king of France. After the close of the war he became a rear admiral in the Russian navy, and died in Paris in 1792.

## CHAPTER XVII

### EVENTS OF 1780



**GLOOMY Outlook for the Patriots.**—The winter of 1779–1780 was the severest of the eighteenth century. There was widespread suffering, and for months all military operations were at a standstill. The colonies were upon the verge of exhaustion from the years of fighting, of poverty, of suffering, and because of the overwhelming reverses. The city of New York was in the hands of the enemy, Savannah had been taken, and the British were preparing to attack Charleston.

The gloomy condition of affairs cannot be more strongly shown than by the words of Washington himself. Hitherto his faith had been unshaken by disaster, but now he said: “I have almost ceased to hope. Friends and foes seem to be combining to pull down the fabric raised at so much expense of time, blood, and treasure.” The best men did not appear in congress; for, day after day, only about a dozen members were present to transact the most important business. Little heed was given to their counsels, and often their orders were openly disregarded. The national currency rapidly approached the point of worthlessness, and the authority delegated to congress by the thirteen States dwindled until it was no more than a name.

**Fall of Charleston.**—The cup of suffering for the patriots was not yet full. Early in the year, Clinton gathered all his available forces at New York, and leaving enough to defend it against Washington, who was closely watching him, sailed with the rest for Charleston. There he was joined by the British in Georgia,



and the fleet fought its way through the harbor to the city. The attack was made in May, and Lincoln, after the bravest possible defence, was obliged to surrender with his army of six thousand men.

Clinton vigorously followed up his success. Armed expeditions were sent out to overrun the country. Colonel Tarleton, his ablest officer, overtook a regiment of Virginians on the 29th of May at Waxhaw, and almost cut them to pieces. The campaign, indeed, was pressed so remorselessly that all organized resistance in the South seemed for the time to be at an end. Civil war reigned in the Carolinas; merciless Tories, with commissions from the British authorities, galloped back and forth over the country, burning the houses of former friends and neighbors, shooting down peaceful men, women, and children, after despoiling them of their possessions, and slaying those who refused to take up arms against their country.



MAP OF THE CAROLINAS

But the patriots were not the ones to submit meekly to these savage outrages. The women melted their pewter dishes and ran them into bullets, and the blacksmiths forged rude weapons at their anvils. The deep woods, the numerous small streams, the swamps and almost impenetrable recesses, offered the best facilities for the partisan warfare which set the South, particularly South Carolina, aflame. Typical heroes came to the front on each side. On that of the British were the swift, terrible Tarleton and his dragoons, and Ferguson with his riflemen; on the American were Sumter, the "Carolina Game-cock," Marion, the "Swamp Fox," Pickens, Horry, and others.

Francis Marion was the best type of the patriot partisan. It was said of him that "his simplicity of conduct, preserved under





MARION IN THE SWAMPS



all circumstances, was above praise; the cheerfulness with which he endured privation surpassed encomium." We recall the story of the British officer, who, having met Marion upon some business, was invited to stay to dinner. The visitor was so charmed with his host that he accepted the invitation. When the meal was ready, it consisted of a few roast potatoes served upon pieces of bark. The British officer politely asked whether this meagre diet was usual, to which Marion replied that it was, but because of the honor of the visitor's presence the allowance for that occasion was increased. The story is that the officer was so struck by this incident, as well as by the discovery that Marion served his country without pay, that he resigned his commission, declaring it idle to fight against such devoted patriots.

Clinton learned that a French fleet with a strong force was expected off the coast. This caused him to sail from Charleston, with most of his army, June 5. He left Cornwallis, with four thousand men, to effect the complete subjugation of the South. The weather, however, became so hot that Cornwallis decided to wait for its improvement.

The desperate condition of the section caused Washington much anxiety. As early as the close of March he sent reinforcements thither. They were so pushed for food that they had to break up into small parties to escape starving. Among the flaming sand barrens, in July, they devoured green corn and unripe fruit so ravenously that many fell ill. Those who were able, however, trudged forward, and were joined by several hundred refugees that were hiding among the mountains. But they had few and poor weapons, little food, and lacked discipline. The brave Baron de Kalb, who had charge, could speak only a few words of English, and General Gates was appointed to the command of the troops, who numbered about two thousand. These were reinforced by another thousand, and Gates was confident of "Burgoyning Cornwallis," as he expressed it.

**Defeat of Gates.** — By a curious coincidence Cornwallis and Gates fixed upon the same hour for surprising each other. Mov-



ing with that purpose their advanced guards collided, about two o'clock of the morning of August 16, in the woods near Camden. A skirmish followed, and the Americans fell back, both forces waiting for daylight. At dawn, Cornwallis, who knew of the raw and untried condition of the patriots, launched his finest soldiers under his best officers against them. They struck the Virginia militia, who fired one volley and retreated. The North Carolina militia did the same, without halting long enough to shoot. Gates and his officers did their utmost to rally them, but it was impossible. Thus two-thirds of the army vanished.

But the regulars, composed of a regiment of North Carolinians and the Maryland and Delaware men under De Kalb, fought like heroes, the valiant De Kalb himself setting a thrilling example.

The Polish veteran led a terrific bayonet charge, broke the British line at one point, and it was not until Cornwallis, with his whole force, flung himself against the Americans, that the latter gave way. De Kalb sank to the ground with eleven wounds, and died the next day.

**Battle of King's Mountain.**—On the 7th of October the Americans attacked the enemy under Colonel Ferguson at King's Mountain, on the border line between North and South Carolina. The patriots were led by Colonels Cleveland, Shelby, and Campbell. The British fought bravely, repelling the Americans several times, but at the end of an hour Ferguson fell, mortally wounded, and the British surrendered.

**General Greene in the South.**—By great labor General Gates managed to get together about fourteen hundred men, with which he meant to dispute Cornwallis; but on the 2d of December Nathanael Greene, the "Quaker general," arrived and superseded him. Gates was much chagrined, but declared his willingness to serve his superior in any way possible. Greene kindly expressed the belief that the censure of his predecessor had been founded on an imperfect knowledge of the facts. He said the same to the officers and men, and won the best opinion of all.

**The Treason of Benedict Arnold.** — The spirits of Washington were cheered in April by the return of Marquis de Lafayette with news that the French government had fitted out an armament of naval and land forces, which would soon be sent to the United States. It was good news, indeed, for nothing was clearer by this time than the truth that without some such aid America could not win her independence.

The saddest event of the Revolution was the treason of Benedict Arnold. He was one of the bravest of men, his exploits even in boyhood exciting the wonder of his playmates. But he was coarse-minded, extravagant, dishonest, and revengeful. He was angered because he was not among the first five major generals appointed. Washington urged his appointment, which was made after Arnold's brilliant services at Saratoga.

He was stationed at Philadelphia while recovering from the wound received at Saratoga. He married a tory lady, and began living in a style beyond his means. He resorted to speculation and dishonest methods to increase his funds. His odious manners and sordid disposition made him very unpopular. On one occasion he was mobbed in the streets of Philadelphia. The council of the city finally preferred charges of misconduct against him. These were proven, and he was sentenced to be reprimanded by Washington. The commander-in-chief performed the unpleasant duty with the utmost delicacy, but the reproof, together with the disallowance by congress of his claims for expenses incurred in the Canadian expedition, filled him with resentment. These causes, together with the strong tory senti-



MAJOR JOHN ANDRÉ



ments of his wife, doubtless determined him to take the step which has cast odium forever upon his name.

Arnold opened a secret correspondence with Sir Henry Clinton, and arranged to turn over to him the fortress at West Point,



CAPTURE OF ANDRÉ

the most important post in the country and the main depot of supplies. On the plea that his wound would not permit active service, he secured from Washington the command of West Point. Being now in a position to carry out his shameful act, he asked Clinton to send a person fully authorized to arrange the details. The British commander intrusted Major John André with the task, and, knowing its extreme peril, warned him not to pass within the American lines, under no cir-

cumstances to assume a disguise (which would have made him a spy and insured his death in case of capture), and to accept no papers. Had André followed these instructions, he would have escaped the fate that afterward overtook him.

André went up the Hudson and boarded the British sloop-of-war *Vulture*, lying at anchor in the river. Just before daylight, September 22, he landed at the foot of Long Clove Mountain,



six miles below Stony Point, where Arnold was waiting in the bushes to receive him. The interview lasted until after daylight, when for safety they repaired to the house of a Mr. Smith, who lived within the American lines. There the plan of the betrayal was completed. Clinton was to send a strong force to attack the works at West Point, while Arnold agreed to scatter the garrison of three thousand so as to prevent effective defence.

When André started to return to the *Vulture*, it was found she had dropped down stream, because fire was opened upon her by a small battery on Teller's Point. This compelled André to make his way to New York by land. Arnold furnished him with a pass and a citizen's dress. He was conducted by Smith to a point where he was told he would meet only British raiders, or "Cow Boys," as they were called. Smith then bade him good-by and came back.

All went well with André until he was near Tarrytown. A half-mile above that town, Isaac Van Wart, John Paulding, and David Williams were on the lookout for British marauders. Hearing the sound of a horse's hoofs, they halted André, with a demand to know his business. Had the horseman kept his self-possession, he would have been safe. If the three men were Americans, the pass of Arnold would have been respected, and had they been British, of course they were his friends. He had only to answer their demands by displaying the pass of the American commander. But one of the three had on a British coat, which he had exchanged for one of his own when a prisoner a short time before. André was so certain that they were his friends that he said:

"I hope, gentlemen, you belong to our party."

"Which party is that?" asked Paulding.

"The lower party," replied André, meaning the British.

"Yes, we belong to that party," said Paulding.

André, completely deceived, added:

"I am a British officer out on particular business, and I hope you will not detain me."

The three captors saw they had secured a prize and ordered him to dismount and submit to be searched. The alarmed André, seeing his fatal mistake, now showed the pass of General Arnold. But it was too late. When his boots and stockings were removed, the important papers were found, among them being a complete plan, in Arnold's handwriting, of the fortifications at West Point. Seeing he was discovered, André offered his horse, watch, and everything with him, besides pledging to send them a large sum of money, if they would permit him to go on. They refused, and conducting him to North Castle, left him in charge of Lieutenant Colonel Jameson, the officer stationed there. Jameson's stupidity was the cause of Arnold's escaping the fate he richly merited. Although the papers told him the all-important truth, he sent a note to General Arnold, informing him of the arrest.

The traitor was at breakfast when the note was placed in his hands. He called his wife aside, told her of his peril, kissed his sleeping boy in the cradle, dashed out of the house, mounted his horse, galloped to the river, sprang into a boat, and was rowed out to the *Vulture*. He protected himself from being fired upon by swinging his white handkerchief over his head.

André was tried by court-martial and convicted and condemned as a spy. He accepted his verdict bravely, only asking that he might be shot instead of hanged. It was hard to refuse the request, but General Greene maintained that any mitigation of the sentence would imply a doubt of its justice. He was hanged October 2, 1780.

Much sympathy was felt for the unfortunate young officer. His remains were removed to England in 1821 and now rest in Westminster Abbey. George III caused a mural tablet to be erected to his memory, on which is an inscription referring to him as "one who fell a sacrifice to his zeal for his king and country." A pension was conferred upon his mother, and his brother was created a baronet.

The punishment of André, however, was just. He was a spy

under the laws of war, and, had he succeeded in reaching New York with the papers, in all probability he would have struck a fatal blow at American independence. Strange it is that so much sympathy should be expressed for him, while poor Nathan Hale, as young, as intelligent, and as brave, who simply sought information within the enemy's lines, was treated with brutal indignity and hanged without a trial.

Arnold was paid six thousand three hundred and fifteen pounds sterling, as a reimbursement for the "losses" he claimed to have suffered while fighting for his native land. He took his family to England after the war. His sons received commissions in the British army, did creditable service, and it is pleasure to record that his descendants to-day are among the worthiest members of the community in which they live. As for the arch traitor himself, he was despised by those whom he served, was hooted at on the streets of London, and died in 1801, execrated by all. His wife survived him about three years.

**TOPICS.** — The gloomy outlook for the patriots; the discouragement of Washington; congress; the currency; the fall of Charleston; the devastation in the South; devotion of the women; the partisan leaders; the sad condition of the patriot troops in the South; defeat of Gates at Camden; death of De Kalb; battle of King's Mountain; General Greene in the South; the good news from France; Benedict Arnold; his character; his causes of resentment; Washington and Arnold; treasonable correspondence of Arnold with Sir Henry Clinton; the part taken by Major André; the capture of André; the escape of Arnold; fate of André; justice of his punishment; Nathan Hale; the price paid to Arnold for his treason; his descendants; his death.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Sir Bannastre Tarleton** was born in England in 1754, and came, as a colonel, to America with Lord Cornwallis in 1776. He took part in the raid which resulted in the capture of General Charles Lee, at Baskingridge in the same year. He organized the "Tarleton Legion" in South Carolina in 1779, and conducted a savage warfare. He helped to win the battle at Camden, was defeated by General Sumter at Blackstock Hill, and, at the Cowpens, General Morgan cut his command to pieces. He surrendered with Cornwallis at Yorktown, and died in 1833.

**Thomas Sumter** was born in 1734, and won a reputation as one of the most brilliant of partisan leaders in the South during the Revolution. He was



very active, defeating the British at Hanging Rock, where Andrew Jackson, a boy of fourteen, fought bravely, was defeated at Fishing Creek by Colonel Tarleton, who in turn was defeated by Sumter at Blackstock Hill. He cut the communications of Cornwallis and captured his supply train. He was a congressman from South Carolina, 1789-1793, and 1797-1801, and was United States senator, 1801-1809, in which year he was appointed minister to Brazil, where he remained for two years. He died in 1832, in his ninety-ninth year, having attained the greatest age of any officer of the Revolution.

**Francis Marion** was born in South Carolina in 1732, and was of Huguenot descent. He was an officer in the Cherokee war and a member of the provincial congress. He enlisted at the beginning of the Revolution, and took part in the repulse of the British from Charleston in 1776, and in the disastrous Savannah expedition of 1779. He organized his partisan corps in 1780 and struck quick and effective blows against the enemy. His principal field of operations was along the Pedee River and the neighborhood. His celerity of movement well earned for him the name of "Swamp Fox." He commanded the right wing at Eutaw Springs, and continued fighting in the South until the actual close of hostilities in that section, which was the beginning of 1783. Marion was a member, for a time, of the State senate, and died in 1795.

**Andrew Pickens** was another of the famous partisan leaders of the South. He was born in 1739, and served in the war against the Cherokees when a young man. He defeated a strong British force at Kettle Creek in 1779, and was in command of the militia at the Cowpens and at Eutaw Springs, besides being engaged in a large number of skirmishes and battles of less moment. He was a member of the South Carolina legislature from 1793 to 1794, and from 1801 to 1812, serving in congress from 1793 to 1795. He died in 1817.

**Nathanael Greene** was born in Rhode Island in 1742, being a member of a Quaker family. He served in the State assembly in 1770. He possessed excellent qualities and gave much attention to the study of military matters, for which he was gifted with a special aptitude. He was made brigadier general in 1775 and took part in the battle at Dorchester Heights. In the following year he became major general, and, as we have learned, was actively engaged at Trenton and Princeton. It was Greene's skill which saved the American army from decisive defeat at Brandywine. At Germantown, he commanded the left wing, where he again displayed remarkable ability in covering the retreat of the army. He was president of the court-martial which condemned André to death. His career in the South stamped him as second only to Washington in military ability. He captured post after post, won a decisive victory at Eutaw Springs, and repeatedly baffled Cornwallis with his superior army. General Greene was universally esteemed and respected. He died in 1786 from the effects of a sunstroke.

## CHAPTER XVIII

### EVENTS OF 1781. — TRIUMPH OF INDEPENDENCE



**T**HE Campaign in the South. — It was one of the wisest of steps to appoint General Greene to the chief command in the South. Washington sent “Light Horse Harry” Lee thither, with his legion of three hundred and fifty, to help in staying the advance of the enemy. Washington could ill spare his valuable ally, but the war, opening in New England, was steadily gravitating southward, where the decisive and final struggle was to take place. Greene understood the folly of meeting Cornwallis in open battle, when his own force was so much the weaker. It was Gates’s blindness in this respect that brought about his failure. Greene decided, while forming and disciplining his army, to harass his stronger enemy in every way possible. He formed his troops into two divisions. With the main body he took position on the eastern bank of the Pedee, opposite the Cheraw Hills, about seventy miles from WYNNEBOROUGH, where Cornwallis was stationed. General Morgan, with a body of infantry and cavalry, was sent south of the Catawba. Meanwhile, Marion, Sumter, Pickens, and other partisans were riding back and forth through the swamps and forests of Georgia and the Carolinas, harrying the enemy whenever and wherever the chance presented. Thoroughly familiar with every acre of the country, they were able to strike their telling blows and make off again before the British could gather to strike back.

**Battle of the Cowpens.** — Believing the British post at Ninety-Six in danger, Cornwallis sent Tarleton, with eleven hundred

men, including cavalry, artillery, and infantry, against Morgan, while Cornwallis himself marched to the Northwest to catch him in the event of his eluding Tarleton. His object was also to frighten Greene by getting between him and Virginia. Morgan fell back to the Cowpens, where he was furiously attacked by Tarleton on the morning of January 17. The Americans at first gave way, but quickly rallied and pursued the enemy to the bottom of the hill, where most of them threw down their arms and surrendered. This was an inspiring victory, Tarleton having lost a hundred privates, ten commissioned officers, more than a hundred wounded, and six hundred prisoners, beside two guns, eight hundred muskets, his colors, a hundred horses, and nearly all his baggage train. The loss of the Americans was about a dozen killed and sixty wounded.

**Cornwallis baffled.** — Cornwallis now devoted every energy to preventing the junction of Morgan and Greene, but he was completely baffled at every step. The Americans not only united, but eluded Cornwallis again and again. It is said that for four days Greene did not average more than an hour's sleep out of twenty-four. Cornwallis finally gave up in disgust and returned to Hillsborough February 20. By the middle of the following month, Greene found himself strong enough to assume the aggressive, though three-fourths of his men were raw recruits, upon whom little dependence could be placed. The Americans were attacked at Guilford Court House March 15. The regulars fought bravely, but the militia gave way, and Greene deemed it wise to withdraw. The enemy was too exhausted to pursue. Guilford Court House was a victory for the British, but their loss was greater than that of the Americans. Colonel Webster, the best officer under Cornwallis, was killed, and when the news reached England, Fox declared in the house of commons that a second victory of that kind would ruin the army.

Cornwallis felt such a wholesome respect for Greene that he retreated to Wilmington, North Carolina, where he arrived on the 7th of April. After resting his army, he decided to withdraw



into Virginia and join the British forces already there. Instead of following him, Greene set about reconquering South Carolina.

The Americans captured a number of posts, and on the 1st of June the only ones in South Carolina and Georgia in the hands of the invaders were Ninety-Six and Augusta. Pickens and Lee took Augusta five days later, and though Greene's attack upon Ninety-Six on the 18th was repulsed, the garrison saw that it could not be held, and evacuated it.

**The Battle of Eutaw Springs.** — Colonel Stuart, now commanding the British, posted himself at Eutaw Springs, where Greene attacked him September 8. The battle lasted four hours and was bitterly contested on both sides, as was proved by the losses each sustained. That of the British, in killed, wounded, and prisoners, was seven hundred, and that of the Americans about the same. Each side claimed the victory, and though the Americans retreated, the advantage remained with them. Stuart began falling back the next day, and Greene pursued him nearly to Charleston. In the battle, Colonel Washington was wounded and taken prisoner.

**A Daring Exploit.** — During the retreat, Manning, of Lee's legion, suddenly found himself surrounded by the enemy, with not an American within several hundred rods. Dashing up to an officer, he wrenched his sword from his grasp, seized him by the collar, and held his body as a shield while he backed away, under a hot fire, from his dangerous position. The struggling officer in affright called out: "I am Sir Henry Barry, deputy adjutant general, captain in the fifty-second regiment, and —" "That will do," interrupted his captor, "you're the man I was looking for," and he safely rejoined his friends with his distinguished prisoner.

This may be said to have ended the war in that section. Partisan fighting and skirmishing continued, but nothing of moment took place. The South Carolina legislature was convened within thirty-five miles of Charleston, and, with slight exceptions, the only British soldiers in the South were at Charles-

ton, Savannah, and Wilmington. The plan of conquering the States in detail had failed, and failed forever.

**The Campaign in the North; Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line.**

—The year 1781 opened gloomily in the North. At the begin-



REVOLT OF THE PENNSYLVANIA LINE

ning of the year, congress called for a regular army of thirty-seven thousand men, but the response was only partial, and the supplies, being left to the respective States, amounted to nothing. While matters were in this dispiriting condition, the whole Pennsylvania line, in camp at Morristown, numbering nearly two thousand, revolted. They had repeatedly complained that they had no pay, clothing, or food, and that their terms of enlistment had expired. They determined to march to Philadelphia and

either obtain redress or go to their homes. In the attempt to check the mutineers, several of them were killed. General Wayne drew his pistols, but several bayonets were thrust against his breast, the desperate men declaring that, while they respected him, they would run him through at the first discharge of his weapons.

They elected their own officers and, thirteen hundred strong and with six field pieces, set out from Morristown for Philadelphia. Congress was alarmed on hearing the news and despatched a committee to meet and calm them. Clinton sent agents among the patriots, offering them big pay and rewards if they would enter his lines and join him. The soldiers seized the agents, turned them over to Wayne, and advised him to hang them off-hand. Although goaded to resistance against their own authorities, they would never give aid to the public enemy.

The committee from congress met the mutineers at Trenton on the 9th of January. Three days were spent in conference, and the difficulty settled. It was agreed that all arrears should be paid at the earliest possible moment, and those whose terms of enlistment had expired should be discharged. As a consequence, about half the Pennsylvania troops were allowed to go to their homes.

The occurrence spurred congress to its duty. An agent was sent to France to secure another loan of money. Robert Morris was made secretary of finance, and the Bank of North America was organized, Morris and a number of his wealthy friends pledging their private fortunes to sustain the credit of the government.

**Arnold's Raiding Expedition.** — Benedict Arnold, the traitor, was now a brigadier general in the British army. In command of a fleet and a land force of sixteen hundred men, he sailed for the coast of Virginia in December, 1780, and destroyed a large amount of public and private property. Lafayette was too weak to check him, but Cornwallis, arriving in May, displaced Arnold, who was sent northward to New York, from which point he led a plundering expedition to New London, Connecticut, his old home. The town was pillaged and burned, and it is said that Arnold gleefully watched the destruction from a church steeple. During the plundering, a woman recognized Arnold and aimed a musket at him and pulled the trigger. Unfortunately, however, it missed fire, and thus the traitor had another hair's-breadth escape from death.



**The Last Campaign.** — In the month of May Washington and Rochambeau (ro-shong-bo'), commander of the French allies, held a conference at Weathersfield, Connecticut, over the plan of capturing New York, with the aid of the French fleet at Newport and that of Count de Grasse (grass) from the West Indies. No definite decision was reached, but Clinton in New York was convinced that a campaign was to be made against him.

Meanwhile Cornwallis was doing his best, with his superior force, to catch Lafayette and his few troops. The agile Frenchman, however, eluded him, and finally the British general received orders, in the latter part of June, to send reinforcements to Clinton in New York to repel the expected attack by Washington. Unable to hold Williamsburg with his weakened army, Cornwallis notified his superior officer that he intended to pass the James and withdraw to Portsmouth. Reinforcements from England having reached Clinton, he countermanded his order, and directed Cornwallis to establish an intrenched camp as a nucleus for future operations. Cornwallis fixed upon Yorktown and Gloucester, after making a number of surveys. Portsmouth, therefore, was evacuated, and by the latter part of August the positions named were occupied by the British army in Virginia.

Washington, with the eye of a general, made his far-reaching plans, seeing clearly the inevitable end. Early in June Rochambeau set his troops in motion. They numbered four thousand and marched through Connecticut in superb order. On the 6th of July they, with Washington's army, were encamped in a line from Dobbs Ferry on the Hudson to the Bronx River. They made so many threatening demonstrations against the city of New York that Clinton thought (as the patriots meant he should think) that their intention was to attack the city at once.

Lafayette had been ordered to hold Cornwallis where he was and prevent his escape into North Carolina. Notice reached Washington that De Grasse would arrive at the mouth of the Chesapeake by the end of August. On the 19th of that month the allied troops were ordered under arms, facing New York.

Then, instead of marching against the city, they wheeled and started for Virginia. Feints were still maintained against the city, so that it was not until the 2d of September that Clinton awoke to the astounding fact that he was outwitted, and he and his troops were not in the least danger of molestation.

To the booming of cannon, the ringing of bells, and the cheers of the excited populace, the armed hosts tramped through the streets of Philadelphia. They and every one knew that momentous events were at hand, and an epoch in the history of the nation was about to open. Morris had exhausted his last penny in raising money for the troops, but he borrowed twenty thousand dollars from Rochambeau, which was distributed among the needy patriots. Washington rode ahead at the rate of sixty miles a day, and thus secured time to make a brief visit to Mount Vernon, which he had not seen for more than six years.

On the 30th of August, Count de Grasse dropped anchor within the capes of the Chesapeake. The English fleet appeared on the 5th of the following month. The French attacked and inflicted so much damage that the British vessels returned to New York. This gave De Barras a chance to run in with the French transports from Newport, containing the artillery for the siege. On the 28th the allied troops, twelve thousand strong, drove in the outposts and took position before the Yorktown intrenchments.

That night Washington slept on the ground in the open air, the root of a mulberry tree serving him as a pillow. The next day the allied armies were posted, the Americans on the right and the French on the left, or west side. On October 5, trenches were opened within six hundred yards of the enemy's line. The bombardment began and continued without cessation for four days and nights. Governor Nelson, being asked to direct the bombardment, picked out a fine mansion which he believed to be the headquarters of Cornwallis, and ordered the gunners to knock it to fragments. It was his own home.

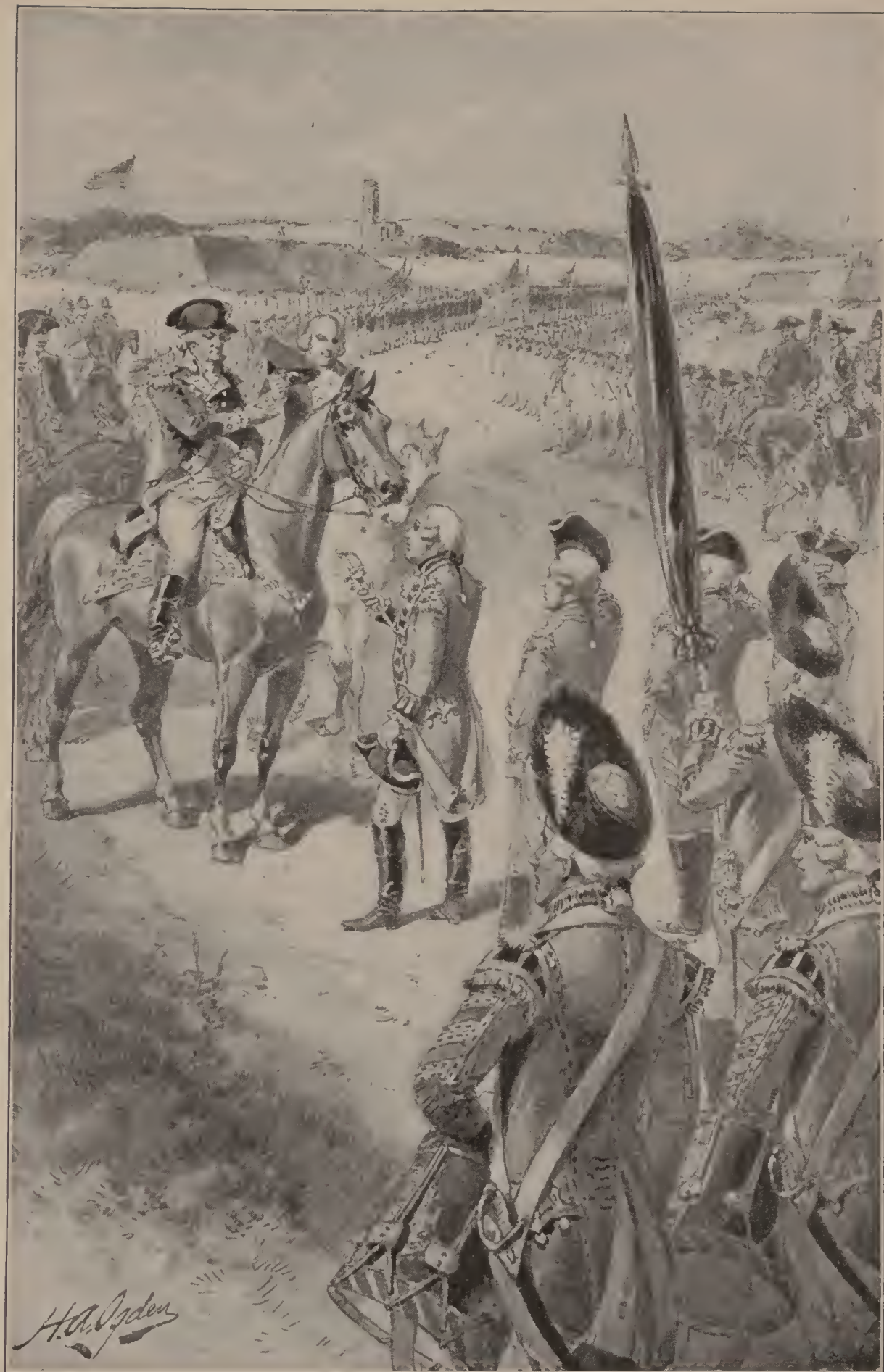
The vessels in the harbor fired red-hot shot, the English reply-

ing with great vigor. Their cavalry was so short of forage that many of the horses were killed and rolled into the river. An epidemic broke out in the town, and more than a fourth of Cornwallis's army were forced into the hospital. The second parallel was begun by Baron Steuben's division, and on the night of October 11 it was within three hundred yards of the British, who kept up a hot fire on the besiegers. The latter were so annoyed by the flanking fire from two redoubts, that an assault was ordered on the evening of the 14th. So impetuous was the attack that both were captured within a few minutes—one by the French and the other by the Americans, the allies working in harmony and with generous rivalry.

**Surrender of Cornwallis.**—As the days and nights passed, Cornwallis grew weaker and Washington stronger. The longing eyes of the British commander saw no sail bringing the expected relief from Clinton. The hour came when all the guns along his front were dismounted and his shells expended. In his desperation he saw but one hope: that was to abandon everything, cross the river at night to Gloucester, overcome the French stationed there, and flee through Pennsylvania and New Jersey to New York. In the attempt, he got a portion of his army over, but a storm drove the boats down stream, and they could not be recovered before daylight. Then they were used to bring back the troops that had been taken across. All hope was now gone, and Cornwallis opened negotiations for surrender. The terms were fixed, and the surrender took place on the 19th of October, 1781.

The scene will always remain one of the most impressive in the history of our country. At two o'clock in the afternoon the British army marched out of Yorktown, with slow step, shouldered arms, and cased colors. The allied troops were drawn up on opposite sides of the road for more than a mile, the Americans on the right, the French on the left. Washington and Rochambeau, each with his staff, sat on their horses at the head of the army. All mere spectators had been ordered to keep away by Washington, who repressed every sign of exultation.





SURRENDER OF CORNWALLIS

General O'Hara was at the head of the defeated men. When he came opposite Washington, he lifted his hat and apologized for the absence of Cornwallis, because of illness. Washington in reply said that to General Lincoln had been assigned the duty of receiving the submission of the troops. This was a pleasant duty to Lincoln, who had been obliged to hand his own sword to Clinton the previous year on the surrender of Charleston. Lincoln conducted the troops to an open field, and the order to "ground arms" was given. Some of the soldiers, in their anger, flung down their guns so violently as to break them. A sharp command from Lincoln stopped the irregularity. The prisoners were then conducted back to Yorktown, to remain under guard until taken elsewhere.

The British army surrendered included seven thousand two hundred and forty-seven English and Hessian soldiers and eight hundred and forty sailors. Seventy-five brass and thirty-one iron guns and the accoutrements of the army fell into our hands. The victory was the knell of the British conquest of America.

**The News in Philadelphia.** — A courier mounted a swift horse and started for Philadelphia with the news. "Past two o'clock and Cornwallis is taken!" was the thrilling cry that rang through the streets of that city and brought nearly every one from his house, breathless with excitement. Soon all the bells in the city were ringing; people went mad with joy, kissing one another, flinging their hats in air, and shouting through what remained of the night and into the next day. Early in the morning congress met, and in the afternoon marched in solemn procession to the Dutch Lutheran Church, where thanks were given to Almighty God for his deliverance of the nation. The aged door-keeper of congress was so overcome with joy that he dropped dead. Washington ordered divine service to be held at the heads of the regiments, because of the "particular interposition of Providence in their behalf."

**The News in England.** — In England the news produced a profound impression. Lord North paced his room, flinging his



arms in agony, and exclaiming: "My God! it is all over!" The people demanded that the attempts to subdue the colonies should cease at once, and called for the removal of the ministers who advocated otherwise. The house of commons declared by vote that whoever advised the king to continue hostilities should be looked upon as a public enemy. At the beginning of May, 1782, Sir Guy Carleton arrived in New York for propositions for reconciliation between the two countries.

While the surrender at Yorktown virtually ended the war and secured the independence of the United States, the patriot armies still kept the field and considerable fighting took place. Greene held the British in Charleston, and Wayne guarded the garrisons in Augusta. It is said that the last blood shed in the Revolution was that of Captain Wilmot, in September, 1782, in a skirmish at Stono Ferry.

**Peace.** — The preliminary articles of peace were signed at Versailles (ver-sālz) November 30, 1782, but the final treaty was not executed until the 3d of September of the following year. Previous to this, April 19, on the eighth anniversary of the battle of Lexington, Washington, at the headquarters of the army, officially declared the war at an end.

Charleston was evacuated December 14, 1782, and Savannah July 11, 1783. The English forces gathered in New York, and the present metropolis of America was evacuated November 25, 1783. The troops embarked in boats for Staten and Long islands, preparatory to taking ship for home. On the same morning General Knox, who had come down from West Point, entered the city with some troops from the Bowery. He took possession of Fort George, upon the Battery, amid the firing of guns and the cheering of the assembled multitude. Washington and his staff and Governor Clinton and suite made formal entry soon after. The commander-in-chief took up his headquarters at Fraunces Tavern, on the corner of Pearl and Broad streets, where, on December 4, he bade farewell to his principal officers. He then set out for Annapolis, and there surrendered his com-



mission to congress and became an ordinary citizen of the republic whose independence he had done so much to secure.

**TOPICS.** — The wisdom of General Greene's appointment to command in the South; his course of action; General Morgan and other officers; battle of the Cowpens; fruits of the victory; the aim of Cornwallis; how he was baffled; the engagement at Guilford Court-House; the next step of Cornwallis; the successes of the Americans; battle of Eutaw Springs; the exploit of Manning of Lee's legion; action of congress at the beginning of the year; the revolt of the Pennsylvania line.

The action to which congress was spurred; Arnold's raiding expedition into Virginia; his expedition to New London, Connecticut; his narrow escape; the conference between Washington and Rochambeau; Washington's plan of campaign; the march southward; the patriotism of Robert Morris; Count de Grasse; progress of the siege of Yorktown; hopeless situation of Cornwallis; his surrender; number that surrendered; how the news was received in Philadelphia; action of congress; the news in England; Lord North; the further fighting that was done; preliminary articles of peace; the final treaty; evacuation of Charleston; of New York; occupation of the city by the American troops; Washington's farewell to the army; his surrender of his commission.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Henry Lee** was born in Virginia in 1756 and was a graduate of Princeton College. He was a valued friend of Washington and enlisted in the Revolution before he had attained his majority. He was a dashing officer who, in the latter half of the war, was in command of "Lee's Legion," which fact and his numerous brilliant exploits caused him to be known as "Light Horse Harry." He received a gold medal from congress for his daring capture of Paulus Hook (now Jersey City) in 1779. He effectively covered Greene's retreat in 1781 and was one of the most prominent officers in the principal operations in Georgia and the Carolinas. He was elected to the continental congress and was governor of Virginia in 1792-1795. General Lee suppressed the Whiskey Rebellion in 1794. He was author of the oft-quoted expression, "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen," which was used by John Marshall in his eulogy upon Washington. General Lee was a congressman 1799-1801, and while engaged in suppressing a fierce mob in Baltimore, in 1814, he received injuries which resulted four years later in his death. He was the father of General Robert E. Lee, the distinguished leader of the Confederacy.

**Robert Morris**, the financier of the Revolution, was born in England in 1734, and removing to Philadelphia, became wealthy. He was an ardent lover of his adopted country, and one of the signers of the Declaration of

Independence. He was an active member of congress and organized the Bank of North America in 1781. He was member of the constitutional convention of 1787 and United States senator 1789-1795. His repeated and successful efforts to furnish the patriot armies with funds undoubtedly saved the cause of independence several times from collapse. It is a sad fact, however, that in the later years of his life, when unfortunate in business, this noble patriot spent a number of months in prison for debt. He died in 1806.

**Comte de Rochambeau** was born in France in 1725 and served his country in several wars before coming to the United States, in 1780, in command of the French force which gave so invaluable aid in the closing campaign of the war. He returned to France in 1783, became a field marshal, and died in 1807.

**Count de Grasse**, born in France in 1723, commanded the French fleet of twenty-nine vessels and three thousand men which helped Washington and Rochambeau at the siege of Yorktown. Returning to his native land, he died in 1788.

**Frederick North, Earl of Guilford**, was born in England in 1733. He is best known as Lord North. He favored the most drastic measures against the American colonies, and we have learned of his shock upon hearing of the surrender of Cornwallis. He was lord of the treasury in 1763 and chancellor of the exchequer and leader of the house of commons in 1767. He became first lord of the treasury and prime minister of England in 1770, holding the office until 1782, when he resigned, dying ten years later.

**Henry Knox** was a native of Boston, where he was born in 1750. He had charge of a bookstore, which he left in order to take part in the battle of Bunker Hill. He was made a brigadier general of artillery, and rendered good service at Trenton, Brandywine, Monmouth, and Yorktown, winning promotion to major generalship. He was made secretary of war in 1785, and was reappointed by Washington, under whom he served until 1795. In 1806, he met his death from the lodgment of a chicken bone in his throat while at the dinner table.

**Daniel Morgan**, one of the hardest fighters of the Revolution, was born in New Jersey in 1736.\* He fought through the French and Indian war and against Pontiac, after which he became a farmer in Virginia. Twelve years later, he led a company of Virginia riflemen to Boston to aid Washington in the siege of the city. He was specially active in Montgomery's expedition against Quebec, and was captured in the assault on the city. He was released by Sir Guy Carleton and was soon again striking telling blows for his country. He was with Gates in the Burgoyne campaign and rendered great aid to the patriot army. In 1780, he was made brigadier general and won the battle of the Cowpens, effecting a junction with Greene, as we have learned, despite the





# PART IV

## THE PERIOD OF FORMATION AND GROWTH

---

### CHAPTER XIX

#### FORMATION OF THE GOVERNMENT



THE end of a great war is always followed by depression, and it requires many years for a nation to recover from its exhaustion. War is a great calamity and never to be resorted to except for self-preservation. Let us all pray that the day may soon come when arbitration shall be the only method of settling disputes between nations, as well as between individuals. It will be the grandest step forward ever taken in the world's civilization.

**Poverty and Unrest of the Nation.** — At the close of the Revolution the United States was as poor as it could be. There was no commerce, trade was destroyed, and the currency that had been issued possessed no value at all. The great source of trouble was the powerlessness of congress over the different States. All that that body could do was to recommend certain measures, and the States accepted or rejected the advice as they felt disposed.

Washington and the leading statesmen saw how impossible it was to thrive without a strong central government, with clearly defined powers and the authority to enforce its laws. The Articles of Confederation, adopted in 1777, had no substance. Nothing

gave them force except a common danger, or the willingness of all concerned. It was not until March, 1781, that Maryland, the last State, subscribed to them. Congress had no power over domestic or foreign commerce. Each State made its own regulations, and the friction at times threatened civil war.

This extreme poverty and weakness of the government endangered its existence before the army was disbanded. The condi-



WASHINGTON'S PATRIOTISM

tion of the soldiers was pitiful. They had no money, and their families were reduced to rags and starvation. While Washington was at his headquarters in Newburg, in March, 1783, an anonymous address was distributed among the troops, urging them to overthrow the civil authorities and obtain their rights by force. Washington was asked to become king, but the great man spurned the offer. He deeply sympathized with the distressed

patriots, and finally secured a grant of five years' full pay for the officers. Thus that peril was averted.

In 1783 the Northern and Middle States contained about a million and a half of people, and the Southern a million. Virginia was the most populous, with four hundred thousand inhabitants, and Pennsylvania and Massachusetts came next, with three hundred and fifty thousand apiece. The population of Philadelphia was forty thousand, of Boston twenty thousand, while

New York had barely fourteen thousand. The estimated debt of the country in the spring of 1783 was forty-two million dollars, and that of the different States twenty million dollars.

The States dragged on for two years, growing poorer, if that were possible, and steadily diverging from one another in feeling and interest, until everything seemed to be going to ruin. The germs of good government, however, did not die and were soon



SHAYS'S INSURRECTION

to spring into new life. The preliminary steps toward forming a new Constitution were taken by the commissioners of Maryland and Virginia in 1795. Delegates from five States met at Annapolis in September, 1786, and formulated a report, advising congress to call a general convention for a more effective revision of the Articles of Confederation.

**Shays's Insurrection.** — Among the events which helped the movement for a strong central government was the action of



Captain Daniel Shays of Massachusetts. He headed a mob of two thousand men, who dispersed the supreme court sitting at Springfield, and demanded the abolishment of taxes and the issue of paper money for general use. Congress sent General Lincoln, with four thousand troops, to disperse the rioters. Lincoln replaced the judges in their seats, and fired upon the mob when they were about to attack the arsenal. They scattered, and the little rebellion ended.

**The Constitutional Convention.** — This body assembled in Philadelphia in May, 1787, every State except Rhode Island being represented. They met in the same room, in Independence Hall, where the Declaration of Independence was signed. Washington was elected president of the convention, and some of the ablest men of the nation took part in the proceedings.

Discussion soon proved that a mere revision of the Articles of Confederation would not do; it was necessary to form a wholly new system of government. At last, after full discussion and with extreme care, the Constitution was completed and signed, September 17, 1787, by all the delegates except Gerry of Massachusetts and Randolph and Mason of Virginia. It was to go into effect March 4, 1789, if adopted by nine States. Pennsylvania, Delaware, and New Jersey ratified it in 1787, and the other States followed, with the exception of North Carolina and Rhode Island, which adopted it in 1789 and 1790, respectively.

Presidential elections were held in the States that had ratified the Constitution, except New York, where the legislature omitted to pass a law providing a mode of choosing electors. Ten States, therefore, voted. They gave every one of their electoral votes — sixty-nine in number — to George Washington for President. John Adams received thirty-four and became Vice President. The rule prevailed that the one receiving the largest number of votes was elected President, and the next highest Vice President. A majority of the whole number was necessary to the choice of a President, but not of a Vice President. Thus the two might belong to different political parties.

**The Northwestern Territory.**—The territory of the United States, at the close of the Revolution, comprised that enormous region between the Atlantic Ocean and the Mississippi and from the St. Lawrence and Great Lakes on the north to the thirty-first parallel south. Northwest of the Ohio was a vast tract claimed by several States, because it was included in their original charter limits. The State boundaries were a source of trouble for years. In the original grants, the western boundaries of New Hampshire, Rhode Island, Pennsylvania, Delaware, New Jersey, and Maryland were defined. New York claimed that she had no western boundary, but was satisfied to have it remain as it is now. The other six States were supposed to extend westward to the Pacific, but when Louisiana was transferred to Spain, in 1763, the Mississippi River became the extreme western limit.

The most remarkable claim was that of Virginia. It will be noted that with most of the other States claiming to extend to the Mississippi, the northern and southern boundaries are parallel; but the claim of Virginia was that her northern boundary took a northwest course, so that her territory widened out like a fan and included the present States of Kentucky, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin, while the claims of Massachusetts and Connecticut invaded those of Virginia. The other States insisted that since the thirteen won this territory from Great Britain, all should share in its apportionment.

There was but one way of settling the wrangle, and New York set the example in 1780, by ceding all her western claims to the United States. Virginia did the same in 1784, Massachusetts in 1785, Connecticut in 1786, South Carolina in 1787, North Carolina in 1790, and Georgia in 1802. By this sensible course, the western boundaries of the States named were fixed as they are to-day. The Western Reserve along Lake Erie in northeastern Ohio is so called because Connecticut retained and sold it.

Congress, in session in New York, before, during, and after the constitutional convention in Philadelphia, passed a memorable ordinance in 1787. It provided for the government of the

Northwestern Territory, until certain portions should contain sixty thousand inhabitants, when they were to be admitted as States. It prohibited forever "slavery or involuntary servitude, except for crime," therein.

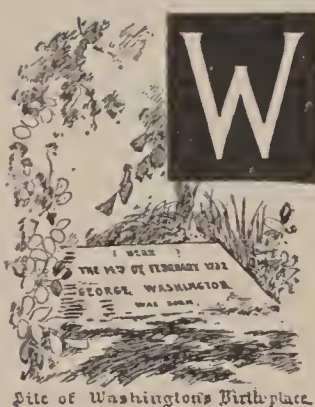
A tide of emigration set westward, for the lands were fertile, and the Indian titles to seventeen million acres had been extinguished. In 1788 the settlement of Marietta was begun at the mouth of the Muskingum, and during the same year more than twenty thousand people built their cabins in the Northwestern Territory, which afterward formed the populous States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Michigan, and Wisconsin.

**TOPICS.** — The depression that follows the end of a great war; arbitration; the poverty of the United States; commerce, trade, and the currency; the main source of trouble; what was needed; the Articles of Confederation; the condition of the soldiers; what occurred at Newburg; the relief extended by congress; the population of the States in 1783; of Philadelphia, Boston, and New York; the national and State debts; the preliminary steps toward the formation of a strong central government; Shays's insurrection; the constitutional convention; when it was signed; when adopted by the different States; the presidential elections that followed; the results of the election; extent of the United States territory at the close of the Revolution; the State boundaries; the claims made by the original grants; the remarkable claim of Virginia; how the dispute was settled; the erection of the Northwestern Territory; what the ordinance provided; the emigration westward; settlement of Marietta; number of settlers for that year in the Northwest; the States afterward formed from the Northwestern Territory.



## CHAPTER XX

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATIONS.—1789-1797



W

**WASHINGTON'S Patriotism.**—Washington would have preferred to spend the remainder of his life in his tranquil home at Mount Vernon, but his patriotism would not allow him to disregard the call of his country. He had so little money at the time, that his home was threatened by the sheriff, and he had to borrow funds with which to pay his most pressing debts.

**Washington's Inauguration.** — The President elect left Mount Vernon on April 16, and the entire journey to New York was a continual ovation. He received honors at almost every step of the way, and was welcomed to the nation's capital by the joyous thousands who felt that no reward could be too great for the illustrious patriot that had enshrined himself forever in the hearts of his loving countrymen. The inauguration ceremonies took place April 30, in Federal Hall, on the present site of the sub-treasury building. Chancellor Robert R. Livingston of New York administered the oath, in a balcony of the senate chamber, in full view of the vast concourse on the outside, who cheered the great man to the echo. Other ceremonies followed, Washington showing deep emotion at the manifestations of love and loyalty on the part of all.

**The First Constitutional Congress.** — The first session of the first constitutional congress was chiefly occupied in setting the government machinery in motion. The following nominations

for the first cabinet were made by Washington and confirmed by the senate: Thomas Jefferson, secretary of foreign affairs, afterward known as secretary of state; Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury; Henry Knox, secretary of war; and Edmund Randolph, attorney general. John Jay was appointed chief justice of the supreme court, with John Rutledge, James Wilson,



WASHINGTON'S INAUGURATION

William Cushing, Robert H. Harrison, and John Blair associates. (The senate refused to confirm the nomination of Rutledge.)

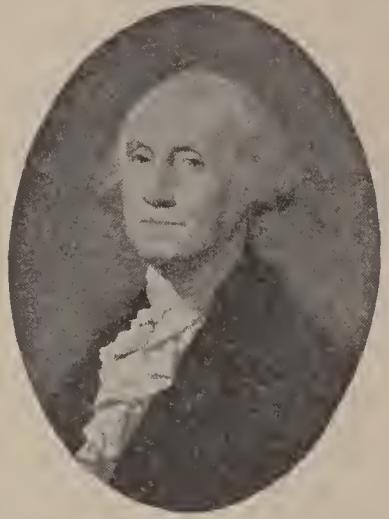
**Federalists and Republicans.** — The most urgent question was that of finance. Hamilton handled it with great skill. The debt of the confederation and States was almost eighty million dollars. Hamilton's plan, as submitted to congress, called for the payment by the United States of every dollar due to American citizens, and also the war debt of the country. There was

strong opposition to the scheme, but it prevailed. The discussions in congress brought out the lines between the Federalists and the Republicans, or, as they were afterward called, Democrats. The Federalists favored the enlargement of the powers of the general government, while the Republicans insisted upon holding the government to the exact letter of the Constitution, and giving to the individual States all rights not expressly prohibited by the Constitution.

**The Seat of Government.** — North Carolina did not adopt the Constitution until November 13, 1789. Little Rhode Island sulked until Massachusetts and Connecticut proposed to parcel her between them, when she came to terms and adopted the Constitution, May 29, 1790. It was decided to transfer the seat of government to Philadelphia until 1800, when it was to be permanently fixed upon the eastern bank of the Potomac. The third session of the first congress, therefore, was held in Philadelphia, on the first Monday in December, 1790. Through the efforts of Hamilton, the United States Bank and a national mint were established in that city, and did much to advance the prosperity of the country.

**A Protective Tariff.** — In 1791, Hamilton made a memorable report to congress. In it he favored a protective tariff, recommending that the materials from which goods are manufactured should not be taxed, and advising that articles which competed with those made in this country should be prohibited. These and other important features were embodied in a bill, which was passed February 9, 1792.

**Trouble with the Indians.** — Trouble occurred with the Indians in the Northwestern Territory and in the South. Georgia was dissatisfied with the treaty, by which a considerable part of the State was relinquished to the Indians. The difficulty in the



GEORGE WASHINGTON



Northwest was much more serious. General Harmar was sent to punish the red men for their many outrages, but was twice defeated. Then General St. Clair took his place. Before he set out, Washington impressively warned him against being surprised; but he, too, was beaten and his army routed with great slaughter.

"Mad Anthony" Wayne now took up the task, with nearly three thousand men, and completed it thoroughly. At Fallen Timbers, August 20, 1794, he met the combined tribes and



BATTLE OF FALLEN TIMBERS

delivered a crushing defeat, from which the Indians did not recover for years. One year later, eleven hundred chiefs and warriors met the United States commissioners at Fort Greenville and signed a treaty of peace, relinquishing at the same time a vast tract of land lying in the present States of Indiana and Michigan.

**The Whiskey Rebellion.** — Among the important laws passed by congress was one imposing a duty on distilled spirits. This roused great opposition in western Pennsylvania, where whiskey was the principal article of manufacture and trade. The revolt

there assumed such formidable proportions that it became known as the "Whiskey Rebellion," and the President was compelled to call out the militia, fifteen thousand strong, to suppress it.

**Washington's Second Term.** — Washington did not desire a second term, but his countrymen would not permit him to decline. He again received all the electoral votes cast, while the next highest number went to John Adams. Strong party spirit was shown, Hamilton being the leader of the Federalists and Jefferson the foremost Republican.

**"Citizen Genet."** — During Washington's administrations, France was plunged into the bloodiest revolution known in history. Her representative in this country was Edmond Charles Genet (zheh-nā), better known as "Citizen Genet." Landing at Charleston, South Carolina, in April, 1793, he did not wait to present his credentials to the government, but began enlisting soldiers and fitting out privateers for the French service. Many thoughtless citizens encouraged him, but the wise Washington, finding that Genet defied him, ended the business by compelling his country to recall him.

**Jay's Treaty.** — There was much trouble also with Great Britain, but a treaty was finally arranged with her by our special envoy, John Jay. One of its provisions guaranteed payment to British citizens of debts due them before the war. This caused much opposition, but the time came when it was admitted that Jay's treaty was one of the best made by our government.

**Retirement of Washington.** — Washington was strongly urged to be a candidate a third time for the presidency, but refused. He was growing old; he had given the best years of his life to the service of his country and yearned for the quiet, restful life at Mount Vernon. Nothing could dissuade him from his purpose, and in his farewell address to the people of the United States, September 17, 1786, he made known his decision.

**Presidential Election of 1796.** — The presidential election of 1796 was warmly contested. Of the one hundred and thirty-eight, electoral votes cast, John Adams, Federalist, received seventy-

one, and Thomas Jefferson, Republican, sixty-eight. Thus the President and Vice President were politically opposed to each other.

**New States.** — Three new States were formed during Washington's administrations. The first was Vermont, which came in March 4, 1791. The section was discovered by Champlain in 1609, its name in French meaning "green mountain." A settlement was made within its present limits at Fort Dummer by pioneers from Massachusetts. After the French and Indian war, emigrants came west of the Connecticut River in large numbers. New Hampshire claimed the territory. New York did the same, and, appealing to the king, he decided in favor of New York. The settlers of the "New Hampshire Grants" applied to the continental congress in 1776 for admission, but, as New York opposed, withdrew the application. The inhabitants took an active part in the Revolution.

Kentucky was admitted June 1, 1792. Its name does not mean "dark and bloody ground," as is generally supposed, but is derived from the Indian word, "Kain-tuk-ae," signifying "Land at the head of the river." At first it was a part of Virginia and was settled by Daniel Boone in 1769, and organized into a Territory in 1790. The numerous conflicts with Indians on its soil have well earned for it the suggestive title named.

Tennessee was admitted June 1, 1796. Its name, according to some writers, is from "Tenasea," an Indian chief, while others believe that it means "river of the big bend." It was colonized in 1754, organized as the State of Frankland or Franklin in 1785, merged in the "Territory south of the Ohio" in 1789, and became a separate Territory in 1794.

**TOPICS.** — Washington's preference; his journey to New York; his inauguration; the first session of the first constitutional congress; Washington's first cabinet; the Federalists and Republicans; adoption of the Constitution; the changes made in the national seat of government; the United States Bank and the mint; the first protective tariff; the troubles with the Indians; Wayne's victory at Fallen Timbers; the treaty which followed; the Whiskey Rebellion;



Washington's second election; the doings of "Citizen Genet"; Jay's treaty with England; the retirement of Washington; the presidential election of 1796; the admission of Vermont; its early history; the admission of Kentucky; its early history; the admission of Tennessee; its early history.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.**—**Alexander Hamilton** was born in the West Indies in 1757. As a child his precocity was remarkable. When fifteen years old he was sent to New York city, and soon after entered Columbia (then King's) College. At the age of seventeen a patriotic speech made by him held his hearers spellbound. He organized a company of cavalry at the beginning of the war, before he was twenty years of age, and performed active service on Long Island and at White Plains. He was one of the most valuable members of Washington's staff, serving until the close of the last campaign at Yorktown. He was in the continental congress in 1782-1783, and was the ablest friend of the new Constitution which he helped to frame. In the convention held in New York to ratify the Constitution, three-fourths of the members were strongly opposed to its adoption. By the power of his logic and eloquence Hamilton won them over and secured the vote of the Empire State. His services as a member of Washington's cabinet stamped him as one of the greatest statesmen of his time. He was the foremost Federalist as Jefferson was the foremost Republican, and even the genius of Washington could not keep them on good terms, as a consequence of which Hamilton resigned in 1795. In 1798, he was appointed inspector general at the request of Washington, when war with France was imminent. He read the vicious nature of Aaron Burr, and was so persistent an enemy of his schemes, that Burr challenged him to a duel, which was fought at Wehawken, New Jersey, July 11, 1804. Hamilton did not fire at Burr, but the latter took deliberate aim at Hamilton, who was mortally wounded. His death shocked the whole country.

**Edmund J. Randolph** was a noted Virginian, born in 1753, who became an active patriotic leader soon after his graduation from William and Mary College. He was attorney general of Virginia, a member of the continental congress, and of the constitutional convention of 1786. He was governor of Virginia 1786-1788, and although he refused to sign the Constitution, he advocated its adoption by Virginia. He served as attorney general for Washington 1789-1794, when he became secretary of state, but resigned in the following year. He died in 1813.

**John Jay**, born in 1745, was graduated from King's (now Columbia) College and became an active member of the committee of correspondence. He was a delegate to the first continental congress and wrote the "Address to the People of Great Britain." He was also in the second congress and helped to form the State constitution of New York, becoming chief justice of the

State in 1777. In 1780, he was made minister to Spain, and helped Adams and Franklin to negotiate peace. He served as secretary of foreign affairs in 1784-1789, and was governor of New York 1795-1801, dying in 1829.

**Josiah Harmar** was born in 1753 and served through the Revolution, attaining the rank of lieutenant colonel. From 1789 to 1792 he was commander-in-chief of the United States army. He died in 1813.

**Arthur St. Clair** was an English soldier, born in 1734, who won laurels at the siege of Quebec. He was with General Sullivan in the Canadian expedition of 1776, and commanded a brigade at Trenton and Princeton. He was a major general when he surrendered Ticonderoga in 1777, and was present at the surrender of Cornwallis in 1781. After serving in the continental congress from 1785 to 1787, from Pennsylvania, he became governor of the Northwest Territory, holding the office from 1789 to 1802. He died in 1818.

**Edmond C. Genet** was born in France in 1765. When Genet, at the demand of Washington, was recalled in 1794, he was too wise to return to France, where he would have been guillotined, but, remaining in this country, became naturalized, married an excellent lady, lived happily, and died in 1834.

**John Adams**, second President of the United States, was born at Braintree, Massachusetts, October 19, 1735. He was graduated from Harvard College and became a lawyer. He was an industrious and influential member of the first and second continental congresses, where he was chairman of twenty-five committees and a member of more than sixty others. No man did as much as he to strengthen the sentiment for American independence. To him was mainly due the adoption by congress of the Declaration of Independence, and it was at his suggestion that Washington was appointed commander-in-chief of the American armies. He was of medium stature, rotund person, bald on the top of his head, deliberate of speech and utterance, a firm believer in Christianity and of spotless character. He was troubled with a quick temper, however, and at the inauguration of Jefferson, as his successor, showed his resentment by leaving Washington early in the morning, so as not to be present at the ceremonies. He and Jefferson became reconciled afterward and corresponded to the close of their lives. One of the strangest facts in our history is that Jefferson, the author of the Declaration of Independence, and John Adams, who secured its adoption, both died on the same day, July 4, 1826, exactly fifty years after the signing of the immortal document. When Adams took the oath of office, March 4, 1797, Washington was among those who were present.

## CHAPTER XXI

JOHN ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1797-1801



**THREATENED War with France.** — Charles C. Pinckney, our minister to France, was dismissed, with notice that no other representative from this country would be received until we had complied with the demands of the new French republic. Furthermore, the French marine were ordered to prey upon American commerce. The President called an extra session of congress, and Elbridge Gerry and John Marshall were appointed to accompany Minister Pinckney back to France, in the effort to effect a reconciliation.

Their reception was insulting. M. Talleyrand informed them that they could not be received by the directory (the ruling body then in France), and that as a preliminary to all business a loan should be made to France, and each member of the directory must be presented with a bribe of two hundred and forty thousand dollars. Pinckney replied with the historical words: "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute!"

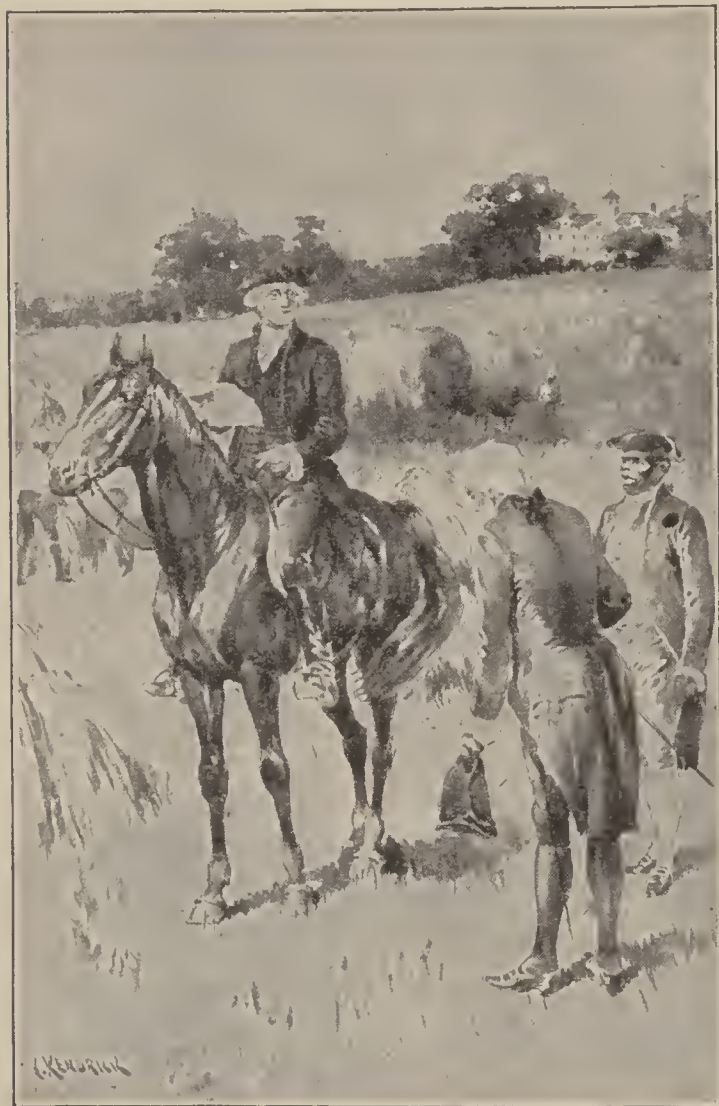


JOHN ADAMS

President Adams now began preparations for war. All commercial intercourse with France was suspended; the President was authorized to detach eighty thousand men from the militia



of the United States, and a navy department was organized. Twenty-four vessels were to be prepared, and our merchants were authorized to arm themselves against the French vessels of war. General Washington was once more placed at the head of the army, and he selected Alexander Hamilton as the active com-



WASHINGTON RECEIVES HIS COMMISSION

mander. Although an old man, Washington declared, when his commission was handed to him in the field near his home, that he was ready for any service his country might ask.

Hostilities occurred on the ocean. Commodore Truxtun, in command of the frigate *Constellation*, captured the French war vessels *L'Insurgent* and *La Vengeance*. But that marvellous military genius, Napoleon Bonaparte, had fought his way through blood to the throne of France, and he brought the mad people to their senses sufficiently for them to

see the folly of a war with the United States. A satisfactory treaty was made between the two countries in 1800.

**The Alien and Sedition Laws.** — The violent denunciations of our government by the friends of France led to the passage, in the summer of 1798, of what was known as the "alien and sedition laws." The first gave the President the power to send out

of the country any foreigner whom he believed to be dangerous to the peace, and extended the period of naturalization to fourteen years. The sedition law declared it a crime to "write, print, utter, or publish any false, scandalous, or malicious statement against either congress or the President. These laws awakened bitter opposition. Kentucky and Virginia declared that when congress passed acts unauthorized by the Constitution, as she had done in this instance, the States were not bound to obey them. These resolutions were dictated by Vice President Jefferson and were sent to the legislatures of other States. They became an all-absorbing theme of discussion for years. Within them was embodied the momentous question of "State rights," or, more properly, "State sovereignty," which bore its fruitage a half-century later.

**Death of Washington.** — On the 14th of December, 1799, General Washington died at Mount Vernon. Exposure to a driving rain and snowstorm brought on pneumonia. Of no one can it be said so truly that a nation mourned his loss. He will always remain one of the grandest, most illustrious, and heroic figures in history; one whose lofty character, wonderful gifts, and consecration to the highest good of his country have never been surpassed by any man, ancient or modern. He was buried with fitting honors, the remains being placed in the present receptacle in Mount Vernon in 1837.

The resolutions offered in congress contained the immortal eulogy: "First in war, first in peace, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." The distinguished jurist, John Marshall, delivered the eulogy containing this expression, but, as we have learned, the author of the words was Washington's former comrade in arms and intimate friend, General Richard Henry Lee, or "Light Horse Harry," as he was familiarly known.

**Removal of the National Capital to Washington, D.C.** — The District of Columbia was ceded to the United States by Maryland and Virginia in 1790, for the purpose of making it the capital of our country. The city of Washington was laid out in 1781, and

President Washington laid the cornerstone of the north wing of the capitol April 18, 1793. The Federal government was removed to Washington in the summer of 1800.

**Presidential Election of 1800.** — Party lines were sharply drawn in the presidential election of 1800. The Federal party put forward as their candidate for President John Adams, and for Vice President Charles C. Pinckney. The candidates of the Republicans were Thomas Jefferson and Aaron Burr. Adams's course during the troubles with France strengthened him, but the alien and sedition laws lost him the vote of New York, and consequently the election. He received sixty-five electoral votes, Pinckney sixty-four, and Jefferson and Burr each seventy-three. The latter being a tie, the contest was thrown into the house of representatives, where, on the thirty-sixth ballot, Jefferson was elected President and Burr Vice President.

**TOPICS.** — The insulting course of France; the action of the President; the reception of our three representatives by M. Talleyrand; the reply of Pinckney; the preparations for war by the President; General Washington; the hostilities on the ocean; Napoleon Bonaparte; the treaty of 1800; the alien and sedition laws; what was done by the first; by the second; the bitter opposition to them; the death of Washington; removal of the national capital to Washington; the presidential election of 1800.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Charles Cotesworth Pinckney** was born in South Carolina in 1746. He was attorney general of the colony and a member of the provincial congress. He did good service in the war until 1780, when he was among those who surrendered at Charleston. He assisted in framing the Constitution in 1787, and, after his repulse by Talleyrand and return home, was made major general in view of the expected war with France. Pinckney was a leading Federalist, and as such was defeated for the Vice Presidency in 1800, and for President in 1804 and 1808. He died in 1825.

**Elbridge Gerry**, born in Massachusetts in 1744, was a member of the colonial assembly from 1772 to 1775, and of the continental congress from 1776 to 1780 and from 1783 to 1785. Massachusetts sent him to the first United States congress in 1789 and he remained until 1793. He was elected Vice President as a Democrat in 1812 and died in office in 1814. In 1811 the Republicans of Massachusetts carried out a redistricting scheme while Gerry was governor (1810-1811). This unfair method of one political party taking advantage, when in power, of another has been followed to a greater or less



extent ever since, and derives its name, "gerrymander," from the fact that Gerry was governor at the time the trick was originated.

**John Marshall** was born in Virginia in 1755, and was, therefore, but a youth when the Revolutionary war began. He enlisted, however, as a regimental officer and did good service throughout the struggle. He studied law after the close of hostilities, and as a member of the Virginia convention for ratifying the Constitution in 1788 he overcame all opposition. He was congressman 1799-1800, and secretary of state 1800-1801, when President Adams appointed him chief justice of the supreme court, which office he retained until his death in 1835. His great reputation was made as an "interpreter" of the national Constitution, and he was foremost of all American jurists.

**Thomas Truxtun**, who taught the French cruisers their much-needed lesson, was born in 1755, and served as lieutenant of the privateer *Congress* when twenty-one years old. The following year he was captain of the *Independence*, and captured several prizes. He died in 1822.

**Aaron Burr** was born in New Jersey in 1756, and was graduated from Princeton at the age of sixteen, with a "perfect" record of scholarship. He attained the rank of colonel in the Revolution, and afterward he became the attorney general of New York. He was devoid of moral principle, but by his captivating manners and political adroitness he was elected to the United States senate and to the vice presidency of the country. He tied the vote with Jefferson for the presidency in 1800 for more than thirty ballots. We have learned of the death of Hamilton at his hands. After that terrible deed, Burr engaged in what is believed to have been a treasonable scheme against the United States, which involved the erection of an independent State in the Southwest. He was tried upon the charge of treason, in Richmond, in 1806, Chief Justice Marshall presiding. He was acquitted and spent some years in Europe. Returning to New York, he died in obscurity on Staten Island in 1836.

**Thomas Jefferson**, the "apostle of democracy," was born at Shadwell, Albemarle county, Virginia, April 2, 1743. He was graduated from William and Mary College, and, studying for the bar, received three thousand dollars—a large sum in those days—during the first year of his practice. He was a man of great ability, original ideas, and marked force of character. He was the author of the Declaration of Independence, as he was of our decimal system of coinage. He adopted the practice of sending his message to congress, a practice which has been maintained ever since. In person, Jefferson was six feet, two inches in height, erect but thin, with fair complexion, reddish hair, light blue eyes, large nose, broad forehead, and a countenance of great intellectuality. He was among the most learned of our Presidents, speaking several languages fluently, was a fine musician, and assumed office with the full confidence of the whole country.

## CHAPTER XXII

JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1801-1809



**THE Principles of the Original Republicans, or Democrats.** — The vital principle of the original Republicans, or Democrats, as they were afterward known, was the diffusion of power among the people. In them, it was maintained, resided the original and inherent sovereignty. For clearly specified purposes this power had been delegated in two directions — to the general government, as a bond of union between all the States, and to the counties, towns, cities, villages, and corporations within their limits for special objects. The legislation of the central government was to be of a general character, while the local authorities attended to all home legislation.

**Important Legislation.** — The Sedition Act was speedily repealed and all those undergoing its penalties were set free. The alien law was also modified by reducing the term of naturalization to five years. The military academy at West Point, which had been recommended by Washington, was established, and by the twelfth amendment to the Constitution it was made the duty of the electors to designate which persons were voted for as President and Vice President. This amendment was passed in 1804, and rendered it inevitable that both officers should always belong to the same political party.

**Acquisition of New Territory.** — The most important work of Jefferson's administrations was the addition of an immense area

to our territory by the purchase, April 30, 1803, of Louisiana. The price paid was fifteen million dollars. Ohio, the first State carved from the Northwestern Territory, was admitted to the Union February 19, 1803. It was first settled at Marietta in 1788.

**Lewis and Clarke's Expedition.** — This transaction added more than a million square miles to our territory. While the West was delighted, there was fear in the East that the attractions of the new country would drain the older portions. Upon the recommendation of the President, an exploring expedition was sent into the unknown region. Composed of thirty men, it left the Mississippi, May 14, 1804, under the command of Captains Meriwether Lewis and William Clarke, the latter a younger brother of Major George Rogers Clarke. They embarked in a flotilla and ascended the Missouri for two thousand six hundred miles. To the three streams, forming that river, they gave the respective names of Jefferson, Madison, and Gallatin. Pushing their way on horseback across the mountains, they discovered the rivers named for themselves and traced the Columbia to the Pacific. They were the first party of white men to cross the continent north of Mexico. They were gone more than two years, and brought back valuable information of the hitherto unknown half of our country.



THOMAS JEFFERSON

**War with Tripoli.** — For twenty years the United States, like other Christian nations, had regularly paid tribute to the Barbary States in northern Africa, on condition that their pirates would let our vessels alone when they ventured into that part of the world. It sometimes happened that our tribute was late in reaching the despots, who, thereupon, added a round sum as a penalty, which was handed over without protest. Furthermore, the insolent rulers now and then liked to have the payment made in naval



stores. In such cases, they insisted upon fixing the valuation themselves. We let them do it, even when they undervalued the property one-half.

Captain William Bainbridge could hardly contain his disgust and anger when, in 1800, he carried, as our representative, the tribute to Algiers. Presenting himself before the dey, he was ordered to take it to the sultan of Constantinople, to haul down



CAPTAIN BAINBRIDGE BEFORE THE DEY OF  
ALGIERS

his flag and run up that of Algiers. The naval officer refused. "You are my slaves," said the despot; "for if you were not, you would not pay me tribute. I command, and you must obey."

Finé language that to be addressed to an officer of the United States! But Bainbridge had to do as told, for he was at the mercy of the castle guns in the harbor, and the American consul urged him to obey. "I will do so, because there is no choice," remarked Bain-

bridge; "but I hope to deliver the next tribute from the mouths of my cannon."

The following year the dey of Tripoli became angry because he did not receive as much money as he wanted from the United States. So he declared war against us. Nothing could have pleased our young navy better, for of course the war had to be waged for us by the navy, and the officers were yearning for a chance at the insolent barbarians.

In August, 1801, Lieutenant Sterrett, of the *Enterprise*, with

twelve guns attacked a Tripolitan vessel of fourteen guns off Malta. At the end of two hours the Tripolitans hauled down their flag. The Americans stopped firing and broke into cheers, in the midst of which the enemy discharged a broadside. The fighting began again, and the Tripolitans strove desperately to board the *Enterprise*, but were repulsed. By and by they hauled down their flag again, but a second time fired into the Americans.

By this time, as we may well suppose, Lieutenant Sterrett was out of patience. He raked the enemy from stem to stern, shot away the mizzenmast, made a sieve of the hull, and killed and wounded fifty men. Through the smoke the captain was seen leaping about the deck, wildly flinging his arms and shrieking that he had surrendered. To prove that he was in earnest, he flung his colors into the sea. Lieutenant Sterrett ordered him to throw his ammunition and arms overboard, cut away the rest of the masts, and dismantle his ship. This was done. Then he was allowed to rig a jury mast and hoist a single sail. "Now go home," said the American lieutenant, "and give my compliments to your dey."

To prove the insignificance of those pirates when compared with our own sailors, it may be said that in this spirited engagement, treacherously renewed twice, not a single man was killed on board the *Enterprise*. Had the pirates succeeded in boarding, they would have inflicted considerable loss of life, for they fought viciously at close quarters. In July, 1802, the *Constellation*, under Captain Murray, fought nine Tripolitan gunboats and drove five ashore, the rest saving themselves by running into the harbor.

The *Philadelphia*, while chasing a blockade-runner, ran upon a reef in the harbor of Tripoli. She was attacked by a fleet of gunboats, and Captain Bainbridge, being helpless, was obliged to surrender with all his men. The barbarians floated off the *Philadelphia*, when the tide rose, refitted her, and thus secured a most valuable prize.

One night, however, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur, in a small vessel, the *Intrepid*, sailed in and made fast to the *Philadelphia*.

He pretended his vessel was a merchantman that had lost her anchors. The Tripolitans suspected nothing until the Americans swarmed over the gunwales and through the portholes. The enemy scattered, and setting fire to the *Philadelphia*, Decatur withdrew. The vessel was burned to the water's edge.

In November, 1804, Commodore Samuel Barron arrived with the *President* and *Constellation* and superseded Commodore Preble. The American squadron now numbered ten vessels, carrying two hundred and sixty-four guns.

In April, 1805, Derne, one of the seaports of Tripoli, was bombarded and the town stormed and captured. For the first time in history the Stars and Stripes were hoisted over a fortification on the eastern side of the Atlantic. The enemy were defeated again the following month, and the Americans began their march toward Tripoli. By this time the bashaw was terrified. He gladly signed a treaty of peace on the 3d of June. He received sixty thousand dollars for the captives in his hands, but the paying of tribute ceased and a full exchange of prisoners was effected.

**Re-election of Jefferson.**—In the presidential campaign of 1804, Jefferson was re-elected on the Republican ticket, while George Clinton of New York took the place of Burr. The nominees of the Federal party were Charles Cotesworth Pinckney of South Carolina and Rufus King of New York, who carried but two States out of the seventeen.



THE CLERMONT

**The First Steamboat on the Hudson.**—One of the most interesting events of Jefferson's administration was the first steam-



boat voyage on the Hudson. Fitch, in 1790, constructed an awkward affair which ran by steam on the Delaware, but it was soon given up, the results being unsatisfactory. The *Clermont* was launched at New York, and started up the Hudson August 1, 1807. She was the invention of Robert Fulton, and was about one hundred feet in length and not quite twenty feet wide, with paddle wheels and a sheet-iron boiler that had been brought from England. It took her thirty-two hours to ascend one hundred and fifty miles against the current.

**Trouble with England.** — England and France were engaged in another of their never-ending wars. England, by its "Orders in Council," declared all vessels engaged in conveying West India products from the United States to Europe legal prizes, and a number of ports under control of France were proclaimed in a state of blockade. Napoleon, in retaliation, issued the "Berlin Decree," which forbade the introduction of English goods into any port of Europe, even by neutral powers. Then England declared the whole coast of Europe under blockade, and Napoleon followed with another decree, confiscating all vessels and cargoes violating the "Berlin Decree."

All this was interesting, but the Americans were the ones who suffered most. They protested in vain. Napoleon informed us that the shortest and only way of relief was by helping him to bring England to reason, and England replied by telling us to join her in putting down the disturber of the world.

On the 22d of June, 1807, the British ship *Leopard* fired into the American vessel *Chesapeake* off the coast of Virginia. The American frigate being unprepared for action, struck her colors. Three of her men were killed and eighteen wounded. The *Leopard* was looking for deserters and took four from the *Chesapeake*, three of whom were negroes. The fourth, a white man, was taken to Nova Scotia and hanged. The negroes were deserters, though they claimed to have been impressed from American service.

This outrage would have produced war, had not England dis-

avowed the act and promised reparation, which, however, was never made. She would not yield the right of search, however, which was the cause of all the trouble.

**The Embargo Act.** — On the 21st of December, congress, after a heated discussion, passed the famous Embargo Act, which forbade all American vessels to leave the ports of the United States. The Federalists violently opposed the bill, which was very unpopular in the States engaged in commerce. It was hoped that by suspending commercial intercourse with Great Britain and France, they would be forced to recognize the rights of American neutrality. All the States were soon injuriously affected by it. The act was ridiculed by spelling the name backward, by which it became the *O grab me* Act.

John Quincy Adams had favored the measure, for which he was condemned by the legislature of his State. Thereupon he resigned his seat in the senate and told Jefferson that, if the measure was persisted in, New England would withdraw from the Union. Jefferson recommended that congress should repeal the Embargo Act. This was done, so far as it related to all other nations, except Great Britain and France.

**Presidential Election of 1808.** — Several legislatures asked Jefferson to become the presidential candidate for a third term, but he wisely decided to follow the precedent established by Washington. James Madison of Virginia and George Clinton of New York were the nominees of the Democrats for the respective offices of President and Vice President, and Charles Cotesworth Pinckney of South Carolina and Rufus King of New York were the candidates of the Federal party. Madison was elected, Clinton continuing the Vice Presidency, which he had held since 1805.

**TOPICS.** — The original Republicans, or Democrats; the alien and sedition laws; the military academy at West Point; the twelfth amendment to the Constitution; the purchase of Louisiana; the admission of Ohio; Lewis and Clarke's expedition; the practice of paying tribute by Christian nations to the Barbary States; insolence of the despots; the experience of Captain William Bainbridge; the act of the dey of Tripoli; exploit of Lieutenant Sterrett; of Captain

Murray; the disaster to the *Philadelphia*; the daring act of Lieutenant Decatur; Commodore Samuel Barron; the bombardment of Derne; peace; re-election of Jefferson; the first steamboat on the Hudson; cause of the trouble with England; the "Orders in Council" and the "Berlin Decree"; the *Leopard* and the *Chesapeake*; the Embargo Act; its repeal; the presidential election of 1808.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Stephen Decatur** was the most distinguished member of the infant American navy. He was born in Maryland in 1779. His father was active during the Revolution, and his brother lost his life in the war with Tripoli. Stephen entered the naval service in 1798 and in 1803 commanded the *Argus* and afterward the *Enterprise*. In 1812, in command of the *United States*, he captured the British frigate *Macedonian*, but was blockaded in New London by a British squadron and kept there idle for a long time. He was caught at such disadvantage, while commanding the almost worthless *President*, that he was compelled, in 1814, to surrender. He conquered the Barbary powers in 1815. His criticisms upon Commodore Barron, who, while in command of the *Chesapeake*, struck his colors to the *Leopard*, caused a duel between the two in 1820, in which Decatur was killed.

**Edward Preble**, born in 1761, served on a privateer when only sixteen years old, and was engaged in several spirited battles. He was made a lieutenant in 1798, and a year later was given command of the *Essex*. We have learned of his services in the war with Tripoli. He died in 1807.

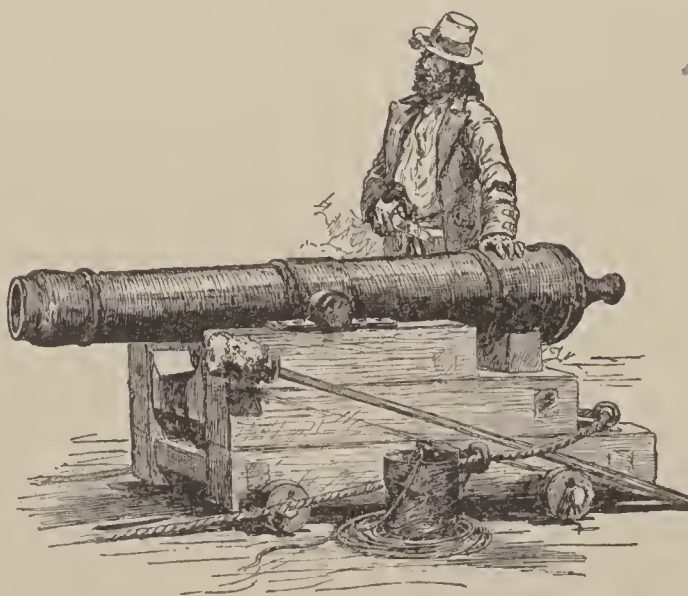
**William Bainbridge** was another of our naval heroes who was appointed to service in the navy in 1798. He was born in 1774 and went to sea when fifteen years old. After his capture by the Tripolitans, he was held in captivity for more than a year. His most famous exploit was in the war of 1812, when, as commander of the noted *Constitution*, he captured the *Java*. After the close of the war, he saw service in the Mediterranean ports and as naval commissioner. He died in 1833.

**John Fitch**, born in Connecticut in 1743, was by trade a watchmaker. He was engaged in making and repairing guns for the American soldiers at Trenton, when his property was confiscated by the enemy. He enlisted under Washington and spent the winter of 1780 at Valley Forge. He was made surveyor of Virginia and met with a number of remarkable experiences with the Indians. Fitch's fame rests upon what he did in 1785. With a boat propelled by steam, he made a number of trips between Philadelphia and Burlington, twenty miles above, and by some it is said he ascended to Trenton, at the head of navigation. Fitch always maintained that Fulton had access to his drawings and papers and got his ideas from him. In 1817, the courts declared that such was the fact and that the inventions of the two were substantially the same. He died in 1798.



**Robert Fulton**, who is conceded to have been the practical inventor of the steamboat, was born in Pennsylvania in 1765. He went to England, in 1786, to study portrait painting, but he was chiefly interested in inventions and engineering. He was in France from 1797 to 1804 and received encouragement from R. R. Livingston, who was minister to that country, and from Joel Barlow. Fulton invented the torpedo, but could not persuade Bonaparte or the British ministry to adopt it. He returned to America in 1806, and his *Clermont* made its successful trip to Albany in the following year. Fulton designed also the steam ferry-boats and movable docks, substantially as they are to-day. He was engaged in constructing a war vessel for the government, when he overwrought himself and died in 1815.

**James Madison**, fourth President of the United States, was born in King George county, Virginia, March 16, 1751. He was graduated from Princeton College and prepared for the bar, but the opening of the Revolution drew him aside from the practice of his profession. He was elected a member of the Virginia convention in 1776, and upon Jefferson's return from France was offered that mission, but declined it. In 1780 he took his seat in the continental congress. At first he was a Federalist, but became an ardent Democrat. He held the office of secretary of state throughout both of Jefferson's terms. He was so esteemed in his own State that the law was changed so as to permit him to take a seat in congress for the fourth time. Madison was below medium height, grave of speech, with clear blue eyes and a quiet, student-like manner. His private character was stainless. He was fond of society and revived the levees held by Washington. The beauty and graces of "Dolly Madison," his wife, charmed visitors, and many delightful legends have come down to us concerning those days of long ago. He died June 28, 1836.



A LONG TOM

## CHAPTER XXIII

MADISON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1809-1817



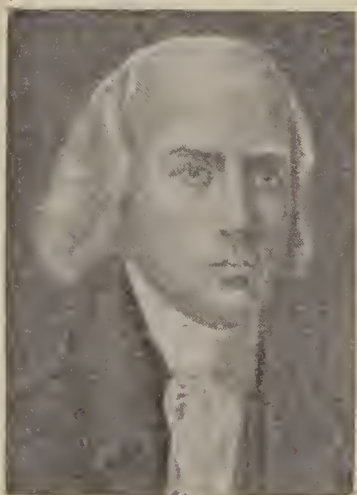
**APPROACH of War with England.** — The theory of our government is that a foreigner can become an American citizen through naturalization. England maintained, on the other hand, "Once an Englishman, always an Englishman." She therefore insisted upon stopping our vessels on the high seas, searching for seamen of English birth, and forcing them into her service. Mistakes were in-

evitable, and the so-called "right of search" was pressed to an exasperating point. British men-of-war were stationed outside our harbors, and they searched every ship coming and going. Nearly a thousand vessels were overhauled in the course of eight years, and the books of the State department at one time contained more than six thousand names of sailors that had been driven into the British navy.

**The "Little Belt" and the "President."** — The British sloop *Little Belt*, while engaged in stopping merchant vessels near our coast, hailed, off the shores of Virginia, in May, 1811, the American frigate *President*. Not liking the answer of the American, the *Little Belt* fired into her. The *President* instantly responded with a broadside, followed by others, which badly crippled the enemy, killing eleven and wounding twenty-one. Since each government approved the action of its officer, the anger between the countries became more intense than before.

**Trouble with the Indians.** — The enmity toward Great Britain was deepened by the belief that her agents were engaged in stir-

ring the Indians on our Northwestern border to hostilities against the settlers. The outrages became so numerous through the Wabash valley that Governor William Henry Harrison ascended the river to Terre Haute, where he built a fort. He then



JAMES MADISON

advanced toward an Indian town at the mouth of the Tippecanoe. The Indians, after professing friendship, furiously attacked him on the early morning of November 7, 1811, but were defeated with great slaughter. Harrison then marched to the principal town and laid it in ashes.

**Admission of Louisiana.** — Louisiana, named in honor of Louis XIV, was admitted to the Union April 30, 1812. The first permanent settlement within its present boundaries was at New Orleans, in 1718.

We have learned of its purchase from the French. The first American flag was unfurled in New Orleans on December 20, 1803.

**Declaration of War against Great Britain.** — Although there was much opposition to the step, the American congress, on the 19th of June, 1812, declared war against Great Britain. The legislatures of Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Jersey protested against it, but New York, Philadelphia, and Baltimore passed resolutions approving the action of the government. It was in Baltimore that "Light Horse Harry" Lee, while engaged in suppressing a mob, received injuries which resulted in his death four years later. New England especially opposed the war, and some of the shipping in Boston harbor hung their flags at half-mast upon receiving the news.

Although we had no navy, and were ill prepared for a struggle with Great Britain, the country began immediate preparations, and Henry Dearborn of Massachusetts was appointed the first major general and commander-in-chief of the army.

**Hull's Surrender.** — The war opened disgracefully to the American arms. An invasion of Canada was made at three





BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE

points — Detroit, Niagara, and on the St. Lawrence. Dearborn commanded the eastern end, General Stephen Van Rensselaer the Centre, and General William Hull the troops of the West. All were to co-operate, with Montreal as the objective point.



SURRENDER OF DETROIT

British were within five hundred yards, when Hull ran up the white flag in token of surrender.

After a brief parley, Hull gave up not only the post, but every soldier under his command in Canada, together with the whole of Michigan Territory, to the British. The American officers were so incensed that they broke their swords, tore off their epaulets

Hull, the governor of Michigan Territory, crossed from Detroit to Sandwich, with several hundred regulars and three regiments of volunteers. He frittered away his time, until the British rallied and captured Mackinaw, when he retreated to Detroit. On the 16th of August, Brock, the governor of Upper Canada, advanced against the post. The defenders had a strong position, and the gunners stood with lighted matches, awaiting the order to fire. To the astonishment of the enemy and the consternation of the Americans, the



and stamped them on the ground. Captain Brush, commanding at Raisin, refused to be bound by Hull's agreement, and, when ordered to surrender, broke camp and withdrew toward the Ohio.

Thirty prisoners were given in exchange for Hull, who was brought before a court-martial, charged with treason, cowardice, and conduct unbecoming an officer. He was convicted on the last two charges and sentenced to be shot. President Madison pitied the old man, and, because of his services in the Revolution, pardoned him. The truth was that his age and misgivings robbed him of all the courage he once possessed. His daughter was in Detroit, and he dreaded unspeakably her falling into the hands of the Indians. Hull never regained the respect of his countrymen and died in 1825.

**Massacre at Fort Dearborn.** — Captain Nathan Heald and fifty regulars occupied Fort Dearborn, standing on the present site of Chicago. Having received orders from General Hull to evacuate the fort and join him at Detroit, Captain Heald attempted to do so, though warned by friendly Indians and scouts that the attempt would be fatal. He set out with the regulars, a number of militia, and several families. They were assailed by Indians, more than half of the regulars killed, and all the militia, women, and children. This took place on the day before the surrender of Detroit.

**Battle of Queenstown Heights.** — General Van Rensselaer, with the army of the Centre, attempted his part of the invasion of Canada late in the summer of 1812. He crossed the Niagara at Lewiston, October 13, to attack the enemy on Queenstown Heights. The landing was fiercely contested, but the Americans captured the fortress. General Brock, reinforced by six hundred men, attacked the Americans, but was repulsed and Brock mortally wounded. The three officers who succeeded him were either killed or badly injured.

The Americans began to intrench and sent for the twelve hundred militia on the other side of the river, but they were so scared that they refused to go to their help. Lieutenant Colonel



Winfield Scott had crossed and taken command of the brigade. While intrenching, he was attacked by a strong force of British and Indians. He repelled them twice with the bayonet, but the enemy being again reinforced, he was driven back to the river. No boats were there, however, to take his men across, and he was obliged to surrender. The loss in killed and wounded of the Americans was one thousand.

During the progress of this disaster, the twelve hundred New York militia looked on without firing a shot to help their imperilled friends. General Van Rensselaer was so disgusted with their cowardice that he resigned his command, and was succeeded by General Alexander Smyth of Virginia. This man was almost a fool. He issued a bombastic proclamation which made him the laughing stock of the army; attempted several times to enter Canada, but failed; was mobbed by the militia, posted as a coward, and finally deprived of his command.

**Failure of the Americans.** — The army of the Centre and the army of the West having made their record, it now remained for the commander-in-chief, with the army of the East, to show what he could do. In the latter part of November he crossed into Canada, but everything went wrong. His men fired into each other, ran away, leaving their dead and wounded behind, while many of the officers were grossly incompetent. Having added nothing but discredit to the American arms, they went into winter quarters.

**The War on the Ocean.** — It is a relief to turn from the land to the ocean, where our little navy covered itself with glory. Three days after the surrender of Detroit, the *Constitution*, a forty-four-gun ship, under command of Captain Isaac Hull, nephew of General Hull, engaged the *Guerriere* (gāre-e-āre), a thirty-eight-gun ship, under Captain Dacres, off the coast of Massachusetts. In the furious engagement which followed, the *Guerriere* lost seventy-nine killed and wounded, while the *Constitution* lost only seven killed and seven wounded. The British ship became an unmanageable wreck before her captain surrendered,



THE CONSTITUTION AND THE GUERRIERE

and was blown up by Captain Hull, who sailed to Boston with his prisoners.

This victory spread rejoicing through the country. Congress gave Hull a gold medal and divided fifty thousand dollars among his crew. Twelve days after his victory, Commodore Stephen Decatur, while cruising with his frigate *United States*, of forty-four guns, captured the *Macedonian*, of forty-nine guns. The engagement lasted two hours, Decatur losing only twelve men, while that of the enemy was more than a hundred. Decatur reached New York on New Year's day, 1813. He was received as enthusiastically as Hull.

Our navy had more officers than ships. Captain Hull, in order to give his comrades a chance to share in his glory, chivalrously turned over the command of the *Constitution* to Commodore Bainbridge. In the latter part of December, off the coast of Brazil, Bainbridge fell in with the British frigate *Java*, of thirty-eight guns. The battle lasted nearly three hours, during which every mast was torn from the British ship and her hull burst with round shot. When her flag was struck, she had lost one hundred and twenty men and her captain was mortally wounded. The loss of the *Constitution* was thirty-four.

In the month of October, Captain Jacob Jones, with the sloop-of-war *Wasp*, fell in with the brig *Frolic*. In the fight which followed, the vessels lay almost against each other, the spars of the *Wasp* being shot away and the hull of the *Frolic* riddled. Then they grappled, and the Americans swarmed over the deck of the *Frolic*. All that they found above was the man at the wheel and two officers, the rest having fled below. The *Wasp* lost ten men, while on the *Frolic* there were hardly twenty that had been unhurt. By and by the *Poictiers*, a British seventy-four-gun ship, bore down and captured the Americans.

**Re-election of Madison.** — The presidential election occurred in the autumn of 1812. Vice President George Clinton died April 12, and was succeeded by William H. Crawford, the presiding officer of the senate *pro tem*. The Democratic party





THE WASP AND THE FROLIC

placed Madison again in nomination, with Elbridge Gerry the candidate for Vice President. The Federalists nominated De Witt Clinton and Jared Ingersoll for President and Vice President, respectively. The Democratic ticket was elected by a large majority.

### *Events of 1813*

**Military Operations.** — The army improved little upon its discreditable record of the preceding year. It was organized in three divisions: the army of the North, commanded by General Wade Hampton, in the neighborhood of Lake Champlain; that of the West, under General Winchester, soon succeeded by General Harrison; and that of the Centre, under the commander-in-chief, General Henry Dearborn, who was to resume offensive movements on the Niagara frontier and Lake Ontario. The ultimate purpose was to invade Canada, where Proctor commanded, with Tecumseh at the head of the Indian allies.

**Capture of York, Canada.** — An expedition sailed from Sackett's harbor, April 25, against York (now Toronto), Canada. Effecting a landing, the town was assaulted by General Zebulon M. Pike, the successor of General Dearborn, who had fallen ill. The enemy blew up their powder magazine and fled, leaving forty of their own killed. One hundred Americans were slain, General Pike being among the mortally wounded.

**Attack on Sackett's Harbor.** — Sackett's harbor having been left defenceless, Sir George Prevost, governor of Canada, attacked it May 29. General Jacob Brown, in command, learned of his coming only a day before, but hastily collected the militia and made ready to receive them. His men were repulsed at first, but he rallied them and drove back the enemy to their boats.

**Failure of the Army of the North.** — General Dearborn having resigned his command of the army of the Centre, General James Wilkinson became his successor. It was arranged that Hampton, with the army of the North, should advance from Plattsburg and unite with Winchester in an attack on Montreal. Wilkinson

descended the St. Lawrence and drove back the enemy at Chrysler's Field November 11. Hampton failed to move forward, and the ill-managed expedition came to naught.

After the surrender of Detroit by General Hull, General Harrison set out to recover Michigan from the British. General Wilkinson marched toward Frenchtown, a village on the river Raisin, twenty-five miles south of Detroit. He reached the Maumee Rapids, January 10, at the head of eight hundred volunteers, mostly Kentuckians. He sent a detachment to attack the Indians at Frenchtown, following them with reinforcements two days later.

**Defeat of the Americans.** — Only eighteen miles distant, at Malden, was Colonel Proctor, with fifteen hundred British and Indians. He hurried this large force forward, and on the morning of the 22d attacked and routed the Americans, taking General Wilkinson prisoner. Proctor frightened him into sending orders for Colonel Madison, his successor, to surrender, which orders were obeyed.

**Siege of Fort Meigs.** — Upon learning of the disaster, General Harrison fell back from the Maumee Rapids, but advanced again with twelve hundred men and erected Fort Meigs, on the right bank of the river. There he was besieged for several days by Proctor and Tecumseh, who finally were compelled to give up and withdraw.

**Heroic Defence of Fort Stephenson.** — Proctor's next movement was against Fort Stephenson, on the Sandusky, where Fremont now stands. The garrison numbered only one hundred and twenty men, under the command of Major George Croghan, barely twenty-one years of age. Proctor ordered him to surrender, threatening, in case of refusal, to turn the whole garrison over to the savages to tomahawk. Croghan replied that when he did surrender there would be none left to tomahawk.

This brave youth had only one six-pounder mounted on the stockade. He loaded it to the muzzle with slugs and scraps of iron. Keeping it masked, he waited until the enemy had entered



a long ditch on the north while charging, when he hurled death and destruction among them. They scattered in dismay, but soon rallied and tried it again, only to be driven back with as great slaughter as before. The Indians could not stand such treatment, and refused to join again in the attack, and the sharp fire of musketry caused Proctor to withdraw from the neighborhood.

There was considerable fighting of a desultory character, but, as already stated, the record of the army as a whole was not much of an improvement on that of the preceding year. If an American wishes to have his cheeks tingle, he must, as before, turn to the achievements of our gallant little navy.

**The War on the Ocean and Lake Erie.** — Captain Lawrence, of the sloop-of-war *Hornet*, fought the English brig *Peacock*, off the coast of British Guiana, on the 24th of February. The fight lasted but a quarter of an hour, when the *Peacock* struck her colors, being in a sinking condition. She went down so quickly that thirteen of the English sailors and four of the *Hornet's* crew sank with her. Upon reaching New York, the officers and crew of the *Hornet* gave a letter of thanks to Captain Lawrence for his kindness.

**The "Chesapeake" and "Shannon."** — The brilliant exploit of Captain Lawrence secured him the command of the frigate *Chesapeake*, then refitting in the harbor of Boston. Captain Broke, commanding the *Shannon*, which was cruising off the coast, challenged Lawrence to come out and fight him. The *Chesapeake* was not yet ready for sea, and the crew were in a mutinous state because of their failure to receive the prize money due them, but Lawrence was reckless enough to accept the challenge. The battle was fought on June 1, and in ten minutes the *Chesapeake* was unmanageable from the fire of her opponent. Captain Lawrence was mortally wounded, and his ship speedily became the prize of the *Shannon*. On the American ship, forty eight were killed and ninety-eight wounded, while the *Shannon* lost twenty-three killed and fifty-six wounded. In his delirium,



"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP"

Lawrence often repeated the words, "*Don't give up the ship!*" which became the motto of the American navy.

**Decatur blockaded.** — On the same day of this disaster, Decatur, in command of the *United States*, *Macedonian*, and *Hornet*, was chased into New London by a superior British squadron. That was bad enough, but, what was intolerably worse for Decatur, he was held there during the rest of the war. He repeatedly tried to steal out in the darkness, but he declared that in every instance traitors on shore notified the blockaders, and he had to slip back again. Decatur complained bitterly of this, asserting that the warning was given by means of blue lights burned inland. During those days of high partisan feeling, this charge led to the name of "Blue Lights" being applied to the Federal party.

**Other Naval Exploits.** — Lieutenant Arthur Sinclair, commanding the schooner *Adeline*, sunk the British vessel *Lottery* off Lynn Haven Bay, early in the spring. Captain Allan of the *Argus* caused so much destruction among the enemy's shipping in the British channel, that a number of vessels were sent after him, and he was captured by the English brig *Pelican*. Captain Allan was killed during the engagement. Soon after, the brig *Enterprise* took the British *Boxer* off the coast of Maine. Both commanders were slain in the fight and buried side by side in Portland.

Captain David Porter, in command of the *Essex*, sailed from the Delaware, October 28, and doubling Cape Horn captured twelve ships and several hundred sailors, many of whom enlisted under him. He armed several of the vessels as tenders, making a small fleet, with which he protected our whaling interests in the Pacific. In defiance of the laws of nations, the *Essex* was attacked, March 28, 1814, in the neutral harbor of Valparaiso, by the British frigate *Phæbe* and the sloop-of-war *Cherub*. After a desperate engagement, the *Essex* surrendered. On this cruise David G. Farragut, afterward rear admiral, sailed as a midshipman, though but twelve years old.



**Perry's Great Victory.** — This year, however, witnessed one of the grandest triumphs ever won by the American navy. Oliver Hazard Perry, only twenty-eight years of age, who had never commanded in battle, was assigned to the command of the American fleet on Lake Erie. A part of this fleet at that time was in the shape of trees in the woods; but by vigorous work Perry fitted out nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns, with which in August he set out to search for Commodore Barclay, with his six vessels and sixty-three guns. The two squadrons met, on the 10th of September, at the western end of Lake Erie.

Just before the battle opened, Perry ran to the masthead of his flagship a banner on which were inscribed the words of Lawrence: "*Don't give up the ship!*" Singling out Perry's vessel, the *Lawrence*, Commodore Barclay, with his flagship the *Detroit*, attacked and fought it so furiously that in two hours it was in a sinking condition. Perry left her in a small boat, and standing erect, passed directly in front of the *Detroit's* guns, boarded the *Niagara*, and ran up his flag again. Then, while the British fleet was forming a new line of action, the *Niagara* was driven right through them, and delivered broadside after broadside with tremendous effect. The other American vessels crowded after the *Niagara* and swept the enemy's decks with so terrific a raking fire that at four o'clock in the afternoon every one of the enemy had surrendered.

In this memorable engagement, the Americans lost twenty-seven killed and ninety-six wounded, while the loss of the British was two hundred killed and wounded and six hundred prisoners. Commodore Barclay had but one arm when he entered the battle, and at the close had lost the other. Returning to the battle-stained deck of the *Lawrence*, Perry rested an old letter on his navy cap and wrote the following despatch to General Harrison: "We have met the enemy and they are ours: two ships, two brigs, one schooner, and one sloop."

This was the first time in the naval history of Great Britain that she had surrendered an entire squadron to the enemy. She

was humiliated by the disaster, while the name of Perry became immortal. The great victory thrilled the country. It was celebrated by illuminations, speeches, rejoicings, and in song, and so long as any member of the American squadron lived, he was looked upon as a hero by his admiring countrymen.

**Results of the Victory.** — Perry's victory was decisive and far reaching. Vast interests depended upon the result of the naval battle, and Proctor and Harrison were eagerly awaiting the result. In the event of Perry's defeat, Proctor intended to invade Ohio; if the issue was the other way, Harrison meant to enter Canada, with bright prospects of success. Accordingly, early in the following month, with a strong force of Kentuckians, he started in pursuit of Proctor, who retreated rapidly along Lake St. Clair, in the effort to join the British at the head of Lake Ontario. Tecumseh denounced the officer for running away, and brought him to a stand at last by threatening to leave him with all his Indian allies.

**The Battle of the Thames.** — Proctor and Tecumseh selected a good battle-ground on the Thames, near the Moravian towns. There, on the 5th of October, the enemy was attacked by General Harrison and General Shelby, governor of Kentucky. Proctor quickly concluded that the place was too hot for him, and leaping into a carriage, put his horse on a run and escaped. Too proud to fly, and with a presentiment that he would never survive the battle, Tecumseh inspired his Indians by his heroic example, until he fell dead under many wounds and his warriors fled. The victory was complete. The Indian confederacy was destroyed, Ohio was freed from the danger of invasion, and all that Hull had surrendered was recovered.

**Indian Troubles in the Southwest.** — The inhabitants of Georgia and Alabama were imperilled by the Indians, who had risen in response to the appeals of Tecumseh. Many of them took refuge in a stockade known as Fort Mimms, on Lake Tensas, forty miles from Mobile. Governor Claiborne sent one hundred and seventy-five volunteers to its defence. They were warned against sur-

prise, but no heed was paid. On the 30th of August a thousand Creeks attacked the stockades, where no sentinels were on duty, and the guns were stacked, with the outer gate open. The defenders fought desperately, but in vain. All the garrison and every woman and child except twelve, were massacred, the total being nearly three hundred.



DEATH OF TECUMSEH

*Events of 1814*

**Defeat of the Indians in the Southwest.** — The Creeks were compelled to pay dear for this outrage. The militia of the Southwest rallied in large numbers, under General Andrew Jackson, who marched against them. He went at the work with fear-



ful earnestness. He hunted down the red men like rabid dogs, he and his allies driving them from point to point and continually defeating them. They made their last stand in a fortified camp at the Great Horseshoe Bend of the Tallapoosa River, in the present State of Alabama. There a thousand warriors, with their squaws and children, awaited the attack, which was made March 27, 1814. The Indians fought with unusual bravery, but it availed them naught. At night six hundred were dead and three hundred had fled. They were crushed.

**Military Operations.** — The peace of Paris released the British forces that had been fighting Napoleon so long, and gave England the chance to launch them against us. Fourteen thousand veterans who had fought at Waterloo were sent to Canada. The fort at Oswego was captured by the British on the 6th of May, dismantled, and the barracks burned.

On the 3d of July, three thousand men, under the command of Generals Scott, Ripley, and Brown, crossed Niagara River and captured Fort Erie, opposite Buffalo. Two days later the British were defeated at Chippewa. The loss of the English was nearly double that of the Americans.

**The Battle of Lundy's Lane.** — The severe battle of Lundy's Lane was fought on the 25th. Scott was the hero of this affair. He maintained the fight bravely and skilfully against the superior force of the enemy until midnight, the Americans retaining possession of the field. They withdrew the next day. Scott was so severely wounded that he was unable to take any further part in the war. Brown was slightly hurt. He displayed such excellent generalship that at the close of hostilities he was made commander-in-chief of the United States army and held the honor until 1828. Congress gave him a gold medal, and Brownsville in New York was named for him.

Upon the wounding of Scott and Brown, Ripley retreated to Fort Erie, and General Gaines took command. A British attack, August 15, was repulsed. A sortie by the garrison, September 17, raised the siege, and the British withdrew behind their in-

trenchments at Chippewa. The Americans destroyed Fort Erie and then went into winter quarters at Buffalo.

General Brown, in his need of reinforcements, was obliged to drain Plattsburg of all but fifteen hundred troops. Sir George Prevost, with fourteen thousand veterans, four armed vessels, and thirteen gunboats, marched against General Macomb and Commodore Macdonough, commanding the land and naval forces of Plattsburg. The Americans withdrew across the Saranac, and Sunday morning, September 11, were attacked by land and water.

**Land and Naval Victory.** — Commodore Downie of the British fleet had ninety-five guns and more than a thousand men, while Macdonough had only eighty-six guns and eight hundred and twenty men. The Americans gained a decisive victory. The naval battle, which lasted a little more than two hours, ended with not a mast uninjured in either squadron. Commodore Downie was killed, his ship surrendered, and nearly all the rest were captured or sunk. Prevost's land attack was also repelled. He withdrew in the night, leaving the sick and wounded in the hands of the Americans.

**Capture of Washington.** — The most humiliating event of the war was the capture of the city of Washington by the British. For this disgrace our government was blamable. It knew the danger in ample time to prepare, but did not do so. Admiral Cockburn (cō-burn) sailed up the Chesapeake, in August, with five thousand soldiers, who landed forty miles from Washington and marched toward the city under General Ross. General Winder tried to stop him at Bladensburg, but the militia under him fled. Commodore Barney, with a few sailors and several pieces of artillery, fought with superb valor in defending the bridge which led to Bladensburg. Not until six hundred of his marines had been killed and wounded, himself disabled, and the fight had continued an hour, did Barney surrender. Ross was so filled with admiration of the officer that he paroled him on the spot.

General Ross entered Washington with eight hundred men on

the evening of August 24. He offered to spare the city for a large ransom, but there was no one present with authority to make the bargain. So it was fired. In the conflagration that followed, the President's house, the offices of the several departments, the libraries and public archives, numerous private dwellings, the navy yard and its contents, a frigate on the stocks, and several smaller vessels were destroyed. The only public property spared was the jail and patent office. Nothing could restore the losses suffered, for which there was no palliation on the part of the British, whose vandalism was condemned by many of their own countrymen.

**Defeat of the Enemy.** — Flushed with his success, Ross declared his intention of making Baltimore his headquarters. On the 12th of September, he landed with eight thousand troops at North Point, fourteen miles from the city. While advancing, he was shot dead by an American sharp-shooter. The British fleet ascended the Patapsco and bombarded Forts McHenry and Covington, and on the night of the 13th attempted to storm the works, but were repulsed.

Among the spectators of the bombardment was Francis S. Key, who had gone on board one of the ships to arrange an exchange of prisoners. Anxiously peering in the direction of the fort, at the earliest streaking of day, he was thrilled by the sight of the Stars and Stripes floating above the battlements. The sight inspired him to write our national song, "The Star-Spangled Banner."

**Treaty of Peace signed.** — A treaty of peace was signed at Ghent, December 24, 1814. It left matters precisely as before. Not a word referred to the impressment of seamen, which was the cause of the quarrel; but the tacit understanding was that it would never be revived, and it never has been. There were no ocean telegraphs or swift steamers in those days to bring the tidings to America, and in the meantime occurred the most brilliant land victory of the whole war.

**Military Movements in the Southwest.** — General Jackson was engaged in Florida in chastising the Indians and the British,



when news reached him that the British intended to attack New Orleans, and he was begged to go to its help. He lost no time in doing so and hurriedly prepared to defend the city. Several brisk skirmishes took place, when Jackson withdrew behind his intrenchments. These at first were composed of cotton bales, but they were so readily fired by the hot shot that they were removed. His defences consisted mainly of a wall of earth five feet high and a ditch of water.

**The Victory at New Orleans.** — On the 8th of January, General Pakenham, at the head of twelve thousand veterans, advanced against General Jackson. Three thousand Kentucky and Tennessee riflemen, the finest marksmen in the world, coolly awaited behind their intrenchments the approach of this magnificent body of men. At close range, the Americans opened with a fire so deadly that the lines were thrown into confusion and the ground strewn with dead and dying. General Pakenham, while trying to rally his troops, was killed. A few minutes later, the second in command was mortally wounded, and then the third officer was disabled by one of the unerring riflemen. It was impossible to hold even such veterans to their work under so murderous a fire. They retreated to their encampment, and ten days later withdrew to their ships. In this memorable battle, still celebrated through the country, only seven Americans were killed and six wounded, while that of the British in killed, wounded, and captured was twenty-six hundred, of whom nearly one-third were killed. Shortly afterward news reached this country of the signing of the treaty of peace.

**The War on the Ocean.** — The war, which at first was most vigorously contested upon the ocean, became more decisive as it progressed between the land forces. Still the little navy was not idle. On the 16th of January, 1815, the American frigate *President* was captured by the British ship *Endymion* (en-dee'me-on). On the 20th of February, Captain (afterward Admiral) Charles Stewart, while cruising off Cape St. Vincent in the *Constitution*, which had long before won the reputation of a

“lucky ship,” fought the *Cyane* (sī'ane), of thirty-six guns, and the *Levant* (le-vant'), of eighteen. Stewart's fine seamanship enabled him to outmanœuvre the enemy's vessels, and in the brief engagement, which was fought by moonlight, he captured both. In the following month, the *Hornet* took the British brig *Penguin* off the coast of Brazil. This ended all fighting (let us hope forever) between Great Britain and the United States.

**War with Algiers.** — The Barbary States thought it a good time to renew their piratical attacks upon our commerce. Decatur, being now released from his enforced idleness by the blockade at New London, was sent with a fleet to the Mediterranean to bring the dey to his senses. He captured the most important vessel of the Algerine navy, stopped at Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli, compelled the release of all the prisoners, enforced payment for the damages we had received and the relinquishment of the claims to tribute. Since then we have had no trouble with the Barbary States.

**Cost of the War.** — The war of 1812 was a fearfully dear one for us. We lost more than eighteen thousand sailors, sixteen hundred and eighty-three vessels, and piled up a debt of a hundred million dollars. Trade and commerce were ruined, there was no specie, the banks had lost their credit, the factories of New England were idle, and the shipping was rotting at the wharves. Within twenty-four hours of the arrival of news of peace, these shipyards rang with the sounds of saw and hammer.

**Presidential Election of 1816.** — The war left little of the Federal party. Its presidential candidate, Rufus King, carried only the vote of New Hampshire in the election of 1816. James Monroe, the candidate of the Democrats, was elected President and Daniel Tompkins of New York Vice President.

On December 11, 1816, Indiana was admitted into the Union. Its name means “land of the Indians.” Some French Canadians, descending the Wabash in 1702, established several posts, Vincennes being among them. It was ceded to England in 1763, little being known of its history previous to that date.



THE CYANE AND THE LEVANT



**TOPICS.** — The theory of our government as to naturalization ; the English theory ; the extent to which Great Britain pressed its so-called “right of search” ; the affair between the *Little Belt* and the *President* ; the trouble with the Indians ; the battle of Tippecanoe ; admission of Louisiana ; declaration of war against Great Britain ; how the war was regarded in different quarters ; the commander-in-chief ; General Hull’s surrender ; his court-martial ; the massacre at Fort Dearborn ; the battle of Queenstown Heights ; discreditable conduct of the American militia ; general failure of the land operations ; the *Constitution* and the *Guerriere* ; the *United States* and the *Macedonian* ; the capture of the *Java* ; the *Wasp* and the *Frolic*.

Re-election of Madison ; the plan of the campaign for 1813 ; the capture of York, Canada ; the attack on Sackett’s harbor ; failure of the army of the North ; defeat and capture of General Wilkinson ; siege of Fort Meigs ; gallant defence of Fort Stephenson ; desultory fighting ; the *Hornet* and the *Peacock* ; the battle between the *Chesapeake* and the *Shannon* ; blockading of Decatur at New London ; other naval exploits ; Perry’s great victory on Lake Erie ; important results of the victory ; the battle of the Thames ; the massacre at Fort Mimms ; defeat of the Indians in the Southwest ; how Great Britain strengthened her forces in this country ; the fight at Chippewa ; the battle of Lundy’s Lane ; the great land and naval victory near Plattsburg ; fierceness of the battle ; capture of the city of Washington ; vandalism by the enemy ; death of Ross and defeat of his forces ; how the song “The Star-Spangled Banner” came to be written ; signing of the treaty of peace ; its nature ; General Jackson’s great victory at New Orleans ; the war on the ocean ; capture of the *Cyane* and the *Levant* ; the war with Algiers ; cost of the war ; the presidential election of 1816 ; admission of Indiana.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Henry Dearborn**, born in 1751, was a captain at Bunker Hill and fought bravely at Saratoga and Monmouth. He was in congress from 1793 to 1797, having been made a major general in 1795. He served as secretary of war through both of Jefferson’s terms and was minister to Portugal from 1822 to 1824. He died in 1829.

**Isaac Hull** was born in Connecticut in 1773 and after serving in the merchant marine was commissioned as lieutenant in the navy in 1798. During the war with Tripoli, he commanded the *Argus*, and after the close of the war was made captain and given command of the *Constitution*, the most famous vessel of the old navy. He showed brilliant seamanship in 1812, when he escaped from a superior force of the enemy. His victory over the *Guerriere* was the most notable one of the war of 1812. He and Dacres, commander of the *Guerriere*, were old friends, who had made a wager of a new hat on the result of a battle, should they ever meet. As the defeated officer came up the side of the *Constitution*, Hull extended his hand and said : “Dacres, I’ll thank

you for that hat." Hull afterward served on the Pacific and Mediterranean squadrons and was a naval commissioner. He died in 1843.

**Wade Hampton**, born in South Carolina in 1754, represented that State in congress from 1795 to 1797 and from 1803 to 1805. He was very wealthy, owning three thousand slaves. His services in the war of 1812 were not of a brilliant nature. His father, of the same name, was a major general in the Revolution, he was a major general, and his son, also of the same name, was a major general in the service of the Southern Confederacy.

**Zebulon M. Pike** was born in 1779 and did much service as an explorer. In 1805, he traced the Mississippi to its source and afterwards was engaged in geographical explorations in Louisiana Territory. Pike's Peak of the Rocky Mountains was discovered by him and named in his honor. He was made adjutant and inspector general in 1813, and met his death in the expedition against York, Upper Canada.

**Jacob Brown**, born in 1775, was one of the best officers developed by the war of 1812. We have learned of his brilliant services, which caused him to be made a major general in 1813. His great ability led to his appointment as general-in-chief of the army in 1821 and he held the office until his death in 1828.

**James Wilkinson**, born in 1757, was active during the Revolution, filling the offices of adjutant general, brigadier general, and secretary of the board of war. He had command of the right wing, under Wayne, at the battle of the Fallen Timbers in 1794. He became general of the army in 1796 and was governor of Louisiana Territory 1805-1806. He was engaged with Aaron Burr in his treasonable intrigues and, in 1811, was court-martialled. Though acquitted, every one was convinced of his guilt. His course in the war of 1812 was so discreditable that he was dismissed from the army in 1815. He died in 1825.

**Oliver Hazard Perry** was born in Rhode Island in 1785, became a midshipman in the navy at the age of fourteen, and took part in the war with Tripoli. His great victory on Lake Erie made him famous. Although a commodore at that time, yet when made a captain the change, in accordance with the rule prevailing, was a promotion. He helped in the defence of Baltimore, and while serving in the West Indies in 1819 was stricken with yellow fever and died.

**Tecumseh**, born about 1765, among the Shawnees, was a triplet and became the greatest American Indian that ever lived. One of his brothers was known as The Prophet, and assisted in organizing the Western Indians into a confederacy against the settlers. Little is known of his third brother. Tecumseh was chivalrous and did not permit his warriors to torture their prisoners. Once he came upon a number of them thus engaged, with the British general, Proc-

tor, looking on. Tecumseh hurled the Indians to one side, and, turning indignantly to the officer, demanded why he permitted the outrage. "Your warriors cannot be restrained," was the reply of Proctor. "You are not fit to command," exclaimed Tecumseh; "go home and put on petticoats!" He drew a map of the country on the inside of a piece of bark, which the British engineers declared was as good as anything that they had ever done on paper. His knowledge of fighting and strategy equalled that of any of the English officers and well earned for him the appointment of brigadier general, which he received. Personally he was one of the bravest of men, while as a natural orator he was never surpassed; no one could resist his eloquence. The honor in which this extraordinary chief is held is shown by the number of places and persons who bear his name. The late general of the army (W. T. Sherman) was only one of many who was proud to bear the name of Tecumseh, leader of the Shawnees.

**James Monroe**, fifth President, was born in Westmoreland county, Virginia, April 28, 1758, and educated at William and Mary College. He was a lieutenant at the battle of Trenton, when little more than eighteen years old. He distinguished himself also at Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. He studied law under Jefferson, and when but twenty-five years old was elected as a delegate to the continental congress. His course while minister plenipotentiary offended the administration and he was recalled in 1794. He was governor of Virginia from 1799 to 1802, and was sent by Jefferson to negotiate the purchase of Louisiana. He was re-elected governor in 1811 and in the same year was appointed secretary of state by Madison. There being no money in the treasury to provide for the defence of New Orleans, Monroe pledged his private means for that purpose. Monroe was a man of integrity, without brilliant genius. He was of tall stature, well formed, with blue eyes and light complexion. He possessed the confidence of the people, and became President at a most fortunate period for him, since the development of our country during his administrations far surpassed that during any preceding presidential period.



## CHAPTER XXIV

MONROE'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1817-1825

The  
First  
Ocean  
Steamer



**IMPROVEMENTS and Prosperity.** — We have learned of the depression that prevailed through the whole country at the close of the war of 1812. With the administrations of Monroe, however, came a dawn and fullness of prosperity unequalled in our previous history. The cutting off of the importation of foreign goods led to the establishment of many manufactories and gave a vigorous impulse to business. But the competition of cheaper foreign goods prevented the full success of such enterprises until congress taxed the articles brought across the Atlantic. This, of course, increased their price and gave the home manufacturers a means of securing profits. The value of native goods in 1810 was one hundred and seventy million dollars, and four years later it was two hundred million dollars. Henry Clay made a speech in congress during the former year in favor of protection, as it was called, during which he proudly called attention to the fact that his neat dress was the production of his own family. Considerable legislation followed, and still continues, in favor of or opposed to protection, which question has always maintained an importance in our national politics.

The administration of Monroe has sometimes been called the Golden Age of our history. Numerous colleges and institutions of learning had been established. Among them were : the University of Georgia, 1801; Washington College of Pennsylvania,

1802; Ohio University, 1804; University of South Carolina, 1806; Hamilton College, New York, 1812; University of Virginia, 1819; Madison University, New York, and Colby University, Maine, in 1820. Mrs. Emma Willard founded a school for the education of women in 1821, in Troy, New York, which was highly successful. Five students of Williams College, in a prayer meeting became impressed with the duty of sending the gospel to the heathen. As a result, the first foreign missionary society in this country was soon after organized. The American Bible Society had its birth in 1816. The first savings bank was formed



JAMES MONROE

the same year in Philadelphia, many others soon following. In 1815, Benjamin Lundy founded the Union Humane Society, an anti-slavery association, and later started a newspaper called *The Genius of Universal Emancipation*. This was the beginning of the abolition agitation, which continued until the great civil war.

The first steamer to cross the Atlantic was the *Savannah* in 1819. She was of three hundred and fifty tons' burden and depended largely on her sails, but the event marked an era in navigation. When the States had increased to fifteen, the stripes, as well as the stars, on our flag were increased to the same number. That form was used during the war of 1812 (none being added for Ohio and Louisiana), but on April 4, 1818, congress decided that instead of a new stripe, an additional star should be added on the 4th of July following the admission of every new State. The first flag of that pattern was hoisted over the Hall of Representatives in Washington, on April 13th of that year.

**The First Seminole War.**—Trouble arose with the mongrel population of Florida, consisting mainly of Seminole Indians, many of whom had intermarried with runaway slaves. They were vicious, and, having committed many atrocities, General

Jackson was sent against them with twenty-five hundred men. He destroyed their villages and, entering Florida, then held by Spain, took possession of Pensacola. Robert C. Ambrister, formerly an officer in the British army, and a Scotchman, Alexander Arbuthnot, an Indian trader, having been active in inciting the Indians to hostilities, were subjected to trial by court-martial. Ambrister was ordered to receive fifty lashes and a year's imprisonment, and Arbuthnot to be hanged. General Jackson hanged them both.

This high-handed proceeding caused intense resentment in England, and came very near bringing on another war. A committee of congress was obliged to bring in a report, censuring General Jackson, for he had clearly violated the Constitution in more than one respect, but his course increased his popularity among his countrymen. After considerable debate over the report, congress passed a resolution acquitting Jackson of blame. In February, 1819, a treaty was concluded with Spain, by which Florida was ceded to the United States on the payment of five million dollars. The formal transfer, however, did not take place until 1821.

**Admission of New States.** — Mississippi was admitted into the Union December 10, 1817. The name is a Natchez word, signifying "father of waters." It was first settled by the French in 1716, and in 1763 became a part of Georgia at the time of its cession to Great Britain, and was organized into a Territory in 1798.

With the admission of Illinois, December 3, 1818, it may be said the Union became of age, for the number of states was increased to twenty-one. The name "Illinois" is supposed to be derived from an Indian word signifying a superior race of men. It was first settled by the French at Kaskaskia, in 1682, and was one of the possessions ceded to Great Britain in 1763. For twenty years after the admission of Illinois the wolves howled on the present site of Chicago. Fort Dearborn was rebuilt in 1816, but for a long time was only a trading-post.



Alabama was admitted December 14, 1819. Its name is a Creek word, signifying "land of rest." The first settlement was made, in 1702, by Frenchmen under Bienville, who built a fort on Mobile Bay. On its cession to the United States, Alabama was first incorporated with Georgia and afterward with the Mississippi Territory.

Maine was admitted to the Union on March 15, 1820. It received its name from a province in France, and was so called as a compliment to Henrietta, queen of Charles I, who was the owner of the province. The principal facts connected with the early history of the State have been given.

**Re-election of Monroe.** — It was a strong evidence of the era of good feeling that in the fall of 1820 Monroe and Tompkins were re-elected by the vote of every State in the Union. There was not an electoral vote against Monroe, but Blumer of New Hampshire, with the consent of his associates, voted for Adams, in order, as he explained, that the honor of a unanimous election should be shared by no President with Washington. The Federal party no longer existed. Two measures added to the popularity of the administration. One was the passage of an act pensioning all surviving soldiers of the Revolution, the provisions being afterward extended so as to benefit the widows and children. The other was a treaty with Great Britain, by which American citizens were given the right to share with English subjects in the fisheries of Newfoundland.

**The Missouri Compromise.** — All was not pleasant, however, through the two terms of Monroe. In March, 1818, Missouri applied for admission to the Union. It was too late in the session to act upon the petition, but at the next session a bill was introduced, excluding slavery from the State whenever it should be admitted. A discussion followed of so bitter a nature that many foresaw the inevitable civil war which convulsed the nation less than half a century later, for only by the sword could the terrible question be settled for all time. The end of the quarrel was the adoption of the Missouri Compromise, which per-

mitted slavery in Missouri, but forever excluded it from all parts north and west of parallel  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , the main southern boundary of Missouri.

Missouri was admitted August 10, 1821. The name means "muddy waters." It was first settled and the rich lead mines worked in 1720, and it was a part of the Louisiana purchase from France in 1803.

**The Monroe Doctrine.** — Many of the South American countries had long been held as provinces of European monarchies, but at about the date of the Missouri Compromise, they declared their independence and began fighting for it. We could not help sympathizing with them. In March, 1822, congress passed a bill recognizing the struggling republics as sovereign nations. The following year, the President in his message asserted that for the future the American continent was not to be considered territory for colonization by any European power. Thus North and South America were consecrated to free institutions by what has ever since been known as the "Monroe Doctrine."

**Visit of Lafayette.** — Lafayette, for whom the whole American people held the strongest veneration, because of his sacrifices and services during the Revolution, and because, too, of his intimate friendship with Washington, landed in New York in August, 1824. From the moment he stepped ashore until he departed in the frigate *Brandywine*, named in his honor, he was the guest of the country. He was fêted everywhere, and congress expressed only the general feeling when it voted him a present of two hundred thousand dollars and a township of land. He paid an affecting visit to the tomb of Washington, during which he was overcome with emotion. He laid the corner stone of Bunker Hill monument on the fiftieth anniversary of the battle.

**A Financial Crisis.** — The first financial crisis of the country came in 1819. The reorganization of the Bank for the United States two years before gave so many facilities for credit that much wild speculation took place. The branch bank in Baltimore was swindled by a number of rogues, among whom were the

bank officers. They drew more than two million dollars from the bank beyond its securities. Prompt action upon the part of the President exposed the stealing, stopped the limitless credits, and the business of the country was soon restored to a sound basis, but the Bank of the United States itself barely escaped bankruptcy.

**The Presidential Election of 1824.** — There were plenty of presidential candidates in 1824. They included: John Quincy Adams, son of John Adams, General Andrew Jackson, William H. Crawford, and Henry Clay. Jackson received the most votes, but none of the four had enough to elect him. This threw the election into the house of representatives, which declared John Quincy Adams President and John C. Calhoun Vice President.

**TOPICS.** — The era of prosperity; the causes of such prosperity; protection; some of the institutions of learning that were founded; the American Bible Society; the Union Humane Society; the steamer *Savannah*; the changes made in the pattern of our flag; the law regarding the addition of new stars; the first Seminole war; arbitrary action of General Jackson; the acquisition of Florida; the admission of Mississippi; its early history; the admission of Illinois; its early history; the admission of Alabama; its early history; the admission of Maine; the re-election of Monroe; the two measures which added popularity to his administrations; the quarrel over the admission of Missouri; its early history; the Missouri Compromise; the Monroe Doctrine; visit of Lafayette; the financial crisis of 1819; its causes; the presidential election of 1824.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.** — John Quincy Adams, sixth President, was the son of the second President and was born in Braintree, Massachusetts, July 11, 1767. He showed great talents from early boyhood and received the best of training from his parents. After studying some years abroad, he entered the junior class at Harvard and was graduated in 1788. After his admission to the bar, Washington made him minister to The Hague, and later to Portugal. When the father became President, he transferred his son to Berlin. He was elected United States senator by the Federalists in 1803, and in 1809 he was appointed minister to Russia. He was the leading commissioner at the treaty of Ghent, which ended the war of 1812, and was Monroe's secretary of state throughout both his terms. He was the real author of the Monroe Doctrine. He served in congress as an independent member for the Quincy district in Massachusetts, from 1831 to 1848. He was stricken with apoplexy while in his seat and died February 23d, of that year.



## CHAPTER XXV

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1825-1829



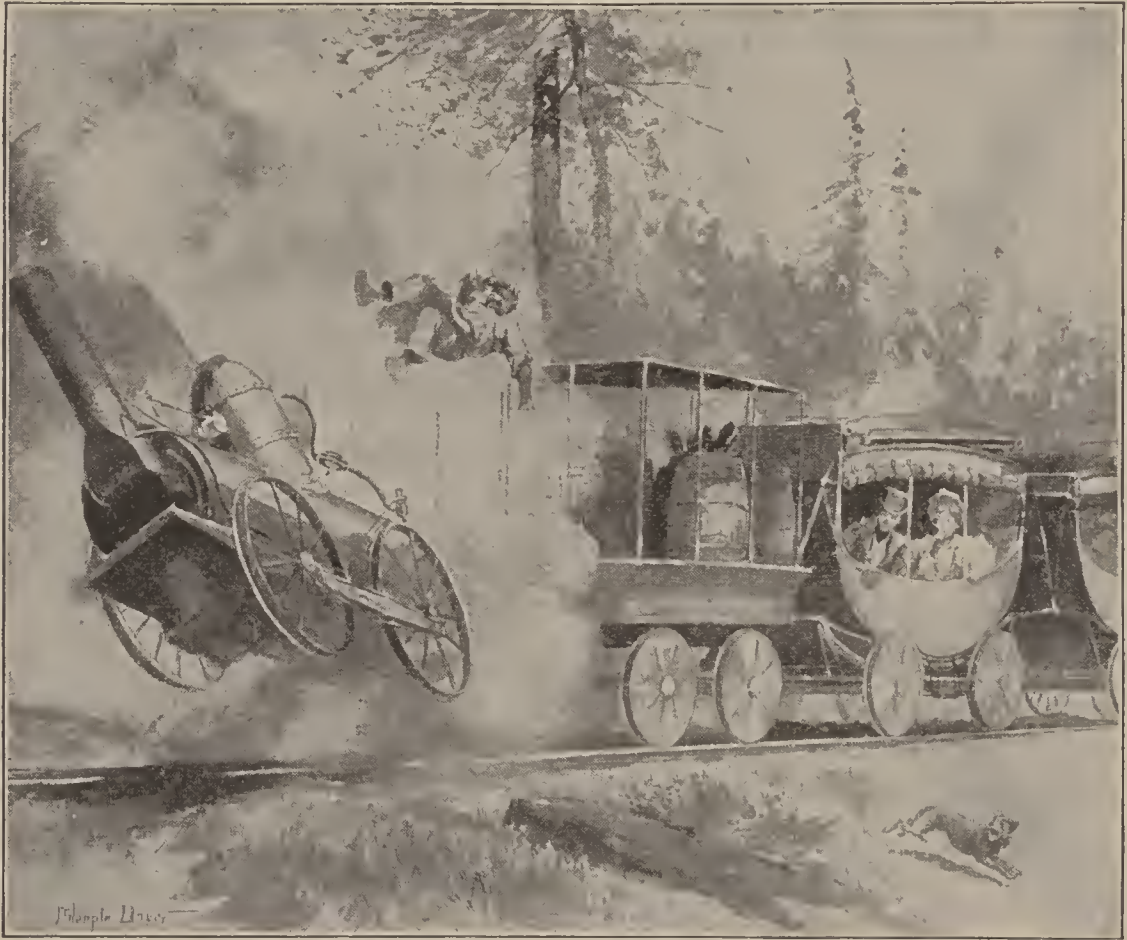
**GRAND Work.** — The Erie Canal, one of the grandest of internal improvements, was completed during the administration of the younger Adams. It was eight years in building and cost ten million dollars. Governor Clinton turned up the first spadeful of earth at Rome, July 4, 1817, and it was formally opened on the 26th of October by impressive ceremonies. It greatly aided in

the settlement and development of the Empire State and added millions to its wealth.

**The First Railroad in the United States.** — The first railway in this country was laid, in 1826, in one of the granite quarries at Quincy, Massachusetts. It was only three miles in length and was operated by horse power. Later in the same year a similar road, nine miles long, was in operation from the coal mines of Mauch Chunk, Pennsylvania, to the Lehigh River. The first steam locomotive was put in service on the Delaware and Hudson Railroad in August, 1829. The first locomotive to run regularly on a railroad in the United States made its trial trip in November, 1830, on the South Carolina Railroad, which connected Charleston and Hamburg, and was one hundred and thirty-six miles in length. Two months later the negro fireman, in order to save himself work, tied down the safety valve. An explosion followed, which killed the fireman and badly injured the engineer. This locomotive, like its successors, was a

primitive affair, but they rapidly improved, until the whole country is girdled by railway lines, and the improvements in rolling stock, speed, construction, and service have been almost beyond comprehension.

**The Tariff Question.** — President Adams was met with bitter opposition in both houses from the first. The friends of Jackson



FIRST LOCOMOTIVE EXPLOSION

were largely in the majority and defeated almost every recommendation he made. The administration favored what had become known as the "American system," regarding the tariff. This meant a protection of home industries by the imposition of a tax on foreign goods. Naturally it was acceptable to the North and East, which were largely engaged in manufactures. On the other hand, it was obnoxious to the South, which had few manufactures, being employed in agricultural pursuits. The South

found one of the tariff acts so oppressive that it was called the "Bill of Abominations." Its enactment caused great resentment, especially in South Carolina. Public meetings were held all over the State, at which the law was denounced. Nullification was threatened, and, while the majority hesitated to take the step, the sentiment in favor of it was so strong that it needed only a leader to give it form and expression. That leader soon appeared in the person of John C. Calhoun, the Vice President.



JOHN QUINCY ADAMS

**Presidential Election of 1828.** — The presidential contest of 1828 was bitter. The friends of Jackson were active, many of them being office holders under Adams, who refused to remove them for that cause.

By this time the former Republicans had come to be known as Democrats, the name which still attaches to them. Their opponents for the time were National Republicans. In the electoral college, Adams received eighty-three votes to one hundred and seventy-eight cast for Jackson.

**TOPICS.** — Brief history of the Erie Canal; the first railway in this country; the second; the first steam locomotive; the tariff question; why protection was favored in the North and East and opposed in the South; the opposition of South Carolina; the presidential election of 1828.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.** — **Andrew Jackson**, seventh President, will always be one of the most striking figures in American history. He was born of Scotch-Irish parents, at Waxhaw Settlement, on the border between North and South Carolina, March 15, 1767. Jackson always believed that his birthplace was in South Carolina, but later investigations prove that it was further north, in Union county, North Carolina.

His parents were very poor and the son received scant education. His father died a few days before the birth of Andrew, who, when only thirteen years old, took part in the Revolutionary battle of Hanging Rock. His eldest brother was killed while fighting for his country, and the other brother died of a hurt, inflicted, it is said, by a British officer, because the lad refused to do menial duty for him. Andrew was also grievously injured by a brutal blow



for the same cause, but he sturdily refused to act the part of servant. He caught the smallpox and was abandoned to die, but his mother secured his release, and through her nursing he recovered. When the Revolution ended, he had not a single living relative. Jackson took up the study of law, and when twenty-one years old removed to Nashville, Tennessee. The Indian outrages made a soldier of him. His achievements against the red men led them to name him "Pointed Arrow" and "Sharp Knife." In 1796, he was a member of the house of representatives from Tennessee, and the next year

was elected to the senate.

He resigned at the end of a year, during which he never made a speech or cast a vote. He had been appointed a judge of the supreme court and a major general of militia. The prominent part which he took in the war of 1812 gave him the name of "Old Hickory," and made him the idol of the American people. Jackson was a man of iron resolution, dauntless courage, incorruptible honesty, and intense patriotism. He was loyal to his friends and hated his enemies. He feared no one man, and no thousand men. He fought several duels. With one



ANDREW JACKSON AS A BOY

arm in a sling, he rode in front of his mutinous soldiers during his campaign against the Creek Indians, and declared he would shoot the first man who refused to obey his orders. None dared to defy him. He lived on acorns and divided them with his soldiers but still pressed on and destroyed the Indian confederation. He was tall in person, erect and spare, with dark blue eyes, projecting eyebrows, and a fiery temper. With his aggressive roughness Jackson was a devoted husband and a model of personal purity. After his stormy career, he retired to his home, the Hermitage, in Tennessee, and in his later days he became a devout Christian. He passed away June 8, 1845, having proved himself one of the greatest of Americans and of our Presidents.

## CHAPTER XXVI

JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1829-1837



Harvard College in 1836

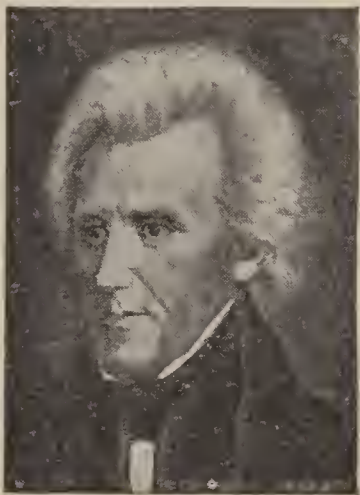
**JACKSON'S Policy** — “To the Victors belong the Spoils.” — As was expected, President Jackson made up a cabinet of his own friends. He believed that to achieve success an administration must be wholly composed of those of the same political faith. William L. Marcy of New York, a Democratic senator, was the first man to proclaim the doctrine “to the victors belong the spoils,” and President Jackson was an enthusiastic champion of the same, as he speedily proved by his action.

The total number of removals from office by all his predecessors was seventy-four, and out of that number five were defaulters. Within one year after inauguration, President Jackson removed two thousand office holders. There were no blows too hard for him to strike against his enemies, and no man would do more to help a friend, provided that friend showed himself worthy. The first taint of dishonesty, of disloyalty, or any attempt to defeat the purpose of the President changed him on the instant into an unrelenting enemy.

**President Jackson and the United States Bank.** — It was not long before President Jackson developed an intense hostility to the great moneyed corporation known as the United States Bank. He believed it to be an unhealthy stimulus to business, a promoter of speculation, extravagance, and corruption, and did not hesitate to declare his doubts of its solvency. He advised the

removal of the deposits of public money. Such removal required the order of the secretary of the treasury. He refused, and Jackson removed *him*. Roger B. Taney, afterward chief justice of the United States, succeeded to the secretaryship of the treasury and made the removal. The new charter, granted in 1832, was vetoed by the President, and congress sustained his action. Jackson's course increased his popularity, and, in the presidential election of 1832, he received two hundred and nineteen electoral votes out of a total of two hundred and eighty-six.

**Whigs and Democrats.** — During Jackson's first term, the political factions of the country crystallized into the Whig and Democratic parties, the leaders of the former being Daniel Webster and Henry Clay.



ANDREW JACKSON

**Nullification in South Carolina.** — There was great opposition in South Carolina to the tariff measures of congress. An act was passed in the spring of 1832, imposing additional duties on imported goods. It set South Carolina aflame. The governor presided over a convention in that State in November, which declared the tariff acts unconstitutional, and therefore null and void; that the duty should not be paid,

and that any attempt on the part of the government to collect it would be resisted by arms, and cause the secession of South Carolina from the Union and its erection into an independent government. The State legislature endorsed these resolutions, and the South Carolinians prepared for war.

President Jackson was not scared. He declared that the Union should be maintained at all hazards, and threatened to hang Calhoun. Calhoun resigned and became a United States senator. Jackson believed in State sovereignty, but nothing could shake his devotion to the Union. He issued a proclamation on December 10th, in which he denied the right of any State to nullify an act of congress, and warned South Carolina that, if



necessary, the military power would enforce the laws. At the same time he exhorted his countrymen not to take the mad step to which their leaders were urging them.

His appeal produced no effect. The war preparations continued. General Scott was summoned to Washington, and it was decided to throw a strong garrison into Fort Moultrie, Castle Pinckney, and the arsenal at Augusta, Georgia. The sloop-of-war *Natchez* and several revenue cutters were ordered to Charleston harbor. General Scott, with great tact and discretion, kept up the most friendly relations with the citizens. Meanwhile other States condemned the course of South Carolina. Among her people, too, sprang up a goodly number of supporters of the President's proclamation.

Henry Clay brought tranquillity by the preparation of a compromise which Senator Calhoun supported. It provided for a gradual reduction of duties until June 30, 1842, when they were to sink to a general level of twenty per cent. This gave the manufacturers time to prepare for the change, with the certainty of relief at no distant day for the non-manufacturing States.

**Trouble with France.** — France owed our country five million dollars for injuries inflicted upon our commerce during Napoleon's wars. She put off payment until President Jackson lost his little stock of patience. He ordered our minister to withdraw from the French court, and recommended the congress of 1834-1835 to authorize reprisals. France resented this vigorous action, but paid the money. Other similar bills against Spain, Denmark, Portugal, and Naples were also soon settled.

**The Second Seminole War.** — War broke out with the Seminoles of Florida. A treaty had been made with them, by which they agreed to move to the west of the Mississippi, but the majority insisted that the chiefs who signed the treaty were not authorized to do so and refused to go. Osceola, of mixed breed, was the leader of the malcontents, and at a conference with the military officers he showed his anger by striking the treaty with such violence that he drove his knife through the paper and the top of

the table on which it was resting. In 1835, a series of attacks was begun on the settlers. General Wiley Thompson was sent thither to enforce their removal. Osceola was so defiant that he was put in irons. He pretended submission and promised to sign the treaty. Upon being released he did so, but he deceived the officer. He was filled with fury, and his warriors spread



OSCEOLA'S DEFIANCE

death and desolation among the settlements. On December 28, 1835, while General Thompson was dining with a lot of friends, Osceola and a party fired a volley through the windows, which killed Thompson and four of his officers. The Indians escaped unharmed, although within two hundred yards of Fort King.

On the same day, Major Dade was ambushed with one hundred men near Wahoo Swamp, while marching to the relief of the fort. Every one of the command was killed excepting two, and they

afterward died of their wounds. The war broke out and raged with greater fierceness for years. The vast swamps of the Floridas offered secure hiding-places for the mongrel hostiles, who concealed their families with such astonishing skill that the most experienced hunters and scouts found it impossible to trace them.

General Scott, in 1836, pushed operations vigorously, but without success. General Zachary Taylor succeeded to the command in May, 1837, and tried to use bloodhounds in tracing the Indians; but the dogs had been trained to hunt negroes in Cuba and refused to follow the trail of a red man. On the 21st of October, Osceola was made prisoner, contrary to the laws of nations, under a flag of truce, sent to Charleston, and confined in Fort Moultrie, where he died in 1838. The war dragged along until 1842, when General William J. Worth succeeded in bringing it to a close.

**Admission of New States.** — Arkansas (ark'an-saw) was admitted to the Union June 15, 1836. Several interpretations have been given to the word "Arkansas." The best is that it signifies "smoky waters," the French prefix "ark" meaning bow. It was settled by the French as early as 1685, and remained French territory until 1803, when Louisiana, of which it was a portion, was purchased by the United States. In 1812, it became a part of Missouri Territory, and in 1819 was erected into Arkansas Territory, then including what is now Indian Territory.

Michigan was admitted January 26, 1837. The name is from an Indian word meaning "great lake." The first settlement was made in 1668, at St. Mary's Falls, in the upper peninsula. Detroit was founded in 1701. Michigan formed a part of the Northwestern Territory, and afterward of the Territory of Indiana, but was set off by itself in 1805.

**Great Prosperity and Many Changes.** — A wonderful prosperity attended both terms of President Jackson. When we speak of the "old times" and the "new times," we naturally think of the change as gradual, but it took place almost wholly during his ad-



ministrations. It was due mainly to the introduction of the locomotive, which made travelling easy, so that the people mingled with one another, and thought and action were stirred into new life. When President Jackson was inaugurated, the old times prevailed; when he went out of office, the new or modern times had come.

The railway system began after the election of Jackson. Before he retired, there were fifteen hundred miles in operation, and in a short time all the leading cities were connected by railroad. It opened up new sections, made the transfer of crops easy, and changed the whole life of the people.

Anthracite coal was tested in 1836 and found to answer perfectly on steamboats and railroads. In the same year the screw propeller took the place of the side-wheel ocean steamer. Although the first steamer crossed the Atlantic in 1819, ocean navigation was not successful until 1838. The revolving pistol was patented in 1835. Soon afterward, reaping machines came into use. It was about this time that the clumsy flint and steel gave way to the friction match.

The Western States were fairly started on their amazing growth. Steamboats ploughed the Mississippi and its tributaries, as well as the Great Lakes, and new towns and cities sprang into life, where until then was only the untrodden wilderness. In 1833, the first steamboat appeared at Fort Dearborn, the present site of the imperial city of Chicago.

The East was as prosperous as the West. In 1835, New York was desolated by a twenty million dollar fire, but quickly recovered, and in the same year the construction of the Croton Aqueduct was begun. The population of the country in 1830 was four times as great as in 1790, and the seventy-five post-offices had increased to 8450. The receipts of the government from the sales of Western lands rose from one million dollars to twenty-five million dollars annually.

In 1835 the entire national debt was paid. The government found itself in the possession of a surplus which was divided



FLINT AND STEEL

among the States. But they, too, were prosperous and borrowed and spent money lavishly, thereby encouraging immigration and settlement. Crops were abundant, manufactures increasing, and banks expanding. It looked indeed as if the financial millenium had come, when all were to be rich, prosperous, and happy.

**Presidential Election of 1836.** — The presidential election was in the nature of an endorsement of Jackson's policy. Martin Van Buren, his candidate, was chosen as his successor by a vote of one hundred and seventy out of a total of two hundred and ninety-four. The Whigs, unable to combine, put forward four candidates, of whom William Henry Harrison received the largest number of votes — seventy-three. No candidate for the Vice Presidency having been given a majority in the electoral college, the senate elected Colonel Richard M. Johnson of Kentucky to that office.

**TOPICS.**—The meaning of the expression “To the victors belong the spoils”; what President Jackson did to prove his belief in the policy; why he opposed the United States Bank; his action with respect to it; his re-election; Whigs and Democrats; cause of the nullification movement in South Carolina; Jackson’s patriotic course; the war preparations at Charleston; the end of the trouble; the difficulty with France; cause of the second Seminole war; Osceola; his retaliation upon General Thompson; massacre of Major Dade and his command; the Seminoles in the swamps of Florida; the unlawful capture of Osceola; how the war was finally ended; the admission of Arkansas; its early history; the admission of Michigan; its early history; the wonderful prosperity during Jackson’s two terms; the “old times” and the “new times”; growth of the railway system; the introduction of anthracite coal; the screw propeller; ocean navigation; the revolving pistol; the reaping machine; friction matches; the growth of the Western States; the first steamboat at Fort Dearborn; prosperity in the East; the great New York fire of 1835; the Croton Aqueduct; increase of post-offices; the receipts from the sale of Western lands; the national debt; what was done with the surplus; the prosperity of the States; the apparent financial millennium; the presidential election of 1836.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.**—**Roger B. Taney**, born in 1777, was graduated at Dickinson College, and made his home in Baltimore. In 1804, a man refused to give him a case because he did not believe, from Taney’s appearance, that he would live out the year. He died just sixty years later. He was an able lawyer and politician. He was a fervent Jackson Democrat, and in 1835 the President nominated him as chief justice of the supreme court, his confirmation following in 1836. He rendered many important decisions, the most noted of which was that relating to Dred Scott, of which we shall learn later on.

**John C. Calhoun**, the intense South Carolinian, was born in 1782, near Abbeville in that State. He was a graduate of Yale College and became an unusually able lawyer. He was elected to congress in 1811, and strongly advocated the war with Great Britain. He became secretary of war in 1817, and served through both terms of Monroe. In 1824, he was elected Vice President, serving with John Quincy Adams, and was chosen again, in 1828, with Jackson. He resigned, as we have learned, in 1832, and was immediately elected to the United States senate, where he was the foremost champion of state sovereignty or “State rights,” as it is generally termed. In 1844–1845 he was secretary of state under Tyler, and concluded a treaty of annexation with Texas. He re-entered the senate in 1845, and was the acknowledged leader of the southern Democrats. He died in 1850. Calhoun ranks with Clay and Webster as among the greatest statesmen of the first half of the nineteenth century.



**Henry Clay** was born in the "slashes" of Virginia in 1777. Having studied law, he removed to Kentucky when twenty years old. He served in the legislature of that State and in the United States senate from 1806 to 1807. He soon became the father and champion of the "American system" of internal improvements and tariff protection. His remarkable eloquence and ability brought him many political honors. He served in the United States senate again 1809-1811. He entered the house in 1811, and was chosen speaker until his resignation in 1814, upon his appointment as one of the envoys to negotiate the treaty of Ghent. He came back to the house in 1815 and was elected speaker continuously until 1821. Clay was an ardent advocate of the war of 1812, and brought about, in 1821, the recognition of the South American republics in their struggles against foreign domination. He was again speaker of the house 1823-1825. In 1824, he was a candidate for the presidency, but Adams was finally chosen as President and he appointed Clay his secretary of state. In 1831, he re-entered the senate from Kentucky, and became the leader of the Whig party. He was nominated for the presidency in 1831, but was beaten by Jackson. He retired from the senate in 1843, and for the third time was nominated for the presidency in 1844, and for the third time defeated. He re-entered the senate in 1849 and brought about the great compromise of 1850. He was a brilliant orator, an able debater, an honest man, and a profound statesman. He died in 1852.

**Daniel Webster**, the greatest of all American orators, was born in New Hampshire in 1782. He received his education at Phillips (Exeter) Academy and at Dartmouth, from which he was graduated in 1801. He taught school for a time and was admitted to the bar in 1805, removing in 1807 to Portsmouth. His brilliant ability soon made him a leader at the bar and he was elected to congress in 1813, serving until 1817. He then settled in Boston, where he speedily became the foremost lawyer of the Commonwealth. From 1823 to 1827, he represented Massachusetts in Congress, where his fame increased as one of the very greatest of orators. At the laying of the cornerstone of Bunker Hill monument, in 1825, his oration was one of the most eloquent that ever fell from human lips. The enthralled crowd threatened to carry away the platform on which Webster and the other speakers were sitting. They asked him to appeal to the crowd to stand back. Webster paused in his speech to do so. Those immediately in his front made the effort to comply, but the pressure behind them was too great. "It is impossible, Mr. Webster," they called to him. "Impossible!" he thundered; "you are on Bunker Hill where NOTHING IS IMPOSSIBLE!" And the vast swarm reeled backward, like the surge of the ocean from the rocks on the seashore. In 1827, Webster entered the United States senate and became one of the giants of that body. In 1830, in his reply to Hayne, he won the title of the "Expounder of

the Constitution.” Like Clay, he was disappointed in his greatest ambition — that of becoming President of his country. He came quite near, but never received the nomination. He was secretary of state under Harrison and Tyler, resigning in 1843 and re-entering the senate two years later. He rendered his election to the presidency impossible by his advocacy of Clay’s compromise of 1850. Once more he was secretary of state in 1850–1852, and died in the latter year.

**Martin Van Buren**, eighth President, was born in Kinderhook, New York, December 5, 1782, being the first President not born a subject of Great Britain. He became eminent in his native State as a lawyer and adroit politician, so much so, in fact, that he was often referred to as the “Little Magician.” He served as United States senator 1821–1828, and governor of New York 1828–1829, when he resigned to become secretary of state under Jackson, whom he thus served until 1831, when Jackson nominated him as United States minister to England, but the senate refused to confirm the nomination. He was elected Vice President with Jackson in 1832, and as we have learned became his heir to the presidency. In 1848, he was the Free Soil candidate for the presidency, as a result of which General Taylor secured the election. He died July 24, 1862.

## CHAPTER XXVII

VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1837-1841



**M**ONETARY Panics. — President Jackson sowed the wind, and President Van Buren reaped the whirlwind. While the former was engaged in his fight with the United States Bank, many new banks were formed in the different States. Most of them had little capital with which to redeem the notes they issued. They bought several bushels of cheaply printed bills and sent them broadcast. With this stuff public lands in Western States and Territories were bought at a higher price than others could afford to pay in gold or silver. The lands were sold for good money, and when the bills came back to the banks for redemption, the banks “failed,” and, moving to other sections, repeated their swindling operations, which were termed “wild-cat” banking.

On the 11th of July, 1836, President Jackson sent out his “specie circular,” which compelled the collectors of public revenues to receive only gold and silver in payment. This proved to be an almost mortal injury to business. Wild-cat bank-notes were now worthless in the West, and they poured into the banks for redemption. The banks toppled over like so many tenpins, and when the few honest bankers tried to raise money by selling their lands, nobody wished to buy.

Foreseeing the storm that was about to break, congress, early in 1837, passed a repeal of the specie circular. Jackson could never admit that any man or body of men were right, so long as



their views differed with his. He held back the bill so long that it failed to become a law, and the greatest affliction of "hard times" ever known burst upon the country soon after the inauguration of Van Buren.

During the months of March and April, 1837, the failures in New York and New Orleans amounted to one hundred and fifty million dollars. Within the first three weeks of April, two hundred and fifty houses in New York stopped payment. Eight of the States failed wholly or in part, and the time came when the United States government could not pay its debts. Business confidence seemed to have been destroyed, and industry was at



MARTIN VAN BUREN

a standstill. It was a long time before matters righted themselves, but the country was really wealthy, and, assisted by legislation, trade revived, most of the banks resumed specie payments in 1838, and by and by commercial prosperity was restored.

**The Patriot War.** — A rebellion broke out in Canada in 1837. We sympathized with what was called the "patriot war," since the people were striving for the same thing that was our aim during the

Revolution. This was well enough, but our citizens had no right to give the patriots active assistance. The President issued a proclamation, forbidding their taking any part in the rebellion, and warned them that, if they did so, they would forfeit the protection of their own government.

Nevertheless, a body of American sympathizers took possession of Navy Island in Niagara River, and hired a steamer called the *Caroline* to carry provisions and war material to the insurgents. An attempt was made by a party of British troops to seize the *Caroline* at her moorings at Schlosser. A fight followed, in which twelve of the defenders were killed; but the steamer was set on fire and allowed to drift over the falls. General Wool

was sent to the frontier with a strong force and soon established order.

**Presidential Election of 1840.** — The administration of Van Buren was one of the least satisfactory of our history. It was blamed for the hard times, high prices, and general bankruptcy. In the presidential election of 1840, Van Buren had only sixty votes, while William Henry Harrison and John Tyler, the Whig candidates, received two hundred and thirty-four. It amounted almost to a political revolution.

**TOPICS.** — The cause of the hard times during the administration of President Van Buren; the "specie circular"; how President Jackson defeated its purpose; the failures in New York and New Orleans; the general poverty; cause of the patriot war in Canada; the part taken by volunteers from the United States; the *Carolina*; the presidential election of 1840.

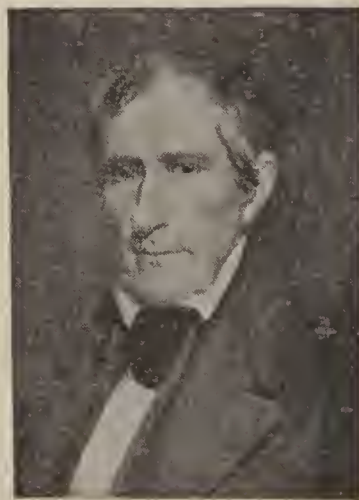
**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTE.** — **William Henry Harrison**, ninth President, was born February 9, 1773, at Berkeley, Virginia. Losing his father at an early age, Robert Morris, the financier of the Revolution, became his guardian. He was the son of Benjamin Harrison, governor of Virginia and a signer of the Declaration of Independence. He was a graduate of Hampden-Sidney College, and took up the study of medicine, but, attracted by military life, he applied for a commission to Washington, who was a friend of his father. He was made a captain in 1795 and was placed in charge of Fort Washington, on the present site of Cincinnati. His bravery and skill led to his rapid promotion. He was made secretary of the Northwestern Territory in 1797 and sent as its first delegate to congress in 1799. He was afterward appointed governor of Indiana Territory. We have learned of his valuable services in the war of 1812. He was a United States senator from 1825 to 1828, being appointed in the latter year minister to the republic of Colombia, in South America.

## CHAPTER XXVIII

HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1841-1845.



**W**HIG Ascendency — Death of President Harrison. — The Whigs had come into power, and President Harrison was inaugurated on the 4th of March, 1841, in the presence of an immense multitude. He was mounted on a white charger and surrounded by officers and soldiers who had served under him in the war of 1812. He stood without a hat or overcoat while delivering his inaugural. Such an exposure probably would not have harmed him in earlier years, but he was now an old man, with diminished vigor. The weather was cold, with snow falling. Then, too, he was driven to distraction by office-seekers, who shook his hand thousands of times, and pestered him without intermission. All this was more than his enfeebled frame could stand. He contracted pneumonia, which was aggravated by his surroundings, and died April 4, just one month after his inauguration, being the first President to die in office. Vice President Tyler, as provided by the Constitution, was sworn in as his successor, taking the oath the second day after Harrison's death.



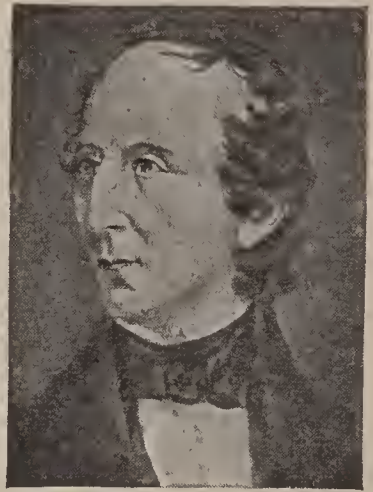
WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON

**The Tenth President.** — John Tyler, like five of his predecessors, was a native of Virginia, where he was born in March 29,



1790. He was graduated at William and Mary College and prepared for the bar. His ability was shown by the fact that he was practising law at the age of nineteen, was a member of the Virginia legislature at twenty-one, governor of the State at thirty-five, United States senator from 1827 to 1836, and President of the United States at the age of fifty-one. He died January 18, 1862.

**President Tyler's Unpopularity.** — It took President Tyler but a brief time to make himself the most unpopular man in the country. The bill reviving the United States Bank having been vetoed, congress passed another framed in accordance with the suggestions of the executive. To the indignation of the bank's friends, he vetoed this bill. Every member of his cabinet, except Daniel Webster, resigned, he remaining to complete some negotiations upon which he was engaged. In September, 1841, the President made up his new cabinet.



JOHN TYLER

In alienating his own political party, the President failed to gain the good-will of his political opponents. He was too aristocratic in his tastes to suit the people. He was charged with treachery to his supporters, and altogether his unpopularity could not well have been greater. Nevertheless, his administration was marked by stirring and important events.

**Settlement of the Maine Boundary.** — There had been continuous discussion with Great Britain over our territorial limits in the Northeast. It was finally settled, in 1842, by Lord Ashburton and Daniel Webster, the boundaries as they exist to-day being agreed upon. The Ashburton Treaty reflected great credit upon Secretary of State Webster.

**Dorr's Rebellion in Rhode Island.** — The charter which Charles II granted to Rhode Island in 1663 remained in force until 1842. It denied the right of suffrage to all who did not own a certain

amount of property. The dissatisfaction over this provision increased, until the little State was sharply divided into the friends and opponents of the measure. Thomas Wilson Dorr called a convention, which formed a new constitution, that was ratified by fourteen thousand votes. A new assembly was elected and Dorr chosen governor. His attempt to take possession of the capital by force was resisted by Governor Samuel W. King, the "regular" or charter executive. It is said that Dorr drew up his puny army, and pointing to the State troops, who were advancing, called upon his supporters to stand to the last, but, if compelled to retreat, to do so with their faces to the foe. It is claimed that he added: "As I am somewhat lame, I will start now," and did so. Three days later the flurry ended without bloodshed. Dorr fled to Connecticut, and upon his return to Rhode Island was arrested on the charge of treason, convicted, and sentenced to imprisonment for life. This was in June, 1844. A year later he was unconditionally released and afterward restored to citizenship. Rhode Island adopted a new and more liberal constitution, which went into effect in May, 1843.

**Anti-rent Troubles in New York.** — It will be remembered that during the early settlement of the State of New York the Dutch proprietors took possession of immense tracts of land, claiming and receiving privileges like those of the feudal lords in England hundreds of years before. These privileges descended from father to son, emerging from the Revolution without change. The most powerful of these patroons, as they were called, were the Van Rensselaers, two of whom fought on the side of England in the war of 1812. The family estates included most of Albany and Rensselaer counties. The rent was nominal, being a chicken or a handful of wheat per acre, and in some instances nothing at all. Old Stephen Van Rensselaer let matters drift, caring little whether his dues were collected or not. So it came about that when he died, in 1840, there were back rents due amounting to two hundred thousand dollars. His heirs determined to collect this amount, and then trouble came.

The people resisted the demands; fierce fights followed; the military were called out; in 1844, a large portion of the disaffected counties was in a state of civil war. Armed men, disguised as Indians, paraded through the section and compelled neutrals to adopt their principles. Obnoxious persons were tarred and feathered by the anti-renters, and a deputy sheriff was murdered in Delaware county. Order was not restored until 1846, when the State constitution was amended so as to abolish all feudal tenures, and the leasing of agricultural lands for a period exceeding twelve years was forbidden.

**A Sad Accident.** — On the 28th of February, 1844, Commodore Stockton, commanding the steamship *Princeton*, took a distinguished party on an excursion down the Potomac. For the entertainment of his guests, he caused the firing of an immense cannon, called the *Peacemaker*. The gun exploded, killing Mr. Gilmer, secretary of the navy, Mr. Upshur, secretary of state, Commander Kennon, Virgil Maxey, late minister of The Hague, and others, besides injuring a number of sailors so seriously that several of them died. The whole country was thrown into gloom by the sad occurrence.

**The Mormons.** — About this time the Mormons began to attract notice. Joseph Smith was the founder of the sect. Gathering a number of followers, they made a settlement at Jackson, Missouri, where they rapidly increased in numbers, but their atrocious practices caused the people to drive them from the State. They crossed the Mississippi in the spring of 1839, and laid out the city of Nauvoo, in Illinois. There they grew to a membership of ten thousand; but, after a time, the people again rose against them, and in the rioting Joseph and his brother Hyrum were killed. The legislature annulled their charter, and, gathering their goods, the Mormons started for the West. After two years' wandering, they located themselves, in 1846, near the Great Salt Lake of Utah. They founded Salt Lake City, with Brigham Young as their president, and built one of the most beautiful and prosperous cities in the whole country.



Their remoteness removed them from the public eye for several years. When, however, the westward emigration across the plains began, the Mormons helped the Indians to rob and murder peaceful men and women. It was proved that in the Mountain Meadow massacre, the Mormons were the leaders, and a number of them took part, disguised as savages. Many years afterward, the most guilty were brought to trial and punished.

**The Texan War of Independence.** — The Texan question, as it was called, had become the burning one of the hour. That vast territory was claimed by Mexico. Among its settlers were many reputable men and some evil ones. Finally, in 1836, Texas declared its independence of Mexico, which sent the unprincipled adventurer, Santa Anna, with an army, to bring it into subjection. At the Alamo, in San Antonio, this commander, after besieging the mission house for nearly two weeks, with an overwhelming force, secured the surrender of the half-dozen survivors by a pledge to treat them honorably. When they had given up their arms, he massacred them all. Shortly after, the Mexican army was almost destroyed by Sam Houston and his few hundred Texans at San Jacinto. The United States acknowledged the independence of Texas in 1837. It remained a republic for several years, and then applied for admission to the American Union.

We can readily understand the bitter feeling caused by this request. If the vast area joined us, it would have to be as a slave State. The South naturally favored its admission, while most of the North was violently opposed. After the death of Mr. Upshur, by the explosion on the *Princeton*, John C. Calhoun became secretary of state in March, 1844. He insisted upon the admission of the Lone Star State. Henry Clay, who was the Whig candidate for the presidency, opposed its admission. This was a fatal blow to his ambition. It alienated the South, while there was just enough distrust of him in the North to secure his defeat. James K. Polk was elected President, and George M. Dallas of Pennsylvania became Vice President.

**The First Public Telegram.** — The convention which nominated Polk was held in Baltimore. His nomination was made on May 29, 1844. Those who immediately took the train to carry the news to Washington were astounded to find, on their arrival, that the news was ahead of them. It had been sent to the national capital by magnetic telegraph, that being the first public telegram that ever passed over a wire. Professor S. F. B. Morse was the inventor of this wonderful means of communication.

**Admission of Texas.** — On the 1st of March, 1844, a joint resolution admitting Texas passed both houses of congress. The President immediately signed the bill. Texas, however, was not formally admitted to the Union until December 29, 1845. Florida became a State March 3 of that year, while Iowa entered the Union, December 28, 1846.

**The New States.** — The Spanish missionaries in 1524 called the country of Texas "Mixtecapah," and the people "Mixtecas." Probably from the last word that of Texas was derived. Florida received its name from Canunas de Flores, or "Feast of the Flowers." It was visited, as we have learned, by Ponce de Leon in 1512, and again in 1516. De Soto explored it in 1539, and the Spanish claimed the territory. The first permanent settlement was made at St. Augustine in 1565, that city, as already stated, being the oldest within the present limits of the United States. Other settlements followed and prospered. Spain ceded Florida to England in 1763, but it was ceded back twenty years later. The portion west of Perdido River was secured by the United States from France, by treaty, in 1803. In 1819, Spain sold the country to us for the sum of five million dollars. Iowa is named from an Indian tribe, the Kiowas, so called by the Illinois Indians because they were "across the river." In 1788, a French Canadian, named Julian Dubuque, secured a large tract of land and engaged in fur trading. The region was not thrown open to settlement until after the Black Hawk war. Emigrants from Illinois made the first permanent settlement at Burlington in 1833. Dubuque was founded the same year.

**Presidential Election of 1844.** — The Whig candidates against Polk and Dallas were Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen. The Democratic ticket was successful by the electoral vote of one hundred and seventy to one hundred and five.

**TOPICS.** — The death of President Harrison; his successor; facts regarding him; cause of President Tyler's unpopularity; settlement of the Maine boundary; history of Dorr's rebellion in Rhode Island; the anti-rent troubles in New York; violent acts of the people; how the difficulty was ended; the sad accident on the Potomac in February, 1844; the Mormons; their city in Utah; the Texan war for independence; what followed; what caused the failure of Henry Clay's candidacy for the presidency; the first public telegram; the admission of Texas; the admission of Florida and Iowa; early history of Texas; of Florida; of Iowa; the presidential election of 1844.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Brigham Young**, the most prominent of the later Mormons, was born in Vermont in 1801. He embraced the Mormon doctrines in 1831, began preaching the following year, and was made an "apostle" in 1835. He attached himself closely to Joseph Smith, and upon his death was elected his successor. After fully "viewing the land," he began the settlement of Salt Lake City in 1848. He became governor of Deseret in 1849, and was appointed governor of the Territory of Utah in 1851. Polygamy was not originally a dogma of the Mormon faith, but Young proclaimed it in 1852. He defied the United States government for years and was treated with a leniency that seemed almost criminal. In 1857, he was persuaded to submit to the expedition sent out under General Albert Sidney Johnston. He remained president of the Mormon church until his death in 1877.

**Joseph Smith** was also a native of Vermont, where he was born in 1805. He claimed to have discovered, in 1819, some plates buried in Mormon Hill, Ontario county, New York, with characters divinely engraved upon them, from which he constructed the Book of Mormon. He founded the sect, which held its first conference at Fayette, in the State of New York in 1830. The cardinal belief of the people was materialism and the remission of sins, the present distinguishing feature, as has been stated, not being added until 1852. The real author of the Mormon Bible was the Rev. Solomon Spaulding, who died in 1827.

**Sam Houston** (as he always called himself) was a unique figure in American history. He was born in Virginia, in 1793, and went to Tennessee in early childhood. He enlisted in the army and was made a lieutenant because of his bravery in fighting the Creeks. He was a Democratic congressman from Tennessee from 1823 to 1827 and governor of the State from 1827 to 1829. Abandoning civilization, he lived for several years among the Creeks,



where he became a chief. He then appeared in Texas and was a member of the constitutional convention of 1833, and was elected commander-in-chief of the Texan army of independence. Texas having declared herself independent, he was elected its first President from 1836 to 1838 and from 1841 to 1844. He won the decisive battle of San Jacinto, where the Mexican army was routed and Santa Anna taken prisoner, an exploit which gave Houston the title of the "Hero of San Jacinto." He represented Texas in congress from 1845 to 1859, when he was again elected governor. He refused to join in the secession of the State, was deposed from office, and died in 1863.

**Samuel F. B. Morse**, the inventor of the magnetic telegraph, was born in Massachusetts in 1791, and spent the early years of his life in studying painting, in which he acquired considerable skill. He conceived the idea of the electromagnetic telegraph in 1832, and labored for a number of years in bringing it into practical use. He underwent poverty, discouragements, and repeated failures before he attained success. Finally congress appropriated thirty thousand dollars for the erection of an experimental line between Washington and Baltimore. The necessary preliminary funds were furnished by Alfred Vail, who advanced two thousand dollars, for which he was to receive one-fourth interest in the invention. He also greatly assisted in bringing the invention to perfection. The first message over the wire was dictated by Annie Ellsworth to Professor Morse in Washington and received by Alfred Vail, forty miles away at Baltimore. It was sent on May 23, 1844, and consisted of the words, "What hath God wrought." This telegram is now in the possession of the Connecticut Historical Society. The public message, announcing Polk's nomination, was sent to Washington, as will be remembered, on the day following.

**James K. Polk**, the eleventh President, was born in Mecklenburg county, North Carolina, November 2, 1795. He removed early in life to Tennessee, which State he represented in congress for fourteen years, being elected speaker twice. He became governor in 1839 and defeated Van Buren for the presidential nomination, because he favored the annexation of Texas, while Van Buren opposed it. He died June 15, 1849.

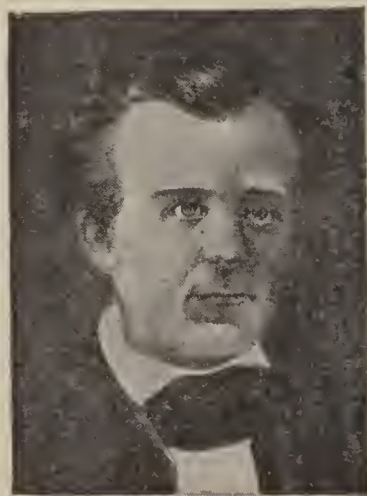
## CHAPTER XXIX

POLK'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1845-1849



**THE War with Mexico.** — Just as every one expected, the admission of Texas caused a war with Mexico. When, therefore, the Texan legislature, on the 4th of July, 1845, ratified the act of annexation to the United States, the authorities asked our government to send an army for their protection. In January, 1846, General Zachary Taylor was ordered to advance from his camp in western Louisiana and occupy Texas.

**The First Conflict.** — He first established a depot of provisions at Point Isabel on the Gulf, and then marched to the Rio Grande (gran-dy), halting opposite the Mexican town of Matamoras, where he hastily built Fort Brown. In the month of April, General Arista (a-reest'ah), commanding the Mexican forces, notified Taylor that hostilities had begun. On the 26th of the same month, Captain Thornton, with a company of American dragoons, was attacked by a much superior force and, after a gallant resistance, compelled to surrender. In the Mexican war, therefore, the first bloodshed took place on the soil of Texas.



JAMES K. POLK

**Victories at Palo Alto and Resaca de la Palma.** — Leaving a garrison of three hundred men at Fort Brown, General Taylor hurried

off to save Point Isabel. On his way back, he met, May 8, a Mexican force more than double his own, at Palo Alto (păh'lo ähl'to), where, in a desperate battle, the Mexicans were routed. The following day another large force was encountered at Resaca de la Palma (ră-săh'cah dā lä pahl'mah), within three miles of Fort Brown. The issue of this battle was doubtful for a time, but at the critical moment Captain May, with his dragoons, charged through the grape-shot, sabred the Mexican gunners, and captured La Vega (lhă vā'gah), the commanding officer. This disaster threw the Mexicans into a panic, and they fled to the other side of the Rio Grande.



DEFEAT OF CAPTAIN THORNTON

**The American Plan of Campaign.** — General Scott now organized the American forces in three divisions. The army of the West, under General Kearny (Car'ny), was to cross the Rocky Mountains and conquer the northern Mexican provinces; the army of Occupation, under General Taylor, was to seize and hold the districts of the Rio Grande; the army of the Centre, under General Scott, the commander-in-chief, was to march from the Gulf into the heart of the country, while General Wool was to attend to the mustering in of the troops.

**Capture of Matamoras and Monterey.** — "Rough and Ready," as General Taylor was popularly known, crossed the Rio Grande opposite Fort Brown, ten days after his victory at Resaca de la Palma, and captured Matamoras with little trouble. Reinforcements having increased the number of his men to sixty-six hundred, he advanced upon Monterey (mön-ta-rā'), which was defended by ten thousand troops. The city was invested on



September 19, the fortified works in the rear of the town being captured two days later by General Worth. On the 23d the city was carried in front and a general assault followed. The Mexicans fought with unusual bravery, but nothing could check the Americans, who pushed through the streets and over house-



BATTLE OF RESACA DE LA PALMA

tops. Ampudia, the commander, surrendered and, receiving the honors of war, retreated in the direction of the city of Mexico.

**Victory at Buena Vista.** — Victory crowned the American arms everywhere, though to this day Mexico celebrates all her defeats as so many victories. General Scott, having decided to march against the capital, ordered most of the army of Occupation to join him on the Gulf. Santa Anna advanced with twenty thousand men to crush Taylor, who took position at Buena Vista

(bwā'nah vees'tah). There, February 23, 1847, he was attacked by the Mexicans who had a force four times as great as that of the Americans. The battle continued all day, ending in the defeat of the Mexicans, who retreated in the night.

**Conquest of New Mexico and California.** — Leaving Fort Leavenworth in June, 1846, General Kearny captured and garrisoned

Santa Fé on the 18th of the following August. The New Mexican provinces were not eager for war and readily submitted. While pushing for the Pacific coast, Kearny learned that Fremont had conquered California. With the aid of Commodores Stockton and Sloat and General Kearny, the entire country was brought into subjection before the close of the year.

**The Advance on the Capital.** — With a force of twelve thousand men, General Scott, in March, 1847, completed the investment of Vera Cruz (vā'rah crooz). Aided by Commodore Conner, a bombardment was kept up for several days, when the city surrendered on the 29th of March. This opened the road to the city of Mexico, and Scott entered upon his final campaign. The Mexicans were encountered at the mountain pass of Cerro Gordo and defeated. Santa Anna fled in so great a hurry that he left his wooden leg behind him. The following day the army entered Jalapa (hah-lah'pah). The castle of Perote surrendered without resistance, and large supplies were thus secured by the Americans.

There was no resistance at the city of Pueblo (poo-ā'blah), and on the 10th of August the American army gained its first sight of the beautiful city of Mexico. Fifteen miles from the capital at Ayotla, the fortifications were found so strong that General Scott moved to the south around Lake Chalcos, thence eastward to San Augustin, which brought him within ten miles of the city. Contreras (con-trā'ras) was stormed on the morning of August 20, and in less than half an hour the six thousand Mexicans were driven headlong out of the fortifications. Then the garrison of San Antonio was routed. The heights of Churubusco (choo-roo-boos'ko) were next stormed. A powerful force of the enemy was gathered there, but a number of batteries were captured. Santa Anna set out to help the garrison, but was driven back.

At this juncture proposals were received from Santa Anna to negotiate, but his terms were those of a conqueror, and it was apparent that he was only seeking to gain time. Hostilities were, therefore, resumed on September 7, the western defences being captured the next day. Chapultepec (chä-pool'te-pec) fell and,



when the sun went down, it saw the invaders within the suburbs of the city of Mexico.

**Capture of the City of Mexico and the Treaty of Peace.** — On the night of September 13, after the Americans had entered the suburbs of the city, Santa Anna set two thousand convicts loose to fight our soldiers, while he and the city officers ran off in the darkness. About sunrise the capital surrendered, and Mexico



CAPTURE OF THE CITY OF MEXICO

was conquered. A treaty of peace was concluded at Guadalupe Hidalgo, February 2, 1848, by which we gained Texas, New Mexico, California, and Arizona. For these valuable provinces, our government pledged itself to pay Mexico fifteen million dollars, and to assume all debts due from the Mexican government to American citizens to the extent of \$3,500,000.

**Settlement of the Oregon Boundary.** —

Oregon had been jointly occupied by Great Britain and the United States for more than twenty years. There was a good deal of friction between the two countries, with now and then sharp talk of war. Finally, the present boundary was agreed upon and the troublesome question settled.

**Discovery of Gold in California.** — James W. Marshall, while digging out a mill race in the Sacramento valley, in the month of February, 1848, picked up a yellow pebble, whose nature he



half suspected. Investigation proved not only that it was pure gold, but that the soil for miles around contained millions of dollars worth of the precious metal. The news spread like wild-fire, and, in the course of a few months, thousands were flocking from the four quarters of the globe to the new El Dorado. The yield of the mines of the State since then has been nearly a billion of dollars, with still an immense output annually.

**Admission of Wisconsin.** — Wisconsin was admitted to the Union on May 29, 1848. Its name is an Indian word signifying "Wild, rushing waters." The country west of Lake Michigan was explored in 1639 by the French missionaries, trappers, and traders. The first settlement was at Prairie du Chien (prā'rē du sheen'). The region remained under French rule until 1763, when it was ceded to England. It reverted to the United States by treaty in 1796. It was a part of the Illinois Territory from 1809 to 1818, when it became attached to Michigan. It was separately organized in 1836.

**Presidential Election of 1848.** — The most popular hero in this country is the military one. The Whigs had tried three times to elect Henry Clay and failed, and were afraid to try even so great a statesman as Daniel Webster. Eight years before, they carried the country with General Harrison. They now repeated the experiment by putting forward "Rough and Ready," as General Zachary Taylor was popularly called. They were wise in doing so, for he was elected by a substantial majority, Millard Fillmore being the nominee for Vice President.

**TOPICS.** — What every one knew; the request of the Texan legislature; the action of General Taylor; the first conflict; the victory at Palo Alto; at Resaca de la Palma; the American plan of campaign; the capture of Matamoras and Monterey; the victory at Buena Vista; the conquest of New Mexico and California; the advance against the capital of Mexico; the different engagements; fall of the city of Mexico; the treaty of peace; its terms; the settlement of the Oregon boundary; the discovery of gold in California; the rush thither and the great yield; the admission of Wisconsin; its early history; the presidential election of 1848.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Stephen W. Kearny** (this name is generally misspelled Kearney) was born in 1794 and did good service in the war of 1812. He was made brigadier general in 1846, and during the Mexican war established a provisional government at Santa Fé. His victory at San Pasqual caused him to be promoted to a major generalship. In 1847, he was made governor of California, and died in 1848.

**John E. Wool**, born in 1784, won great credit at Queenstown Heights in 1812 and at Plattsburg in 1814. From 1816 to 1841 he was inspector general of the army. He was next in command to General Taylor at Buena Vista. From 1857 to 1860 he commanded the Eastern department; from 1861 to 1862, Fort Monroe; from 1862 to 1863, the middle military department; and in 1863, the department of the East. He died in 1869.

**William J. Worth** was born in 1794 and entered the military service on the breaking out of the war of 1812, fighting bravely at Chippewa and Niagara. He assumed command of the department of Florida in 1841, and, as we have learned, succeeded in bringing the long Seminole war to a close. He was next in command to General Taylor when the Mexican war broke out, participating in the assault on Monterey and in the battles of Vera Cruz and the various engagements ending in the capture of the city of Mexico. He died in 1849.

**Robert F. Stockton** was born in 1795, being the grandson of Richard Stockton, a signer of the Declaration of Independence. He entered the navy in 1812 and distinguished himself in the war with Algiers. He was a man of dauntless personal bravery, as he proved in many instances. While engaged in the establishment of the African republic of Liberia, he was once surrounded by a party of natives, who were determined to take his life. Stockton seized the chief by the throat and, holding his pistol at his head, let it be known that on the first demonstration, he would kill their leader. The natives were so terrified that they were glad to see him depart in peace. He commanded a squadron on the California coast in the Mexican war and co-operated with Fremont in the conquest of that province. He resigned from the navy in 1850 and was United States senator from New Jersey in 1851 to 1853. He died in 1866.

**Zachary Taylor**, twelfth President, was born at Orange Court House, Virginia, September 24, 1784, but his parents removed to Kentucky while he was an infant. He received a meagre education, but was an excellent soldier. For his gallant defence of Fort Harrison, on the Wabash, in the war of 1812, against a superior force, President Madison appointed him major by brevet, that being the first time such an honor was conferred in the American army. We have learned of his fine service in the war with Mexico, which led to his nomination for the presidency, though he was so little interested in politics, that he had not cast a vote for forty years.

## CHAPTER XXX

TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1849-1853



### IMPENDING Civil War — The Slavery Question.

— Slavery had become the all-absorbing question of the hour. The congress of 1850 contained those intellectual giants, — Clay, Calhoun, Webster, Seward, and Benton, — and the debates stirred the nation. California was clamoring for admission to the Union. Should she enter as a free or slave State?

The quarrel intensified, and civil war seemed imminent. Then it was that Henry Clay, the "Great Pacificator," forgetting his years and his physical weakness, in his burning patriotism, stepped forward once more and for the last time with his panacea for the "five bleeding wounds," as he termed them. Reinforced by the eloquence of Webster, the "Omnibus Bill" was carried through both houses of congress and, becoming the law of the land, averted civil war, — but only for a time. This bill provided for the admission of California as a free State; the formation of territorial governments for Utah and New Mexico, without any provision concerning slavery; the payment of ten million dollars to Texas to yield its claim to the territory of New Mexico; the prohibition of the slave trade in the District of Columbia; and a fugitive slave law declaring

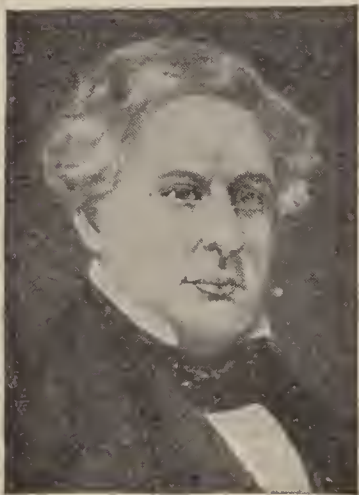


ZACHARY TAYLOR



that slaves escaping to a free State should be returned to their owners.

**Death of President Taylor — The Thirteenth President.** — In the midst of the exciting discussion, President Taylor died from an attack of bilious fever July 9, 1850. Vice President Fillmore



MILLARD FILLMORE

took the oath of office the next day. He was born at Summer-Hill, New York, February 7, 1800. He learned the fuller's trade, taught school for a few years, studied law, and, taking up its practice in Buffalo, met with great success. He served as state comptroller one term and as congressman four terms. He was a believer in the compromise measure of Clay, and, though an able man, was by no means the equal of many around him. He died in Buffalo, March 7, 1874.

**Admission of California.** — California was admitted under the provisions specified September 9, 1850. The origin of the name of the State is a matter of dispute, but is generally believed to have been derived from a name in a Spanish romance published in 1530. The section was visited by a Spanish navigator, named Cabrillo (cā-breel'yo), in 1542. The first settlements were made by the Spaniards about 1768. A number of Franciscan friars founded presidios or religious establishments for the conversion of the Indians. These friars acquired great wealth and virtually enslaved the natives. In 1822, upon the overthrow of the Spanish power in California, the fathers were stripped of their riches and authority. By and by, an emigration thither began from the United States, but it was slow until the discovery of gold, as described elsewhere, when it assumed prodigious proportions.

**The Fugitive Slave Law.** — The passage of the Fugitive Slave Law, though a part of Clay's famous "Omnibus Bill," soon added fuel to the flames it was intended to quench. The majority of the supreme court, the highest tribunal in the land in

rendering what is known as the Dred Scott decision, declared the law constitutional. It was defied and resisted in the North. The slaves, who were continually fleeing from their masters, were helped on to Canada, where only they were absolutely safe, or were hidden by friends in the free States. Frequent collisions took place, and people were killed. By and by, some of the



THE SLAVERY QUESTION IN CONGRESS

States passed "personal liberty" bills, by which such fugitives were granted a trial by jury in the face of the decision of the supreme court. The breach between the North and South grew wider every day and almost every hour.

**Presidential Election of 1852.** — The Democratic convention for the nomination of candidates for the presidency and vice presidency was held in Baltimore in the month of June, 1852. A curious fact about it was that thirty-five ballots were taken



before the name of Franklin Pierce was presented. The contest was so determined among the leaders that Virginia, on the thirty-sixth ballot, placed Pierce in nomination. On the forty-ninth ballot he swept everything from his path and was declared the nominee. More than one-half the people in the country had never heard of him, but in the autumn canvass he overwhelmingly defeated General Winfield Scott, the Whig candidate, William R. King of Alabama being chosen Vice President.

**TOPICS.**—The slavery question; the intellectual giants in the congress of 1850; the question as to the admission of California; the last work of Henry Clay; the provisions of the "Omnibus Bill," which calmed the storm for the time; the death of President Taylor; Millard Fillmore; admission of California; early history of the State; effects of the passage of the Fugitive Slave Law; "personal liberty" bills; the presidential election of 1852.

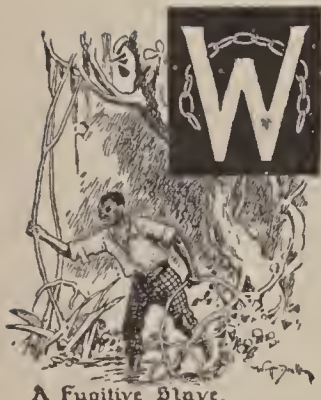
**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.**—**Winfield Scott** was born in Virginia in 1786, educated at William and Mary College, and commissioned as lieutenant in the army in 1808. He was taken prisoner at the battle of Queenstown Heights in 1812, and, upon his exchange, distinguished himself and was so badly wounded at Lundy's Lane, of which he was the hero, that he was unable to take further part in the war. He was made a major general, fought against the Seminoles and Creeks, and became commander-in-chief of the army in 1841. He was the conqueror of Mexico, and the foremost general at that time in the country. His crushing defeat by one of his subordinate officers, in the presidential campaign of 1852, astonished the country, since he received only forty-two electoral votes to two hundred and fifty-four cast for Pierce. General Scott was a martinet, pompous of manner and always conscious of the dignity of his office. He was a man of prodigious size, being fully six feet four inches tall and massive in proportion. He was in command of the army at the outbreak of the civil war, but resigned in October, 1861. He died five years later, and was buried in the national burying ground at West Point.

**Franklin Pierce**, the fourteenth President, was born at Hillsborough, New Hampshire, November 23, 1804. He was a classmate of Longfellow and Hawthorne at Bowdoin College, and, upon his graduation, became a successful lawyer. He served in his State legislature and was a member of congress from 1833 to 1837. His ability attracted attention, and, entering the United States senate in 1839, he remained until 1842, afterward declining a cabinet appointment from President Polk. Upon the breaking out of the Mexican war, Mr. Pierce volunteered his services. Although he held no command above that of a brigade, he displayed great gallantry in several battles. He died October 8, 1869.



## CHAPTER XXXI

PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1853-1857



A Fugitive Slave.

**W**E must record a noteworthy fact (because it was never known before and down to the present has not been repeated) which is, that throughout the four years of President Pierce's administration there was not a single change in his cabinet.

**Repeal of the Missouri Compromise.** — The most important event of Pierce's administration was the repeal of the Missouri Compromise. Senator Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois introduced a bill for the organization of the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska, with the provision that they should decide for themselves the question of slavery. After a heated discussion, the bill became a law May 31, 1854.

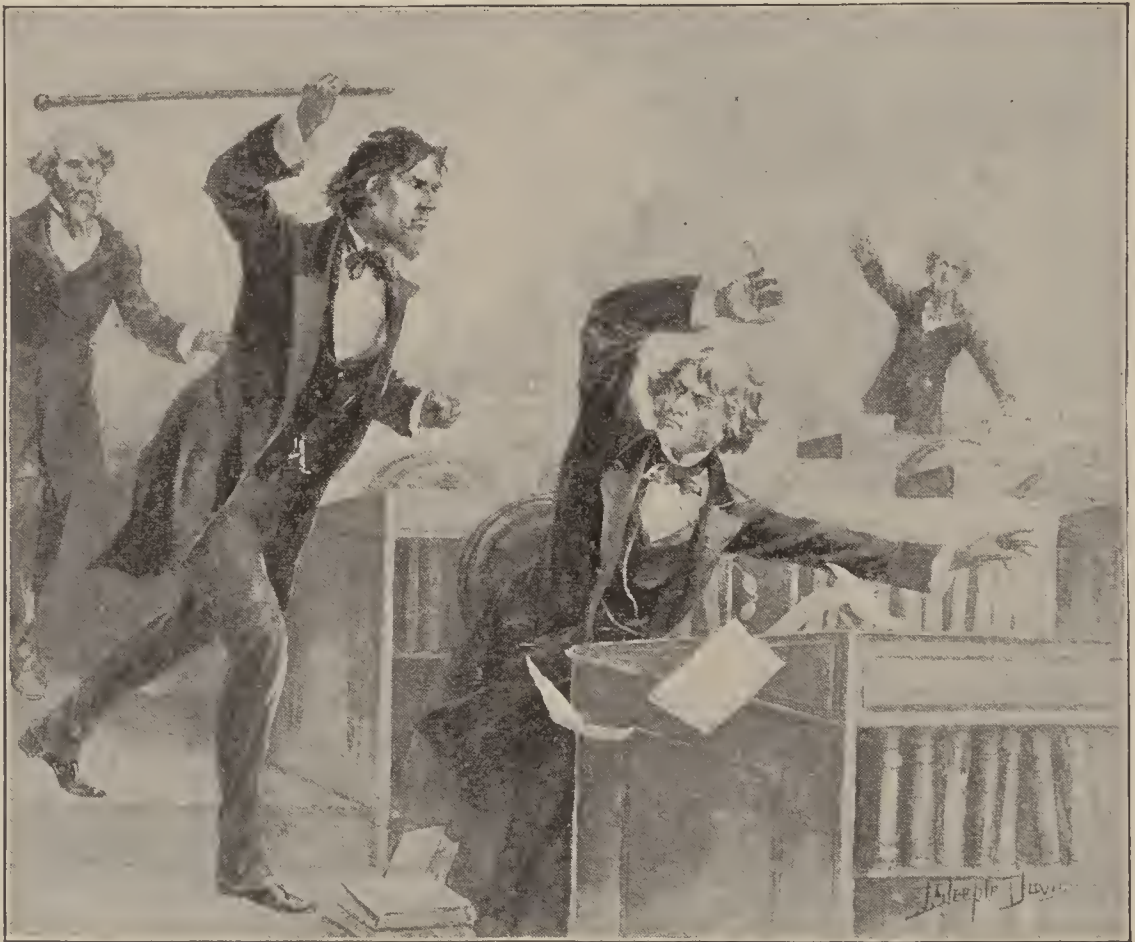
**"Bleeding Kansas."** — Nebraska lay too far north to be disturbed by the slavery quarrel, and had no trouble, but Kansas quickly became the scene of violence and bloodshed. The pro-slavery men hurried emigrants thither, so as to gain control of the elections, while New England was equally active in providing parties of settlers with all they needed, especially Bibles and rifles. The men on both sides were desperately in earnest and committed many crimes. A pro-slavery government was organized at Lecompton and an anti-slavery one at Topeka. Each attempted to enforce its laws and civil war



FRANKLIN PIERCE

followed. At night the skies were lit up with the glare of burning homes, and the crack of the deadly rifle was hardly ever silent by day or night. Within the space of five years, six different governors were sent into Kansas to restore order, and every one failed and gave up in disgust.

**The War in Congress.** — Congress, in a smaller way, became a miniature Kansas. The members went to the chambers armed



ASSAULT ON CHARLES SUMNER

with knives and pistols, and there were several personal encounters, with constant threats of appealing to the "code." Generally the Republicans controlled the house of representatives, while the Democrats were in a majority in the senate. Kansas at last formed a state government forbidding slavery, and asked to be admitted to the Union. The house was willing, but the senate refused. Senator Sumner of Massachusetts was among

the foremost opponents of slavery and made many powerful speeches against it. One of his speeches angered Senator Butler of South Carolina, who, however, contented himself with a savage reply. His nephew, Preston S. Brooks, a congressman from the same State, strode into the senate chamber, where Sumner was writing at his desk, and, without warning, furiously assaulted him with a heavy cane. Before he could be checked, he had beaten the helpless senator into insensibility and injured him so grievously that his life was despaired of. He was obliged to make a voyage to Europe, undergo one of the severest of surgical operations, and did not recover for several years.

Brooks was lionized by his people for his shocking crime, and the resolution to expel him from the house was not carried. He died the following year, and the shameful incident added fuel to the flames of hatred that were already burning unquenchably between the North and South.

**Presidential Election of 1856.** — The Republican party was fully organized during Pierce's administration. As a result of the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska Act, in 1854, the northern Free Soilers, Whigs, Democrats, Know Nothings, and Abolitionists fused into one compact organization, whose fundamental principle was opposition to the extension of slavery. The party increased rapidly, and, at Philadelphia, in June, 1856, nominated John C. Fremont of California and William L. Dayton of New Jersey as its candidates for the presidency and vice presidency. There were other tickets in the field beside the Democratic, which elected James Buchanan, who received one hundred and seventy-four electoral votes out of a total of two hundred and ninety-six, while one hundred and fourteen went to Fremont.

This large vote by the new party opposed to slavery startled the South. They understood for the first time the magnitude of the opposition to its "peculiar institution," and though they were not then ready to secede, they began preparing for the step if, as seemed likely, the Republicans should, at the next national election, carry all the free States and elect their candidates.



**TOPICS.** — A noteworthy fact regarding Pierce's administration; the repeal of the Missouri Compromise; "bleeding Kansas; the reign of civil war in the Territory; the attempts of the friends and enemies of slavery; the scenes in congress; the assault upon Senator Sumner; intensifying of the quarrel between the North and South; organization of the Republican party; its first national nominees; result of the election of 1856; effect upon the South.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Stephen A. Douglas** was born in Vermont in 1813. He was a farmer, a teacher, and, while still a young man, began the practice of law in Illinois. He was bright, aggressive, and a popular stump speaker. He was elected to the state legislature, was attorney general, was elected secretary of state of Illinois in 1840, and in the year following received the appointment of judge of the supreme court of that State. He was elected to the house of representatives in 1843 and served until 1847, when he entered the senate and remained until 1861. During this period he forged to the front, among the foremost of Democrats. He had a large head, but was short of stature, and his many admirers named him "Little Giant." Douglas was the author of the doctrine of "popular sovereignty," of which so much was heard after the close of the Mexican war. It meant that the people of all the Territories should be left free to settle the question of slavery for themselves. The Kansas-Nebraska bill, therefore, was an expression of this principle. He had a large following, which presented his name to the national convention of 1852 and of 1856. In 1860, the northern wing nominated him. His great debate with Abraham Lincoln in 1858, when the two were candidates for the United States senate, first brought Lincoln into national prominence. He was an ardent Union man throughout the civil war and a strong supporter of President Lincoln, with whom he had been on friendly terms for years. He died in June, 1861.

**Charles Sumner** was born in Boston in 1811, was graduated at Harvard in 1830, and after studying law made an extensive European tour. He was an accomplished scholar and an eloquent orator. He became deeply interested in the slavery question, and, although not actively participating in politics, his addresses were marked by the highest culture and the profoundest depth. He was a Whig in politics, but helped to reorganize the Free Soil party in 1848, and was its successful candidate for congress. After a fight of several months in the Massachusetts legislature, in 1851, a combination of Free Soilers and Democrats elected him to the United States senate, his re-election regularly following until his death. In that august body he became the leader of the anti-slavery sentiment. It was his speech on the "Crime against Kansas," in May, 1856, which provoked the frightful assault upon him by Preston S. Brooks, and which prevented Sumner from resuming his seat until 1859. He was the chief supporter of President Lincoln, whose tactful wisdom enabled

him to control the dogmatic side of this great senator, where any other man would have failed. He opposed President Johnson, and by his defeat of the San Domingo treaty, which was a favorite measure of President Grant, alienated the leading Republicans. He was a supporter of Horace Greeley's candidacy in 1872, and always a true friend to the colored man, whose rights he championed to the close of his life, which came in March, 1874.

**John C. Fremont** was born in Virginia in 1813 and received his education in Charleston. He first entered the United States navy, but soon joined the corps of topographical engineers and married Jesse Benton, the daughter of United States Senator Benton. In 1842, he entered upon his career as a western explorer, penetrating the Rocky Mountain region to the peak which was named in his honor. In 1843 and 1844, he conducted a more extensive exploration of the comparatively unknown Far West, which carried him into the Utah Basin and through the passes of the Sierra Nevada. He was engaged on another expedition which found



FREMONT CROSSING THE ROCKIES

him in California at the breaking out of the Mexican war of 1846, whither he had gone, having received secret information from the government of the probable war between the countries. He helped Commodore Stockton to conquer California, but was court-martialled for accepting orders from Stockton instead of General Kearny. Feeling aggrieved, he resigned his commission in the United States army. Hitherto, Fremont had conducted his explorations for the government, but he now carried through two on his own account.

The first, 1853-1854, was attended by almost incredible hardships and sufferings, in which many of his men were frozen to death, and all the animals perished. He was sent as senator from California for the short term, and, as we have learned, was defeated for the presidency in 1856. He was given an important command at the opening of the civil war, but achieved no special success as a military leader. He died in 1890.

**James Buchanan**, fifteenth President, was born in Mercersburg, Pennsylvania, April 23, 1791. He was graduated from Dickinson College in 1809, and, having become a lawyer, was elected to the state legislature, followed by his election to congress in 1821. He was appointed minister to Russia by President Jackson in 1832, but soon returned home and was elected to the United States senate in 1834. Through his long life he was almost continuously in public office. When he left the senate, in 1845, it was to enter President Polk's cabinet as his secretary of state. He had already become a prominent candidate for the presidency. In 1853, he was appointed minister to England, where he remained until 1856, when he was elected to the presidency. His term was a most trying one, its conclusion overlapping the edge of the great civil war. He was accused of timidity, and perhaps the charge was justifiable. It must have given him infinite relief, when at last he handed over the government to his successor. He returned to his home at Lancaster, where he died June 1, 1868. Mr. Buchanan was the only bachelor who had thus far been President of the United States.



## CHAPTER XXXII

BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1857-1861



**J**OINING Issue with the Supreme Court — The Dred Scott Decision. — The Dred Scott decision has been referred to as one of the causes which intensified the anger between the two sections of the Union. Dred Scott was a slave, whose owner was a surgeon in the army, and who took him to Fort Snelling, Minnesota, afterward returning to Missouri. Scott brought suit for his freedom, because he had been taken into territory where slavery was prohibited. The decision, sometimes one way and sometimes another, was carried up from court to court, until it reached the United States supreme court, the highest tribunal in the land. There the decision was read by Chief Justice Taney in 1857.

His decision was in conformity with the Southern view of the slavery question. It was assented to by six members of the court, all of whom were slave holders, the other two dissenting. It was in effect that slaves are *property*, and not regarded by the Constitution as *persons*. Consequently a slave owner had a right to take his slaves anywhere he chose within the Union, without losing ownership in them. The expression, "Negroes have no rights which the white man is bound to



JAMES BUCHANAN

respect," was repeated numberless times, and added to the resentment of the North, where, as we have learned, some of the States joined issue with the supreme court, and passed "personal liberty" bills. Frequent collisions occurred between slave owners and those befriending the runaways.

**John Brown's Raid.** — John Brown, a fanatical Abolitionist, who had been active with his sons in the Kansas troubles, came to look upon himself as the chosen instrument of the Lord to free the land from slavery. He formed a plan to invade Virginia with a small force, and to start an insurrection among the slaves which would sweep through the entire South. With twenty followers he stationed himself in the month of October, 1859, on the Maryland shore opposite Harper's Ferry. On Sunday night, the 16th, the band crossed the railway bridge over the Potomac, took possession of the Federal armory, captured several citizens, stopped railway trains, and held the town for twenty-four hours. His intention was to launch the "revolution" before the authorities could stop him, and he cut the telegraph wires to prevent the news reaching the state or national government.

Meanwhile, Brown having killed a number of the citizens, retreated to a small engine house, with several of his men. There they kept the mob at bay throughout Monday and the night following. The startling news had reached Washington, and on Tuesday morning Colonel Robert E. Lee arrived with a force of marines and land troops. The local militia had been called out, and there was no escape for Brown. But he would not surrender. Colonel Lee battered in the door of the engine house, one of his men being shot down, and Brown was overpowered, after his two sons had been killed and himself wounded several times. He was tried by the authorities of Virginia, and with six companions hanged on the 2d of December. The South naturally charged the North with the crime, though it was wholly the work of Brown. The raid was another step forward toward the war for the Union.

**The First Atlantic Cable.** — The Atlantic is now spanned by several cables, which stretching along the ocean bottom through

valleys miles deep, over submarine mountains and across hundreds of miles of plateau, keep the Old and New World in constant touch. The first telegraphic cable was completed August 5, 1858. The credit for the success of the enterprise was mainly due to Cyrus W. Field, a wealthy merchant of New York. Several messages passed back and forth, among them one from Queen Victoria to President Buchanan. The event was celebrated on both continents with great rejoicing, but something was wrong with the insulation. The trouble grew worse, until on the 4th of September it was impossible to transmit a word through the wire. The mute tongue could not be roused into speech. A new company was formed and repeated attempts made to reopen communication and to lay a new cable, but success was not reached until 1866.

**Admission of Minnesota, Oregon, and Kansas.** — Minnesota, so named from its principal river, which means "sky-tinted water," was admitted to the Union May 11, 1858. It was in 1680, that Hennepin, a Franciscan priest, with a party of fur traders, paddled down the Illinois, and then ascended the upper Mississippi to the great falls which he named St. Anthony. The territory belonged to the Louisiana purchase, and followed its changes and transfers. Fort Snelling was built in 1819, and lumbering began on the St. Croix (croy) in 1837. The first building in St. Paul was put up in 1838, and the territory was organized in 1849. The Sioux (sōō) Indians ceded a vast tract to the United States in 1851, when a rapid immigration began, and the settlement and development of the country continued.

Oregon was admitted February 14, 1859. Its name is a Spanish word signifying "vales of wild thyme." In 1792, Captain Robert Gray sailed up the fine stream which still bears the name of one of his vessels, the *Columbia*. The expedition of Lewis and Clark, in 1804, brought back the first reliable information of the Pacific coast. Astoria was founded in 1811 by the American Fur Company, of which John Jacob Astor was president. The name Oregon was originally applied to all the country on the Pacific between



42° and 54° 40' north latitude. The treaty with England in 1846 cut down the northern boundary to the forty-ninth degree. Emigration was slow until 1839, when legislation favoring it was made, and afterward added to, by which the new territory was rapidly settled.

That portion of Kansas lying east of the one hundredth meridian formed a part of the Louisiana purchase of 1803. After the passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill in 1854, emigrants began flocking into the territory, and the strife between the anti-slavery and pro-slavery men began and was continued for years. The name of the State is believed to have the same derivation as "Arkansas."

**Election of Abraham Lincoln.**—The presidential election of 1860 was held amid an excitement such as was never before known. The Democratic convention met in Charleston in April, 1860, and stayed until May 1, when fifty-seven ballots had been taken without selecting a nominee. A number of the dissatisfied members organized anew and agreed to meet in Richmond on the 11th of June. At this meeting they nominated John C. Breckinridge of Kentucky for the presidency and Joseph Lane of Oregon for the vice presidency. The rest of the Charleston convention adjourned to Baltimore, where on the 18th of June they nominated Stephen A. Douglas of Illinois for the presidency and Herschel V. Johnson of Georgia for the vice presidency.

Meanwhile, the Republican convention met at Chicago, May 16, and placed in nomination Abraham Lincoln of Illinois, with Hannibal Hamlin of Maine the nominee for Vice President. The week previous, the "Constitutional Union" party at Baltimore nominated John Bell of Tennessee for President and Edward Everett of Massachusetts for Vice President. The election resulted in the choice of the Republican nominees.

**Secession of South Carolina.**—South Carolina lost no time in proving the deadly earnestness of her threat to withdraw from the Union upon the election of the Republican candidates. On the 20th of December, 1860, the convention in Charleston passed

the ordinance of secession. Too impatient to wait for her sister States, she organized as a new nation, and arranged to send ambassadors, ministers, and consuls abroad. Governor Pickens formed a cabinet, with the usual departments; provisions were made for military operations; the state banks were authorized to suspend specie payments, and a loan of four hundred thousand dollars was promptly taken up; a call for volunteers was made, and it was decided if necessary to order a draft.

Having taken the momentous step, South Carolina prepared to parry the blow that she knew would soon be struck against her. Charleston harbor was defended by Castle Pinckney and Forts Moultrie, Sumter, and Johnson. Fort Sumter was the most for-



FIRING ON THE STAR OF THE WEST

midable. Major Robert Anderson, commanding the United States forces in Fort Moultrie, seeing the weakness of the Federal position, strengthened Castle Pinckney and Moultrie, but the superior officers to whom he was obliged to report in Washington were secessionists and his situation became most trying. On the night of December 26, he concentrated all his forces at Fort Sumter,

The South Carolinians were angered and pronounced the act a hostile one. They occupied Fort Moultrie and Castle Pinckney the following day. The custom house and post-office were seized, and then the government arsenal was taken possession of by the militia. On the morning of January 9, the *Star of the West* approached Fort Sumter to deliver supplies, but was fired upon and compelled to return to New York.

**Formation of the Southern Confederacy.** — On the 4th of February, delegates from South Carolina, Georgia, Alabama, Mississippi, Louisiana, and Florida met at Montgomery, Alabama. By a unanimous vote Jefferson Davis of Mississippi was provisionally elected President and Alexander H. Stephens of Georgia Vice President of the Confederate States of America. The flag was first unfurled on the 4th of March over the State House at Montgomery. Davis and Stephens were inaugurated on the 18th of February. Mississippi seceded January 9; Florida and Alabama on the 11th; Georgia, the 19th; Louisiana, the 26th; and Texas on the 1st of February. Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas joined the Confederacy later.

**The Sixteenth President.** — Abraham Lincoln was born in Hardin — now Larue — county, Kentucky, February 12, 1809. When he was seven years old, his parents removed to Indiana, settling near the present village of Gentryville. He helped his father on the farm and had but a year's schooling. He was a diligent student, however, and an insatiate reader of instructive books. When sixteen years old, he was earning six dollars a month by managing a ferry across the Ohio. In 1830, the family removed to Illinois and put up a log house on the north fork of the Sangamon. Young Lincoln split rails and helped to clear the fifteen acres of land. With the help of some friends, he built a flat boat the following year, and took a load of goods to New Orleans. He served as a captain during the Black Hawk war, Jefferson Davis being also an officer.

At the age of twenty-five, Lincoln was elected to the legislature, where he stayed for four terms. Having been admitted to



the bar, he was sent to congress in 1846. In the course of the following few years he became the acknowledged leader of the Republican party. In 1858 he contested the canvass of Stephen A. Douglas as United States senator, and they stumped the State together. The wit, ability, and power shown by Lincoln in this memorable debate attracted the attention of the country; and, though he was defeated in a State strongly democratic at that time, he acquired a national reputation, and as a result became the candidate of the Republican party for the presidency two years later.

Lincoln was six feet four inches tall, very powerful, a famous wrestler, awkward and homely of countenance, sometimes coarse of speech, but with genuine humor and great kindness of heart. He was as true a patriot as Washington, clean in his morals, and with an integrity that was never questioned. No other man since the birth of our republic has ever held so crucial a position as he, and no one could have acquitted himself more perfectly.

In these days of peace and security, it is hard to comprehend the fiery trials through which he had to pass. Yet his patience, his self-possession, his resources, his infinite tact, never failed him. The most striking attribute of this remarkable man was his intuitive perception of the right hour to do a thing. His friends grew impatient and found fault, his enemies jeered, and his closest adherents doubted, but he could neither be hurried, delayed, nor swerved from the course he had laid out for himself. When the moment came to smite, he smote with the power of the avalanche: a day sooner or later would have been a day too soon or too late.

Abraham Lincoln will always rank as one of the greatest Americans and Presidents, and, as the years roll on, his place in the affection and reverence of his countrymen becomes more fixed and more secure.

**TOPICS.** — The Dred Scott decision; upon what it was based; what it was; how it was accepted by the North; John Brown; his fanatical scheme; his raid at Harper's Ferry; how it all ended; history of the Atlantic cable;

admission of Minnesota; its early history; admission of Oregon; its early history; admission of Kansas; the presidential election of 1860; the secession of South Carolina; her steps toward securing her independence; Major Robert Anderson; his action on the night of December 26, 1860; the action of the secessionists; the firing on the *Star of the West*; the formation of the Southern Confederacy; the President and Vice President; Abraham Lincoln; his birth and childhood; his later career; his personal appearance; his character; the great task imposed upon him; his most striking attribute; his place in American history.

TO THE PUPIL. — Complete the following skeleton history, with the most important events from the signing of the Constitution to the formation of the Southern Confederacy.

SKELETON HISTORY OF PERIOD IV

NAME OF EVENT	WHERE IT TOOK PLACE	DATE
Signing of the Constitution	Philadelphia, Pa.	September 17, 1787
Formation of the Northwestern Territory	Congress, N. Y.	1787
Election of Washington as first President	In ten of the States	1788

# PART V

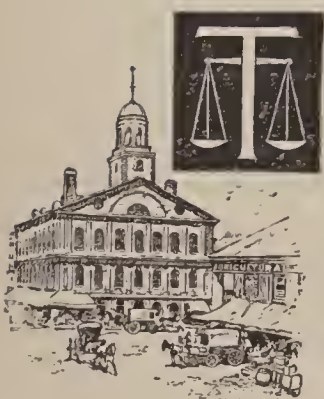
## THE PERIOD OF THE WAR FOR THE UNION

---

### CHAPTER XXXIII

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865

*Events of 1861*



**THE Cause of the Civil War.** — The cause of the Civil War may be given in a single word — slavery. There have been many ingenious and fine-spun theories to account for the terrific struggle between the two sections, but without African slavery there never would have been a battle. A compact country like ours, where the people are one, must either

have slavery in every State or in none.

It should be remembered that slavery, at one period in our history, was permitted everywhere. It was not abolished in New York until 1827, and prevailed throughout New England; but as time passed, it grew unprofitable in the North and gradually passed out of existence. In the South, however, where the chief industry was planting and the climate was softer, it flourished, especially after the invention of the cotton gin by Whitney, in 1792, when the raising of cotton became enormously profitable.

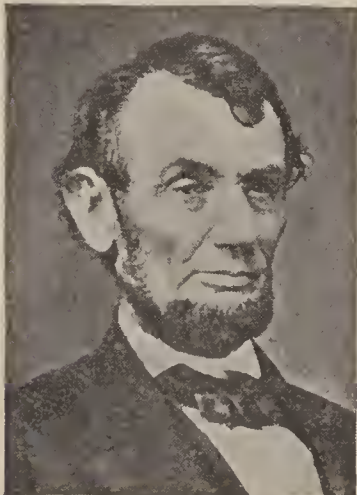
The Southerners clung to the institution, but the constitutional right of the slave owners to take their negroes into any State without losing ownership, and the authority to pursue the fugi-



tives and force them back to bondage, became unbearable to the North. The South strove to add slave territory to the Union, and the North fought against it. The feeling grew more intense, until all saw that slavery must be protected throughout the United States or cease altogether.

Furthermore, the South believed in state sovereignty, or as it is popularly termed "State rights." By that expression is meant that a citizen's first allegiance is due to his State. The Southerners looked upon the Union as simply a league between the States, from which any one had the constitutional right to withdraw whenever the majority of the citizens of such State desired to do so. It followed, therefore, that when South Carolina seceded, her people had to go whither she chose to lead them. There were many people in the South who were devotedly attached to the Union, and they were deeply grieved when their States attempted to withdraw. Even Jefferson Davis strove to avert the terrible conflict by trying to persuade the three presidential candidates to unite upon one man. Had that been done, Lincoln would have been defeated and the war postponed; but, sooner or later, it had to come. The fateful hour, when the question of slavery or disunion should be settled for all time,

was as sure to arrive as do the rising and setting of the sun.



ABRAHAM LINCOLN

**Inauguration of President Lincoln.**— President Lincoln left his home in Springfield, Illinois, February 11, 1861. He was weighed down by the tremendous responsibility that, in a greater or less degree, oppressed every thoughtful person in the country. He stopped in Philadelphia on Washington's birthday to assist in the raising of a flag over Independence Hall. Before he had reached the city,

his friends learned of a plot in Baltimore to kill him. To avert the tragedy, he took an earlier train from Philadelphia

than was expected, and reached Washington on the morning of the 23d.

There was fear that trouble would occur at the inauguration ceremonies on the 4th of March, but General Scott made so effective military preparations that nothing of that nature took place. Between one and two o'clock, Mr. Lincoln and Mr. Buchanan entered the senate chamber arm in arm. The inaugural was delivered in the presence of the supreme court, the senate and house of representatives, the foreign ministers, and many prominent citizens of the country. The new President declared that the United States is not a league but a union; he denied the right of secession, and announced that he intended to occupy all the places belonging to the government and to collect the duties and the imposts.



GENERAL WINFIELD SCOTT

**Capture of Fort Sumter.** — After some hesitation, the government decided to send a fleet to Charleston harbor with provisions and supplies for Fort Sumter. Washington was overrun with spies and secession sympathizers, and the news was immediately telegraphed to Montgomery, Alabama, the seat of the Confederate government. That body telegraphed to General P. G. T. Beauregard (bö're-gard), commanding at Charleston, to demand the surrender of Major Anderson. This demand being made and refused, fire was opened upon the fort. The first gun of the war was discharged at half-past four o'clock on Friday morning, April 12, from Fort Johnson. Edmund Ruffin, a white-haired old man, and a former friend of Calhoun, had come all the way from Virginia to beg the privilege and is generally credited with firing the first gun. Some years later, when he saw the Union about to be restored, he committed suicide. General Beauregard, however, asserted after the war that Captain George S. James fired the historical shot, after the privilege was offered to Roger A.

Pryor, who declined, because his State — Virginia — had not seceded.

At seven o'clock, the first shot in defence of the Union was fired by Captain Abner Doubleday from Fort Sumter. The bombardment lasted thirty-four hours, during which the walls of the fort were badly injured and the main gates destroyed. The barracks caught fire, and to prevent the explosion of the magazine, most of the powder was thrown into the sea. Suffocating from the dense smoke, the ammunition exhausted, with no food except salt pork, and under the converging fire of forty-seven guns and mortars, Major Anderson was finally compelled to surrender. The garrison, one hundred and twenty-nine in number, including laborers, were permitted to march out, after firing a salute of fifty guns to the flag before hauling it down. During this ceremony a Union soldier was accidentally killed, and his was the only death on either side from the opening of the bombardment to the surrender.

**Effect of the Fall of Fort Sumter.** — The effect of this startling event was to fire the hearts of the North and South. The bells in Charleston were set ringing, when the surrender took place, and horsemen galloped furiously through the streets, shouting the "glorious news." Men, women, and children partook of the frantic excitement, all looking upon the incident as the dawn of independence and the omen of the grandest career conceivable in the history of the Palmetto State. Ah, if something in the nature of the Roentgen ray could have penetrated the coming four years!

The demand of the hot-headed Carolinians was now to be led against the Northern men who dared to think of conquering them. Hundreds, who had held Union sentiments up to that hour, seemed to be bitten by the madness that was raging everywhere, and became the most clamorous of secessionists. General Imboden in Virginia did not wait for his State to secede, but raised a company of ardent cavalrymen and offered them for service, before anybody had asked for help. It was the same in



many other sections, and Virginia, North Carolina, Tennessee, and Arkansas made haste to join the States that had already seceded.

The South had many sympathizers in the North, where the profound devotion to the Union led the people to go to the utmost length in the way of compromise and concession, in the hope of preventing secession. Hundreds of men who afterward became prominent in the armies of the Union went so far that they were accused of truckling and timidity by those who, when the conflict did come, took care to keep away from danger. A leading Southerner summed up the situation in his reply to a proffer from the North: "If you should offer us a sheet of white paper upon which to write our terms for remaining in the Union, we would reject it, for we are determined to secede at all hazards."

The boom of Sumter's cannon crystallized the Union sentiment in the North and dissipated all idea of compromise. Every one was now as eager to fight for his country as were the multitudes in the South to fight against it. President Lincoln called for seventy-five thousand volunteers to put down the rebellion, and three hundred thousand rushed forward with a demand for a place in the ranks. Congress was summoned to meet on the 4th of July.

**Virginia the Great Battle-field of the War.** — It was evident that Virginia was to be the great battle-field in the coming struggle. Richmond was made the capital of the Confederacy, and in the course of a few weeks the South had fifty thousand men under arms in the Old Dominion. The Confederates seized the armory at Harper's Ferry and the Norfolk navy yard, and preparations for war were active in every quarter.

**Attack on Union Troops in Baltimore.** — Washington, the capital of the country, was in imminent peril of capture, and Northern troops were hurried to its defence. The 6th Massachusetts regiment, while passing through Baltimore, was attacked by a mob, and three were killed. Then the soldiers opened fire, shot down

nine, and wounded many others. It was a noteworthy fact that this affray took place on the 19th of April, the anniversary of the



ATTACK ON THE UNION TROOPS IN BALTIMORE

battle of Lexington. Enough troops soon reached Washington to remove all danger.

**Preliminary Conflicts.**—Arlington Heights and Alexandria were seized by Union troops on May 24. Colonel Ellsworth, of



Ellsworth's Zouaves, clambered to the roof of a hotel where he saw a secession flag flying, and tore it down. The landlord shot him dead as he was descending, and he in turn was killed by one of the Zouaves. Fort Monroe had been garrisoned by General B. F. Butler, who sent an expedition against Big Bethel, but it was grossly mismanaged. The Union troops fired into each other, and ten were killed before the mistake was discovered. Then they attacked the Confederates, and were repulsed with severe loss.

**Union Disaster at Manassas, or Bull Run.** — The North became impatient at the delay in marching against Richmond, where the Confederate congress had been summoned to meet on the 4th of July. The days and weeks were passing and nothing was done. The cry, "On to Richmond!" was raised and repeated times without number. Since the term of the three months' men was nearly ended, it was decided to make an advance upon the Confederate capital.

General Irvin McDowell, with about thirty thousand troops, set out to attack the main Confederate army, under General Beauregard, at Bull Run, near Manassas Junction. The forces were nearly equal. The two armies met on Sunday, July 21. The issue of the battle for a long time was doubtful. It was gradually trending toward a Union victory, when, at the critical moment, Kirby Smith arrived with reinforcements. He was a subordinate of General J. E. Johnston, who was on the ground helping Beauregard direct the battle. The report that reinforcements had arrived threw the Union troops into a panic, and they fled in confusion to Washington. The expectation was general that the Confederates would pursue them and capture the city, but they were in no condition to do so. They had come so perilously near defeat that they were quite content to stay where they were.

The Confederate victory at Manassas, however, was a misfortune to the Southern Confederacy and the best thing that could have happened for the cause of the Union. It gave to the South



a fatal self-confidence. Scores of soldiers, confident that their independence was already secured, left for home. Even those that had doubted the issue were sure that the North, after so fearful a check, would abandon the effort to subjugate the South.

The confidence in the North, previous to the first shock of arms, was as baseless as in the South. The boast was frequent that one well-equipped regiment could march from Washington to the Gulf of Mexico, that the South would run at the first smell of powder, and the whole flurry would be over within ninety days. It was strange that nearly every one believed the struggle was to be brief and almost bloodless. Even the leaders, North and South, thought so. A small number here and there comprehended the gigantic nature of the struggle that had opened, but they were so few that they were unnoticed in the multitude.

The mistake was mutual. People forgot that this was to be a war between Americans, a meeting of "Greek with Greek"; that the most skilful generals and the bravest soldiers were arrayed



GENERAL McCLELLAN

against one another, and the world was to witness battles such as have rarely been seen in history. So it was that the first shock of arms at Manassas opened the eyes of the North to the prodigious task before it.

Hard fighting, much trial and loss, with more than one repulse, were to be the cost of the triumph of the Union. Instead of shrinking from the vast sacrifice, the resolution became set to strain every nerve until the victory was accomplished. Congress voted half a billion dollars and half a million men to put down the rebellion. General George B. McClellan, who had done brilliant work in West Virginia, and who was a fine organizer of troops, was appointed to the command of the Army of the Potomac. He was very popular and was called by many the "Young Napoleon," who was to lead the armies of the

Union to victory. He set to work to drill and prepare the troops for an advance.

**Disaster at Ball's Bluff.** — On the 21st of October, a Federal reconnoitring detachment at Ball's Bluff was surprised and overwhelmed by a force of Confederates, who drove them into the river, where many were drowned, and others, who did not surrender, were bayoneted. The Union loss amounted to fully a thousand, among whom was Colonel E. D. Baker, senator from Oregon.

**The War in the West.** — The fighting was not confined to Virginia. There was much of it in the West, where the results were favorable to the Confederates. On the 10th of August, General Lyon attacked a strong Confederate force at Wilson's Creek, Missouri. His men were defeated and he was killed. Colonel Mulligan made a desperate defence against General Sterling Price at Lexington, in the same State, but was obliged to surrender. Price was driven into Springfield by Fremont, who issued a proclamation freeing the slaves. For this presumption he was superseded by General Hunter, who withdrew with the army to St. Louis. Then General Halleck superseded Hunter and forced Price into Arkansas.

**The War on the Coast.** — In the latter part of August, a joint naval and military expedition captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina. In November, another expedition secured the forts at Port Royal entrance, South Carolina. The Confederate government had issued letters of marque and reprisal, authorizing ships upon the high seas to prey upon Northern shipping. A number of these succeeded in running the blockade that President Lincoln had proclaimed, and did much damage to national commerce.

**The "Trent" Affair.** — England and France were pleased at the prospect of the disruption of the Union. They declared their neutrality, but acknowledged the Confederates as belligerents, while our government wished them to be looked upon as insurgents. The South was sure, after the battle of Manassas,



A BLOCKADE RUNNER

that England would recognize the Confederacy, especially as she was suffering because her supply of cotton was largely cut off. Messrs. Mason and Slidell were appointed as commissioners to England and France, respectively. They succeeded in running the blockade, and at Havana took passage on the British mail steamer *Trent*. The next day, November 8, Captain Charles

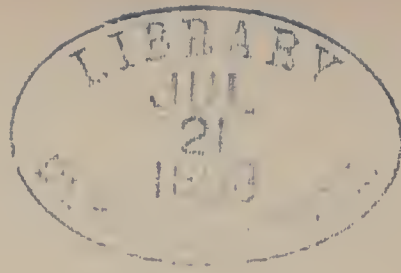




CAPTURE OF MASON AND SLIDELL

Wilkes, of the United States steamer *San Jacinto*, stopped the *Trent*, and took Mason and Slidell back to the United States. England began preparing for war, since the proceeding was a clear violation of her rights. Our government saw its error, disavowed the act, returned the prisoners, and war was averted.

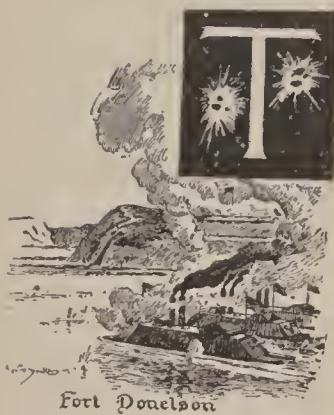
**TOPICS.** — The cause of the war for the Union; why such should be the fact; why slavery disappeared from the North, but was retained in the South; state sovereignty or "State rights"; what would have prevented the election of Abraham Lincoln; his journey from his home; the incident in Philadelphia; his inauguration; his inaugural; the decision of the government regarding Fort Sumter; secession spies in Washington; the bombardment of Fort Sumter; effect of the capture of Fort Sumter; the excitement in Charleston; effect elsewhere through the South; the secession of other States; their determination to withdraw from the Union; the effect of the fall of Sumter upon the North; President Lincoln's call for volunteers; the great battle-field of the war; action of the Confederates; the attack on the Union troops in Baltimore; the affair at Arlington Heights; Colonel Ellsworth; the disaster at Big Bethel; the cry of "On to Richmond"; the Union advance under General McDowell; the Union defeat; the effect of the battle upon the South; the confidence in the North previous to the war; the great mistake that was made on both sides; the lesson of Manassas to the North; action of congress; General McClellan; Union disaster at Ball's Bluff; fighting in the West; battle of Wilson's Creek, Missouri; at Lexington in the same State; Fremont's emancipation proclamation; the naval and military expedition against the forts at Hatteras Inlet; the Confederate privateers; the *Trent* affair.



## CHAPTER XXXIV

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861–1865 (*continued*)

### *Events of 1862*



Fort Donelson

**T**HE Work to be done. — Thus far the war had been conducted in a disjointed way. The result gave the Confederates great confidence. In order to bring them back to the Union, several steps were necessary. One was the overthrow of the defiant army in Virginia and the capture of Richmond, the capital of the Confederacy. Another was the opening of the Mississippi, and a third the maintenance of an effective blockade. Could all be accomplished, the South would be forced to succumb. Keeping these facts in mind, we shall better understand the prodigious struggle as it progressed.

**The War in the Southwest.** — The Confederates were more successful than the Unionists at the beginning of the war. In the Southwest they held a powerfully fortified line from Columbus to Cumberland Gap. If the centre could be broken, they would have to evacuate Columbus and leave the road open to Nashville. Commodore Foote, with a fleet of gunboats, and General Grant, with a strong land force, moved from Cairo (cā'ro) against Fort Henry on the Tennessee. The bombardment was opened February 6, and the fort soon surrendered. Before the garrison could be cut off, they escaped by land to Fort Donelson, twelve miles distant, on the Cumberland. The fleet now returned to the Ohio and ascended the Cumberland, while Grant went across by land to help in the attack on Fort Donelson. The weather





ATTACK ON FORT DONELSON

was frightfully cold, and many of the men froze to death. The attack was kept up for three days, when the severe fire repulsed the Union fleet, Commodore Foote receiving a severe wound. The Confederates tried to cut their way out, but after a fierce fight were defeated. Grant was reinforced, and was preparing for the final assault when, on February 16, the fort surrendered with fifteen thousand men. The victory caused wide rejoicing in the North, and was the beginning of Grant's great popularity.



The Confederates were now compelled to establish a new line of defence for the Southwestern States. Beauregard, at Jackson, Tennessee, formed the centre,

Polk, at New Madrid, the left, and Albert Sidney Johnston, at Murfreesboro', the right. This new formation was an abandonment of Kentucky, and left the upper portion of Tennessee open to the Unionists. Early in March, General Curtis defeated the Confederate general, Van Dorn, at Pea Ridge, Arkansas.

**The Battle of Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing.** — The Federals ascended the Tennessee to Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing. General Grant assumed command, and General Buell at Nashville was ordered to reinforce him. Before he could do so, the Confederates attacked Grant in large numbers and with great impetuosity. Albert

Sidney Johnston, one of the ablest of military leaders, strove with tremendous vigor to drive him and his soldiers into the river.

The attack, which was made on Sunday, April 6, was a surprise to Grant, and came perilously near overwhelming him. On the edge of the river, he gathered his shattered regiments for the last stand. He held his



DEATH OF ALBERT SIDNEY JOHNSTON

enemy at bay until Buell arrived. During the night the Unionists were re-formed, and the fighting was renewed the next day. It ended with the retreat of the Confederates.

The battle of Shiloh was the second great battle of the war. The Union loss was 1735 killed, 7882 wounded, and 4044 missing. The Confederate loss was 1728 killed, 8012 wounded, and 959 missing. During the battle General Johnston had his leg shattered, and died almost immediately.

**Capture of Island No. 10 and Federal Occupation of Corinth.** — The Confederates, on retreating from Columbus, took position

at Island No. 10. Commodore Foote bombarded them for several weeks, but without effect. General Pope captured the batteries opposite, and made ready to attack the fortifications in the rear, whereupon they surrendered April 7. Beauregard fell back to Corinth, followed by General Halleck, who was now in command of the Union forces. The Confederates evacuated Corinth, which was occupied by General Halleck May 30.

**Occupation of Kentucky and Tennessee by the Federals.** — Previous to the occupation of Corinth by Halleck, the Union gunboats, May 10, attacked and defeated the Confederate ironclads in front of Memphis. The city surrendered, and the Memphis and Charleston Railway was secured. This gained Kentucky and western Tennessee for the Federals, who now held a strong line reaching from Memphis nearly to Chattanooga, which was the objective point of General Buell.

**The Battle of Perryville.** — The Confederate commander, General Bragg, at Chattanooga, moved swiftly toward Louisville, with the purpose of breaking this investment. General Buell had fallen back to Nashville, and he started on a race with Bragg for the Ohio River. Buell outran his antagonist, and arriving a day ahead, and receiving large reinforcements, marched against Bragg. They encountered at Perryville, October 8, and a terrific battle was fought. Bragg retreated in the night, taking with him his immense wagon train. This action practically cleared Kentucky of Confederate troops. Buell was superseded by Rosecrans on the 30th of October.

**Confederate Repulse at Corinth.** — The reinforcements received by Buell had been sent by Grant. Generals Van Dorn and Price advanced against Corinth, whereupon Grant, hoping to capture Price and then get back to Corinth ahead of Van Dorn, ordered Rosecrans to attack Iuka. A sharp engagement took place September 19, but Price eluded Rosecrans and joined Van Dorn. Then the two united their forces and attacked Rosecrans, now in his intrenchments at Corinth. The assault was a brave one, but was repulsed.



**Battle of Murfreesboro'.** — No fighting of account took place in this section until near the close of the year. Rosecrans gathered his forces at Nashville, from which point he advanced to meet Bragg, who was marching northward with a strong column. The two armies met at Murfreesboro', where a terrific battle opened on the last day of the year. At the close of the first day, the Confederates had the advantage. But for the magnificent ability of General George H. Thomas, the Union army would have been destroyed. The soldiers were so exhausted that little fighting took place on the second day, but it was renewed with tremendous fury on the third. A part of the left wing of the Union army was driven back, but the Confederates in turn were forced to give way. In the end Bragg retreated, and Rosecrans occupied Murfreesboro'. This engagement was the bloodiest that had yet been fought, the killed and wounded on each side numbering about nine thousand.

**Siege of Vicksburg.** — While these stirring events were going on, Grant was hammering at Vicksburg, whose fall was necessary before the Father of Waters could be opened to commerce. Grant's purpose was to advance along the Mississippi Central Railway, while Sherman descended the river from Memphis with Commodore Porter's gunboats. The campaign was spoiled by Van Dorn, who destroyed Grant's depot of supplies at Holly Springs. Not knowing of this disaster, Sherman advanced to the mouth of the Yazoo and made his attack north of Vicksburg, but was repulsed.

**The "Monitor" and the "Merrimac."** — At the beginning of hostilities, in 1861, the Unionists burned the Norfolk navy yard to prevent its falling into the hands of the secessionists. The steam frigate *Merrimac*, then the finest in the service, was scuttled and sunk. Some months later the Confederates raised her, razeed her deck, fitted her with an iron prow, and erected a roof of railway iron, which sloped at an angle of forty-five degrees. They renamed her the *Virginia*, though she will always be known as the *Merrimac*.

On the 8th of March, at about noon, this monster, her iron ribs daubed with tallow, steamed slowly out from Hampton Roads, under convoy of several gunboats. She headed toward the sloop of-war *Cumberland*, which opened upon her with her heaviest broadsides. Then took place what was never before seen in naval warfare. The enormous cannon-balls, striking the mas-



DESTRUCTION OF THE CUMBERLAND

sive greased metal, spun hundreds of feet up in the air and splashed harmlessly back into the water. The great "sea-hog" shed the terrible missiles as if they were so many paper wads.

The iron snout of the hideous monster rooted a hole under the bow of the *Cumberland*, through which the water poured like a raceway. The heroic crew continued working the useless guns, with the red flag, meaning "no surrender," fluttering defiantly

aloft, but the *Cumberland* was fast sinking, and soon went down. With her mangled hull resting on the bottom, and the dead within and about her, the Stars and Stripes still waved from her masthead above the surface.

The captain of the frigate *Congress*, seeing the fate of the *Cumberland*, ran his vessel ashore, but the ironclad, taking posi-



AN EXCITED CABINET MEETING

tion astern, raked her until the helpless crew were forced to surrender. The steamship *Minnesota*, hastening to the relief of her consorts, ran aground and received several shots from the *Merrimac*, without a chance of striking back. Having wrought so much destruction, the *Merrimac* steamed to Norfolk, intending to return on the morrow and complete her awful work.

The news caused rejoicing in Richmond and consternation in Washington and throughout the North. Many believed that,



after destroying the vessels at Fortress Monroe, the *Merrimac* would capture Washington, and perhaps lay Philadelphia and New York under tribute. President Lincoln called a cabinet meeting upon receiving the news, and Secretary Stanton expressed his fears of the worst.

Meanwhile, another ironclad, only an infant as compared with the *Merrimac*, was steaming down the coast from New York. The crew were nearly suffocated with gas, the boat leaked badly, and more than once it looked as if the *Monitor* would go down with all on board. But she struggled forward and entered Hampton Roads on the night after the visit of the *Merrimac*, and took position for the fight of the morrow.

The *Merrimac* carried ten guns, eight at the sides, one at the bow, and one at the stern, and fired shells. The *Monitor*, which was the work of the Swedish inventor, John Ericsson, was an ironclad, with a single turret and two eleven-inch Dahlgren guns, firing solid shot. She was only one-fifth the size of the *Merrimac*, and has been well compared in appearance to a cheese-box on a raft.

At daylight the following morning, the *Merrimac* appeared, accompanied by two of the gunboats. Before she could reach any of the helpless vessels, the *Monitor* darted out from behind the *Minnesota* and headed for the formidable monster. When within a hundred yards, the *Monitor* fired. The *Merrimac* replied, and the firing became quite rapid for a time, the space between the combatants varying from fifty to two hundred yards. Most of the *Merrimac's* shot glanced over the low deck of the *Monitor*, but a number struck the turret and pilot-house. The noise was so overwhelming that the gunners were almost deafened. The *Merrimac* made five attempts to run down her agile antagonist, who dodged her every time. Lieutenant Worden, commanding the *Monitor*, was blinded by a shell, which, striking the sight-hole in the forward part of the pilot-house, lifted the iron plate in front of him. Lieutenant Green took command, but the *Merrimac* now steamed laboriously back to Norfolk.



THE MONITOR AND THE MERRIMAC

The effect of this naval battle cannot be overestimated. Had not the *Monitor* providentially arrived as she did, there is no reason to doubt that the *Merrimac* would have placed Washington at its mercy, to say nothing of the Northern cities, and would have compelled a recognition of the independence of the Confederacy. The engagement ushered in the era of ironclads and



BATTLE OF ROANOKE ISLAND

ended that of wooden ships. The navies of all the nations in the world must henceforth be sheathed in armor.

The *Merrimac* and *Monitor*, which figured so prominently in the history of naval warfare, perished long ago. Upon the evacuation of Norfolk some months after the fight, the *Merrimac* was blown up, and still later the *Monitor* foundered off Cape Hatteras.

**Exploits of the Navy.** — The navy did effective service during the second year of the war. Roanoke Island was captured on



the 8th of February; Newbern, North Carolina, March 14; and Beaufort, April 25. Early in the year, a formidable expedition was fitted out against New Orleans. Captain Farragut had command of a large fleet, carrying a strong land force under General Butler. Several days' bombardment failing to reduce the



OPERATIONS IN THE GULF

forts below the city, Farragut, under a furious fire, ran his ships past them. He was compelled to meet fire-ships, an attack from the ironclad *Manassas*, and the cannonade of all the forts; but he overcame every obstacle, and, anchoring abreast of the city, received its surrender April 25. His next exploit was to pass the batteries at Vicksburg and join the fleet above the city.



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT

**The Campaign against Richmond.** — The most difficult of all the campaigns was that against Richmond. The North became impatient with McClellan's tardiness. No one doubted his ability, but, though a dashing leader in West Virginia at the opening of the war, he grew over-cautious when he assumed command of the Army of the Potomac, and was weighed down by his responsibility.

In the month of April, this grand host, one hundred thousand strong, started on its campaign against the capital of the Confederacy. Landing at Fort Monroe, it first marched toward Yorktown, where General Magruder, with a Confederate division of five thousand



THE CAMPAIGN AGAINST RICHMOND

men, was defending a line a dozen miles in length. Instead of trampling this insignificant force under foot, the Union commander halted his army in the pestilential swamps and began a siege. Miles of corduroy roads were built; heavy guns were brought from Washington, and the open fields were filled with intrenchments. The delay gave General Johnston time to reinforce the defenders. Finally McClellan was ready to open fire, whereupon Johnston withdrew toward Richmond.

The strong guard left at the forts at Williamsburg to cover the withdrawal of the baggage train was attacked by Hooker. A furious battle followed, with severe loss on both sides. The Confederates evacuated Williamsburg at night, and McClellan pursued until within the city intrenchments and only seven miles from Richmond, whose spires and tall buildings were in plain sight. The people were thrown into a panic, and the Confederate congress hastily adjourned.

At this critical juncture, McClellan was startled to learn that his communication by rail with White House Landing, his base of supplies, was threatened by a Confederate force at Hanover Court House. Not only that, but General McDowell, on his way from Fredericksburg with thirty thousand reinforcements, was endangered. Hanover Court House was captured by General Fitz John Porter, and all seemed to be going well, when General Johnston created a terrifying diversion by sending Stonewall Jackson up the Shenandoah valley to threaten Washington. This deprived McClellan of the reinforcements upon which he relied.

In obedience to orders, Jackson hurried off to the Shenandoah

valley. Reinforced by Ewell, he marched against Banks at Strasburg and drove him across the Potomac. The government, alarmed for the safety of Washington, took military possession of the railways and called upon the governors of the Northern States for militia with which to defend the capital. McDowell at Fredericksburg, Banks at Harper's Ferry, and Fremont at Franklin, were ordered to capture the terrible Jackson. They did their best, but Fremont was defeated at Cross Keys, June 8. Shields was swept aside the next day at Port Republic, and, burning his bridges behind him, Jackson hurried back to help Johnston on the Peninsula.

On the 31st of May and the 1st of June, McClellan threw his left wing across the Chickahominy. A violent storm prevented the passage of the entire army, and Johnston hurled his forces against the left wing. General Sumner succeeded in holding the enemy in check and preventing the separation of the army. In this battle General Johnston was severely wounded by an exploding shell. General Robert E. Lee succeeded him in command, and held it to the close of the war. The attack on the Union army was renewed the next day, but was repulsed.



GENERAL ROBERT E. LEE

General Lee now assumed the aggressive. General J. E. B. Stuart made a cavalry raid around the Army of the Potomac and burned the supplies along the railway connecting with the White House. McClellan was still pressing on, when he received news that Stonewall Jackson was at Hanover Court House and the Federal communications with White House were in peril. McClellan decided to change his base of supplies from the York River to the James. He was attacked by Lee at Mechanicsville, June 26, and, repelling the assault, fell back to Gaines' Mill. Porter held the bridges over the Chickahominy until night, when he withdrew to the south bank and burned them. Lee attempted



on the same night to cut off McClellan's retreat. A severe battle was fought the following day at Savage Station, and the Federals continued their retreat. Another Confederate attack was made at Fraser's Farm, but the Union lines were not broken.

The shattered Army of the Potomac turned at bay at Malvern Hill, where they had the help of the gunboats in repelling the repeated attacks of Lee. He made a number of desperate assaults, but was repulsed with great loss. McClellan withdrew undisturbed to Harrison's Landing.

Thus the campaign against Richmond ended again with failure. It was a severe discouragement to the North, but President Lincoln issued a call for three hundred thousand more men and made preparations to push the war with greater vigor than ever.

**Lee's Invasion of the North.** — General Lee now marched against Washington. The dissatisfaction with McClellan was so deep that he was ordered to transfer his army to Acquia Creek and place it under the command of General Pope, who was on the Rapidan and in charge of the defences of Washington. Lee decided to crush Pope before McClellan could reach him. Holding him in his front, therefore, he sent Stonewall Jackson around the right flank of the Union army. Pope turned upon Jackson, confident of overwhelming him, but he was assailed by the whole Confederate army, routed, and driven turbulently behind the fortifications of Washington.

In the general consternation, McClellan was recalled to the command. He started in pursuit of Lee, who had crossed the Potomac and entered Maryland. The rear of the Confederate army was overtaken at South Mountain, and the Federals entered the valley beyond. Lee drew in his scattered forces, a portion of which had captured Harper's Ferry, with eleven thousand Union prisoners, and met McClellan in battle at Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg, September 16 and 17. The engagement, which was a drawn battle, was one of the bloodiest of the war. On the night of the 17th, Lee recrossed the Potomac without molestation, the Army of the Potomac re-entering Virginia a few weeks later.

**Burnside's Disastrous Leadership.** — McClellan was now superseded by General Burnside. He crossed the Rappahannock at Fredericksburg and attacked the Confederate works (December 13). He hurled his brave men against the fortifications until the loss amounted to twelve hundred dead, ten thousand wounded, and three thousand missing. Then the hopeless attempt was abandoned, and the Union army recrossed the Rappahannock.

**Indian Troubles in Minnesota.** — During the summer of 1862, the Sioux Indians in Minnesota committed many shocking massacres. Colonel H. H. Sibley was sent against the savages with a sufficient force to defeat them and take many prisoners. The ring-leaders were tried, and thirty-nine of them, having been found guilty of horrible atrocities, were hanged at Mankato.

**TOPICS.** — The war as heretofore conducted; the work to be done; the position in the Southwest; capture of Fort Henry; of Fort Donelson; new Confederate line of defence; what the new formation was; battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing; the losses on both sides; capture of Island No. 10; occupation and evacuation of Corinth by the Confederates; occupation of Kentucky and Tennessee by the Federals; the race for Louisville; battle of Perryville; Confederate repulse at Corinth; battle of Murfreesboro'; heroism of General Thomas.

Siege of Vicksburg; Grant's plan of campaign; progress of the siege; building of the *Merrimac*; her work on the 8th of March; the news in Richmond and in Washington; the coming of the *Monitor*; her armament; John Ericsson; return of the *Merrimac*; the great battle between the *Merrimac* and the *Monitor*; what became of each of them; capture of Roanoke Island; of Newbern and Beaufort; Farragut's capture of New Orleans; the campaign against Richmond; McClellan's tardiness; siege of Yorktown; battle of Williamsburg; near approach to Richmond; Stonewall Jackson; his work in the Shenandoah valley; the fighting on the Chickahominy; wounding of General Johnston; assumption of the aggressive by General Lee; raid by General Stuart; McClellan's change of base; the fighting which followed; the final stand at Malvern Hill; McClellan's withdrawal to Harrison's Landing; failure of the campaign; Lee's invasion of the North; the crushing of Pope; recall of General McClellan to the command; the battle at Antietam Creek, near Sharpsburg; retreat of Lee; the successor of General McClellan; the disaster at Fredericksburg; the Indian troubles in Minnesota.

## CHAPTER XXXV

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 (*continued*)

### *Events of 1863*



**STRIKING off the Chains of Slavery.** — For months President Lincoln was harried by persons of opposite views. Some of his most devoted supporters insisted that he should issue, without delay, a proclamation declaring slavery at an end throughout the country. Others, equally patriotic, feared that the step would be premature and ruinous. With that faculty of knowing the right hour to do a thing, which in President Lincoln was an attribute of genius, he issued his emancipation proclamation in September, directly after the battle of Antietam, with the provision that it was to go into effect on the 1st of the following January. Thus by a stroke of the pen, as may be said, four million human beings were set free, and the foul blot of slavery on the American continent was wiped out forever.

**The Campaign in the Southwest.** — As before, we shall first study the military movements in the Southwest. The great battle of Murfreesboro' was raging when 1862 went out, and it ended, on the second day of the new year, with the retreat of General Bragg and the occupation of Murfreesboro' by Rosecrans. That officer did little until June, when he marched with his army against Bragg. In order to save his communications, Bragg evacuated Chattanooga early in September. Rosecrans was following at a leisurely pace when Bragg, who had received heavy



reinforcements, wheeled about and unexpectedly attacked Rosecrans. The Union commander saved his army, which was strung out for a distance of forty miles, and the real struggle took place at Chickamauga, just across the line in Georgia.

**The Battle of Chickamauga.** — This battle opened on the 19th of September. General Longstreet had been sent to the Southwest by General Lee, who saw the need of his help in the direction of military movements. At the close of the first day, neither army had gained an advantage. On the second, at about noon, a movement to aid the left wing of the Union army broke the general line. Quick to take advantage of the opening, Longstreet threw a division into the gap and forced the Union right and centre from the field.

It was the crisis for the Union army. If the left wing yielded, Chickamauga would be an overwhelming disaster. If it held its ground, the army would be saved. Fortunately, the dauntless Thomas commanded there and his soldiers were as brave as he. Longstreet understood the stake at issue, and drove the whole Confederate army, with mighty energy, against the iron wall. It was done again and again, but Thomas and his heroes never flinched. All through the fearful afternoon, they beat back the charging hosts until, at nightfall, the attempt was abandoned. Thus Thomas well earned the title of the "Rock of Chickamauga" by his unsurpassed valor. At night, having gathered several hundred prisoners, he fell back to Chattanooga.

**The Battle above the Clouds.** — Grant was so alarmed by the situation that he hastened to Chattanooga, where Thomas, having succeeded Rosecrans, was holding fast, though the city was so invested by the Confederates that his army was in danger of starvation. Hooker was brought from the Army of the Potomac with two corps, and Sherman hurried forward with a strong body of troops from Iuka. With the help of these reinforcements the communications of Thomas were re-established. He seized Orchard Knob on the 23d of November. The next day Hooker ordered his men to attack the fortifications on Lookout Moun-



"THE ROCK OF CHICKAMAUGA"



tain, but they were directed to stop upon reaching the elevated plateau. When this was attained, however, the enthusiastic soldiers could not be held back. They kept right on and swept the Confederates before them. At so lofty a height was this engagement fought that it is known as the "battle above the clouds."

The following morning, when the fighting was renewed, Grant watched every movement. Sherman attacked the northern flank, and Hooker charged Missionary Ridge on the south. The Con-



CHATTANOOGA

federate line was necessarily weakened in front of Orchard Knob, in order to repel these assaults. Grant directed Thomas to charge the centre, and after capturing the rifle pits at the foot of Missionary Ridge to halt and re-form. The veterans overran the pits and then, forgetting the orders to halt, dashed up the mountain side with unrestrainable enthusiasm. Grant was so thrilled by the sight that he ordered a charge along the whole line. It was executed with the same ardor as before. The Federals vied with one another in reaching the crest, which they attained without firing a shot. The guns were captured in a twinkling and turned on the flying enemy.



The victory was complete. Bragg's army was routed and the Union occupation of Chattanooga secured. Not only that but East Tennessee, where the Union sentiment was strong, was liberated and the path opened to the heart of the Confederacy.

**The Siege of Knoxville raised.** — Burnside did so effective work in Tennessee that Longstreet went thither to check him. He succeeded in shutting up Burnside in Knoxville, where it would have gone ill with him if Grant had not sent Sherman to his

relief. Before he arrived, Longstreet attacked Burnside, November 29, but was repulsed. A few days later he withdrew upon the approach of Sherman.

**The Campaign in the West — Fall of Vicksburg.** — The Mississippi could never be opened until the formidable batteries at Vicksburg were silenced. Grant set himself to do this, and had been at it for months. The Confederate batteries extended for miles along the river, and convinced that the place could not be taken from the north, Grant moved his army down the west side of the river, while his gunboats ran past the works.



THE CAMPAIGN IN THE WEST

It was a fearful gauntlet, but it was accomplished successfully, and the army was then taken across.

While Pemberton was advancing to the aid of Vicksburg, he was attacked and defeated at Port Gibson, May 1, by Grant. Learning that General Johnston was marching to the assistance of Pemberton, Grant pushed his army between the two forces. Thus he shut in Pemberton beyond the reach of help and forced back Johnston by defeating him at Jackson, May 14.

By this time, it was clear that Vicksburg could be taken only



SURRENDER OF VICKSBURG

by siege. Grant, therefore, besieged it. The garrison held out with great bravery and underwent much suffering, but their situation daily grew worse until the hour came when it was a choice between submission and starvation. The former alternative was chosen, and, on the 4th of July, General Pemberton surrendered his garrison of more than twenty thousand men, with a vast amount of arms and ammunition. The fall of Vicksburg compelled the surrender of Port Hudson. This opened the Mississippi from its source to the Gulf. One of the great tasks necessary to a restoration of the Union had been accomplished. The fall of Vicksburg, it will be remembered, took place before most of the events already told in this chapter.

**The War on the Water.** — An attempt was made to reduce Charleston in the month of April. Admiral Dupont directed the naval attack, from which much was expected. The Confederate preparations, however, were too complete and the ironclads were driven off (April 7). A landing was afterward made upon Morris Island by General Gillmore, who, in time, battered down Fort Sumter and captured Fort Wagner.

Meanwhile, the Confederate privateers were playing havoc with the Northern commerce. Many swift-sailing vessels succeeded in running the blockade, carrying out cotton and bringing back much-needed supplies. With a sea coast of three thousand miles, it was beyond the power of all the navies in the world to close every avenue of ingress and egress. The most famous of the Confederate privateers was the *Alabama*, under the command of Captain Semmes. England lent her aid in the building of these boats, for, as we have learned, she would have been pleased to see the Union destroyed. The *Alabama* sailed from Birkenhead, July 28, 1862, and for two years inflicted damage beyond estimate upon the commerce of the United States.

On the first day of the year, the Confederates recaptured Galveston. The steamer *Harriet Lane* was attacked by several gunboats, her commander killed, and several of the crew slain. The Union troops in the town were without artillery and surrendered.



This enabled the Confederates to raise the blockade in that section, and they held Galveston until the close of the war.

**The Campaign of the East — the Advance against Richmond.** — The next Union general to try his skill against Lee was Hooker, who succeeded Burnside, January 26. When Longstreet went to the Southwest with his reinforcements, he left Lee with about sixty thousand men. Hooker, having more troops, advanced against the Army of Northern Virginia.



DEATH OF STONEWALL JACKSON

With the main body he crossed the Rappahannock several miles above Fredericksburg, while Sedgwick stayed behind to secure the town. Despite his smallness of numbers, Lee divided his army, and Jackson by one of his swift, secret marches passed around Hooker with his division of twenty thousand men, and hurling it against the Union right, routed it. This compelled Hooker to make a change in the advantageous position he was holding, but the following day (May 2) he was driven from his line of battle.

Meanwhile, Sedgwick had captured Fredericksburg and was

marching to attack Lee in the rear. Lee turned, and meeting him drove him across the river. Then he confronted Hooker, who had hastened to his old position opposite Fredericksburg. Thus Lee had once more defeated the Army of the Potomac, and the campaign against Richmond terminated in another disastrous failure. The success of the Confederate leader, however, was won at the cost of his most valuable officer. Stonewall Jackson, while reconnoitring in front of his position at Chancellorsville, was fired upon by his own men, who, in the gloom of the night, mistook him for a Union officer. He was so badly wounded that he died on the following Sunday, May 10.

**Lee's Second Invasion of the North.** — So great had been the success of Lee that the Confederate authorities determined to carry the war for a second time into the North.

Marching rapidly down the Shenandoah, therefore, Lee crossed the Potomac and advanced to Chambersburg, Pennsylvania. General George C. Meade, now in command of the Army of the Potomac, followed along the eastern side of the Blue Ridge and the South Mountain. Baltimore was alarmed by a demonstration in that direction, but it proved to be only a diversion on the part of Lee, who was seeking to preserve his communications with Richmond.

**Gettysburg — the First Day.** — The vanguards of the two great armies met near the little town of Gettysburg on the 1st of July, where took place the decisive conflict of the War for the Union and one of the most fearful battles of modern times. In the first shock of arms, the Confederates gained the advantage and the Union advance was driven back. But every Union soldier was a hero, and they were under the leadership of skilful and brave officers, who comprehended the vast interests at stake. They were ready to peril life, as they had done many a time before, that their beloved country might live.

All through the warm summer night reinforcements continued to arrive, and in the bright moonlight were assigned to position, ready for the death grapple on the morrow. General Meade



LEE'S SECOND INVASION



held a consultation with his officers over the question of a change of base, but the Union leader decided to hold his ground and gather his energies for the mighty struggle close at hand.

**The Second Day.** — The fighting on the second day was terrific. The experience of the soldiers on both sides had made them veterans. No braver troops trod the earth, and none was ever commanded by better officers. The Confederates were flushed by their past successes and the Unionists were nerved by the knowledge that the supreme grapple was before them. The assailants carried works at both ends of the Union lines, and Lee determined to continue the battle. Longstreet, however, after fighting his way to Cemetery Ridge received a bloody repulse from Hancock. But Ewell was so successful on the Federal right that fears were felt for the safety of the Union army on the morrow.

**The Third Day.** — Ewell was driven out of his works early on the morning of the third day. Then followed a lull, used by Lee to prepare for the decisive assault. About one o'clock, one hundred and forty-five cannon on Seminary Ridge, opposite Meade's centre, opened on the Union lines. Meade replied with his eighty pieces of artillery on the crest of Cemetery Ridge.

For two hours the awful bombardment continued. The mountains and valleys shook under the most prodigious outburst that this continent has ever known. Then the uproar ceased, the mass of sulphurous vapor slowly lifted, and a double column of gray, numbering fifteen thousand men, — the flower of the Confederate army, — with the battle line more than a mile in length, preceded by a swarm of skirmishers, and with its wings guarded, emerged from the woods and advanced toward Cemetery Ridge.

The gleam of the muskets in the summer sun, the flutter of the red battle-flags, the precision of step, and the perfect discipline caused a murmur of admiration to run through the Union army at the thrilling picture. Nothing like it was ever before seen. The advancing column had to march a mile to reach the Union lines, and they did it as if on parade.



SECOND DAY'S FIGHTING AT GETTYSBURG

When within a quarter of a mile, a hundred guns opened. Ragged gaps were torn in the gray line, but, without faltering, the others closed up and came on with an increasing pace. The gait changed to "double quick," and then the Union infantry poured their murderous volleys into the ranks of the enemy. The supports were scattered, but a minute later Pickett and his men planted their battle-flags on the breastworks and bayoneted the cannoneers at their guns. Then they swept toward the second and stronger Union line on the crest of the hill, but a volcano of flame burst upon them from the front, right, and left. Pickett saw that a few minutes more in the focus of such a terrible fire would not leave a man alive, and he gave the order to fall back.

Back they went "all that was left of them." Some surrendered, while out of the division were lost three-fourths of the men, fourteen field officers, and three generals. No exploit in history surpassed Pickett's charge at Gettysburg. The killed, wounded, and captured in this great battle amounted to nearly fifty thousand. The Federal army was too worn to take the aggressive and Lee, after a day's rest, recrossed the Potomac and assumed position back of the Rapidan.

Gettysburg, as has been stated, was the turning-point of the war. The charge of Pickett marked the highest wave of success. The repulse of Lee was a mortal blow to the Southern cause, whose doom was settled on the 3d of July, 1863. From that day forward, the leaders simply fought for terms. The downfall of the Southern Confederacy was inevitable.

**TOPICS.** — The emancipation proclamation; when issued and what it accomplished; the battle of Murfreesboro'; movements of Rosecrans; the assault by Bragg; the battle of Chickamauga; close of the first day; the second day; the threatened disaster to the Union army; how General Thomas saved the army from destruction; the "Rock of Chickamauga"; investment of Chattanooga; how Thomas's communications were re-established; the "battle above the clouds"; the brilliant victory at Missionary Ridge; East Tennessee; raising of the siege of Knoxville; the defences at Vicksburg;



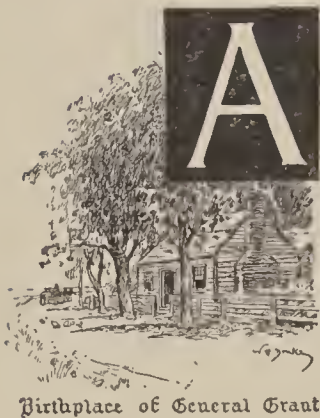
exploit by the gunboats; splendid generalship of Grant; pressing of the siege; surrender of Vicksburg; what it meant.

Admiral Dupont's attack upon Charleston; work of General Gillmore; the Confederate privateers; the *Alabama*; the aid given to the Confederacy by England; recapture of Galveston by the Confederates; advance of General Hooker against Richmond; his defeat by Lee; death of Stonewall Jackson; Lee's second invasion of the North; his march down the Shenandoah; movements of General Meade; the first day's battle at Gettysburg; the night which followed; the fighting on the second day; repulse of Longstreet by Hancock; success of Ewell; the fighting on the third day; preparation for the grand assault by the Confederates; the impressive charge of General Pickett; its crushing repulse; losses on both sides; Lee's retreat; the turning-point of the war; the inevitable end.

## CHAPTER XXXVI

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 (*continued*)

### *Events of 1864*



**A**HEAD to all the Union Armies — General Grant made Lieutenant General. — Great progress had been made in the War for the Union. The Mississippi was opened and the Confederacy cut in twain. The South was suffering not only from the stringency of the blockade, but from the exhausting drain upon her resources, which were much less than those of the North. She could not, like her antagonist, replace the losses suffered in battle. But she still had the terrible Army of Northern Virginia wielded by the genius of R. E. Lee. Until that was conquered, the struggle must continue. General Grant, through his successes in the West and Southwest, had convinced the government that he was the right man to hold supreme charge of all the military forces of the Union. Accordingly, early in the year 1864, he was made lieutenant general.

**The Campaign in the South.** — Next to Lee's army, the strongest one of the Confederacy was that of General Johnston, whose military ability was hardly second to that of the commander-in-chief. Johnston had succeeded Bragg and was at Dalton, Georgia, with fifty thousand men.



GENERAL U. S. GRANT

Sherman, with a force larger in numbers, advanced against him. Johnston fell back steadily, fighting and manœuvring for a hundred miles. He checked the Union army at Kenesaw Mountain, and, on the 10th of August, withdrew behind the intrenchments of Atlanta. Jefferson Davis, who had long been unfriendly to Johnston, now removed him from command and placed Hood in charge of the Confederate operations in the Southwest.

Hood was a brave but reckless fighter. He attacked the Union army repeatedly, but was repulsed in every instance. His losses in a few days exceeded those of Johnston during his whole campaign and brought him no advantage. In the end, he was driven out of Atlanta, which was occupied by Sherman, September 2. Thereupon Hood marched into Tennessee, expecting Sherman to follow him, and thus save Georgia from threatened invasion. Sherman, however, paid no attention to him. He had other plans in view and knew there was a man in Tennessee who would attend to Hood.

**Destruction of Hood's Army by General Thomas.** — That man was General George H. Thomas. Hood strove to strike him before he could gather his forces. Schofield was driven into Nashville and shut up with Thomas behind the fortifications. Thomas set to work to make his preparations. The government became impatient at his delay, and even Grant reproved him. But Thomas bided his time. When fully ready he marched out, December 15, with his army and attacked Hood. Thomas's management of this movement has been pronounced the most perfect of any that occurred during the war. To the minutest detail the campaign was flawless, and when he struck Hood the blow was fatal. The Confederate army was splintered to fragments. It ceased to exist as an army and the worn-out Confederacy was never able to replace it.

**Sherman's March to the Sea.** — Sherman, with his army sixty thousand strong, now faced toward the Atlantic coast, three hundred miles distant, and swung off on his memorable march to the sea. His course led straight through the granary of the Confed-



eracy. The opening of the Mississippi had cut the country in two, and he proposed to split the main section apart. The bold movement forced him to cut loose from his base of supplies and to live off the country. The march was a colossal picnic. The



GENERAL W. T. SHERMAN

Confederates had no force strong enough to check him, and he found an abundance of supplies throughout the region which, as yet, had not been visited by a hostile force. Railways were destroyed, buildings and bridges burned, slaves freed, and havoc inflicted right and left.

Five weeks after starting, during which the North was filled with misgiving for the army, it emerged upon the Atlantic coast at Savannah. The Confederates fled and Sherman occupied the city, on the 20th of December, obtaining enormous supplies and spoils. He telegraphed the fact to President Lincoln as a Christmas greeting. The march to the sea was a triumph. The Confederacy had been cut through the core a second time, had suffered vast loss, and was weaker than ever.

**The Final Campaign against Richmond.** — Early in May, Grant, with Meade in immediate



FROM ATLANTA TO THE SEA

command of the Army of the Potomac, started on the final campaign against Richmond. The Union army was far more powerful than the Confederate, while the latter, as has been said, could no longer replace its losses. The armies encountered in

the Wilderness, where for two weeks the fighting was of the most furious nature, and the losses on both sides appalling. General Longstreet was badly injured under circumstances similar to the fatal wounding of Stonewall Jackson, and General J. E. B. Stuart, the most brilliant of the cavalry leaders of the Confederacy, was mortally hurt, and died the following day in Richmond.

Grant would not be denied. It was said of him by his opponents that he never knew when he was whipped. Repelled repeatedly, he charged again and held fast with a tenacity that could not be shaken off. He continually flanked Lee, who was as often forced backward, so as to interpose between him and Richmond, and prevent the cutting off of his supplies. At Cold Harbor an impetuous attack by the Union commander was repulsed with great loss.

**Grant's Change of Plan.** — The serious check at Cold Harbor caused a change of plan on the part of Grant. Crossing the James, he advanced to Petersburg, south of Richmond. The capture of this city would have been fatal to Lee, forcing him to choose between evacuating Richmond or allowing his men to starve. Petersburg was attacked June 16, but the Federals were repulsed. The next morning the Army of Northern Virginia arrived, and again flung itself across the advance to the Confederate capital.

**Siege of Petersburg.** — Petersburg could be captured only by siege. Accordingly, Grant began the investment. A mine was exploded under an angle of the Confederate works, July 30, but the attack which followed was so mismanaged that the Unionists suffered a frightful loss of life without gaining any advantage. The year ended with the siege of Petersburg still in progress.

**Defeat of Butler.** — General Butler ascended the James River, early in May, with a strong force and landed at Bermuda Hundred. Beauregard surprised and drove him back into his intrenchments. Then Beauregard threw intrenchments across the neck which joins Bermuda Hundred with the main land, and thus, in the language of Grant, "bottled up" Butler, so as to prevent his giving any help to his superior officer.

**Operations in the Shenandoah Valley.** — While Grant was pressing Lee, he planned other movements, so as to divide the Confederate forces. Sigel was sent up the Shenandoah valley to threaten the railway communications with Richmond. He suffered a defeat, May 15, at Newmarket. His successor, General Hunter, won a victory at Piedmont, June 5, but found the enemy so strong at Lynchburg that he passed into West Virginia. This lifted Hunter out of the Shenandoah valley and placed him to the west of the Allegheny Mountains.

Hunter being away, Jubal Early moved against Washington. Wallace was defeated at Monocacy, July 9, and, four days later,



GENERAL P. H. SHERIDAN

Early appeared before the defences of the capital. Reinforcements were received from Grant in time to repel any attack by Early, who retreated across the Potomac with a large amount of plunder. His cavalry partly burned Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, because of its failure to pay the heavy tribute of half a million dollars demanded.

Sheridan now assumed charge of the Union operations in the Shenandoah valley. He attacked and defeated Early at Winchester, September 19. Early's forces had been weakened by reinforcements sent to Lee. Three days after, Early was driven out of his trenches at Fisher's Hill, and still further up the valley.

Sheridan so devastated the section that he declared a crow could not find subsistence there. While he was absent, Early defeated the Federals at Cedar Creek, October 19. Sheridan was at Winchester, "twenty miles away," when he heard the sound of firing. Leaping into the saddle he thundered up the valley, rallied his panic-stricken soldiers, attacked the Confederates, who were plundering the Union camp, and routed them with great loss.



**The Red River Expedition.** — General Banks, who was in command at New Orleans, was ordered, early in the spring, to conduct an expedition into the interior of Louisiana. His purpose was to secure some of the immensely valuable stores of cotton. Commodore Porter at the same time set out with a large fleet of gunboats to force his way up Red River. Little opposition was met, and Banks pushed on to Shreveport. At Sabine Cross



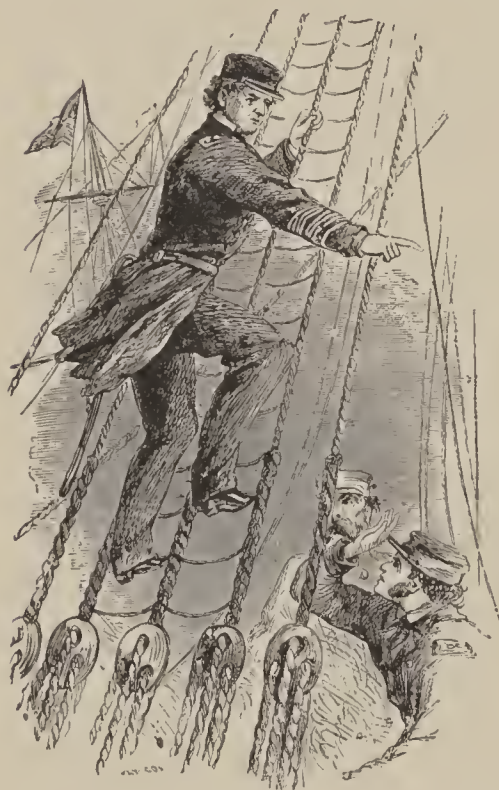
RED RIVER EXPEDITION

Roads, he was attacked by General Dick Taylor, April 8, and defeated. Retreating to Pleasant Hill, he received enough reinforcements to repulse the enemy, but continued retreating until he reached New Orleans, where he was relieved of his command.

Meanwhile, Commodore Porter had a narrow escape with his gunboats. While trying to keep up with Banks's retreat, the river fell so rapidly that his fleet was brought to a standstill. It looked as if he would have to blow up the boats to save them from falling into the hands of the Confederates. Colonel Bailey,

however, was ingenious enough to build a number of wing dams, by which the current was raised and the boats floated into deeper water. The Red River expedition was a failure from beginning to end.

**The War on the Water.** — With all the stringency of the blockade, a good many Confederate cruisers succeeded in slipping in and out of Wilmington, Mobile, and other ports. In Mobile especially the Confederates were defiant. They built a number



ADMIRAL FARRAGUT AT MOBILE

of ironclads and armed vessels, and boasted that they would raise the blockade. Admiral Farragut attacked the defences, August 5, and, after a severe engagement, reduced the forts and effectually closed the port against any further blockade running. Wilmington was a point where the blockade runners were very daring and successful. Commodore Porter bombarded the forts while General Butler led the land forces. The attack continued through December 24 and 25, when Butler went back to Fort Monroe, convinced that the fort could not be taken by assault. Commodore Porter thought differently and asked

to be allowed to try it again, aided the second time by General Terry. After a brave defence, the garrison surrendered January 15, 1865.

**Destruction of the "Alabama" and other Confederate Privateers.** — While the famous Confederate privateer *Alabama* was at Cherbourg, France, Captain Semmes challenged Captain Winslow, of the United States steamer *Kearsarge*, to come out and fight him. Winslow accepted the challenge, and, putting his vessel in the best trim possible, sailed out to the proper limit from shore.



SINKING OF THE ALABAMA

Ten thousand spectators lined the beach during the battle, which took place Sunday, June 19.

The two vessels steamed round a common centre, from a quarter to a half mile apart, firing into each other. The aim of the *Kearsarge* was the more accurate and inflicted so much damage that at the end of little more than an hour, when Captain Semmes was beginning his eighth circuit, he saw his vessel was sinking. He headed for French waters, but receiving several more shots, hoisted a signal of distress. Semmes threw his sword into the water and leaped overboard just before the *Alabama* sank. An English yacht, the *Deerhound*, cruising near, picked him up, together with thirteen officers and twenty-six men, while the boats of the *Kearsarge* rescued the rest.<sup>1</sup>

The *Georgia*, another Confederate privateer, was seized off the coast of Portugal; the *Florida*, at Bahia, Brazil; and the *Albe-*

<sup>1</sup> The *Kearsarge* was wrecked on the night of February 2, 1894, off Roncador Reef, while on a voyage from Port-au-Prince, Haiti, to Bluefields, Nicaragua, and proved a total loss.



*marle* (a huge ironclad, held in great dread by the Federals) was sunk at the mouth of the Roanoke by the daring exploit of Lieutenant Cushing. The *Shenandoah* continued her career of destruction for months after the war had closed, she being in waters so distant that her captain did not learn for a long time of the cessation of hostilities.

**Admission of West Virginia and Nevada.** — That part of the Old Dominion now known as West Virginia was Union in its senti-



BLOWING UP OF THE ALBEMARLE

ments from the first. The necessary steps were taken for the erection of a new State, which was admitted to the Union June 19, 1863. Nevada (whose name is a Spanish word signifying "snow-covered mountain") became a State October 31, 1864. It formed a part of the territory acquired from Mexico by the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, being the third State carved from that cession. At first it was a part of California Territory, and later a portion of Utah. Upon its erection into a Territory, March 2, 1861, its area was somewhat less than at present.

**The Presidential Election of 1864.** — The Democrats placed General McClellan in nomination for the presidency. His patriotism would not permit any misunderstanding of his sentiments regarding the war. He insisted upon its vigorous prosecution and differed with the administration only as to the right policy to be followed. President Lincoln was renominated, with Andrew Johnson of Tennessee as the candidate for the vice presidency. Their election was by so decisive a majority that it was apparent to all that the people of the North insisted upon pressing the war until the Union was fully restored.

**TOPICS.** — The progress made in the War for the Union; the exhaustion of the South; what she still had; the promotion of General Grant; the Confederate army in the Southwest; the advance of General Sherman against General Johnston; superseding of Johnston by Hood; characteristics of the latter; his course; the result; the course of Sherman; destruction of Hood's army by Thomas; Sherman's march to the sea; his course; his march through the core of the Confederacy; his arrival at Savannah; Sherman's Christmas greeting to President Lincoln; Sherman's triumph.

Grant's final campaign against Richmond; the two hostile armies; the fighting in the Wilderness; wounding of General Longstreet; death of General Stuart; Grant's persistency; his change of plan; his check at Cold Harbor; repulse of the Union attack upon Petersburg; siege of Petersburg; close of the year; defeat of General Butler; the operations in Shenandoah valley; advance of Jubal Early against Washington; the battle of Monocacy; retreat of Early; partial burning of Chambersburg; Sheridan in the valley; his defeat of Early at Winchester; at Fisher's Hill; devastation of the section; defeat of the Federals at Cedar Creek; Sheridan's memorable victory; the Red River expedition; the battle at Sabine Cross Roads; at Pleasant Hill; the danger of Commodore Porter and his fleet; how it was saved from destruction; Admiral Farragut's victory at Mobile; failure to capture the forts at Wilmington, North Carolina; success of General Terry; destruction of the *Alabama* by the *Kearsarge*; seizure of the *Georgia*; the *Florida*; Lieutenant Cushing's sinking of the *Albatross*; career of the *Shenandoah*; erection of West Virginia into a separate State; admission of Nevada; its early history; the presidential election of 1864.

## CHAPTER XXXVII

LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1861-1865 (*concluded*)

*Events of 1865*

Arlington  
House



Home of General R. E. Lee

**W**ANING Fortunes of the Confederacy — Sherman's Northward March. — The opening of this year saw the end of the war at hand. The Confederate congress, on February 5, made General Lee commander-in-chief of all the forces arrayed against the Union. One of his first acts was to restore General Johnston to the command of the army still disputing Sherman. It included all the troops in Georgia, South Carolina, and Florida. When Sherman was ready to leave Savannah, of which he took possession at the close of the previous year, he had an army of seventy thousand men. Leaving a strong force at the city, he started northward, on the 1st of February. Columbia surrendered on the 17th and was burned the following night, though by whom has never been clearly proven. Charleston was fired and evacuated the next day.

Johnston made the best fight he could. He gave Sherman a hard struggle at Averysboro' and Bentonville, but could not beat back the superior force. At Goldsboro' Sherman joined Schofield, who had marched thither from Wilmington, and Terry, who had come from Newbern. This increased the army to one hundred thousand men. Feeling safe, Sherman placed Schofield in charge and met Grant at City Point on the 27th of March. They



held a consultation and arrived at an understanding as to the closing operations.

**Grant's Final Campaign.** — Grant never loosened his grip upon Lee. An attempt to turn the Confederate right, on February 5, was repulsed, though the Federals gained several additional miles of territory. Lee's army, numbering only thirty-five thousand men, was forced to cover a line forty miles in length. It was inevitably weak at many points.

The situation was becoming desperate. Lee's plan was to fall back and unite with Johnston. Grant set to work to prevent the junction. To hide his purpose, Lee furiously assailed Grant's right at Fort Steadman. The assault was a failure and the Confederates lost three thousand men. Sheridan now joined Grant, who determined to force Lee to the wall. He fixed on the 29th of March for an attack at all points. The movement began that day, but the rain descended in torrents on the 30th and nothing could be done. On the 31st Lee attacked the Federals and gained some advantage.

Lee's next attack was upon Sheridan at Five Forks. He drove him back, but the Federals rallied, flanked the Confederates, and recovered the ground they had lost. Warren's corps united with Sheridan, who renewed his attack upon the Confederates and drove them toward Petersburg.

Grant opened a cannonade along his entire front, April 1, and an advance the following day broke the Confederate line at several points. Before the sun rose, April 2, the whole Confederate front was assailed by the Union army. The lines were broken again and Lee, with his small army, fled southward. The



SHERMAN'S MARCH NORTH

Confederates, however, never lost their wonderful courage. They plucked the buds of the branches and fell asleep with the smoking muskets in their hands. Their officers prodded them with their swords and they roused and went to fighting again. Many of them seemed to be fighting in their sleep. No men ever fought more bravely, and, though outnumbered, they showed no signs of wavering or surrender.

Lee reached Amelia Court House, thirty-eight miles west of Petersburg, on the 4th of April. There he expected to receive food for his famishing men. An immense railway train, loaded with provisions, soon came in sight from the direction of Richmond, but to the dismay of the soldiers it sped past without slackening speed. The distressed commander sent out detachments to scour the country for food. They came back with none, for none existed.

**Evacuation of Richmond.** — On Sunday, April 2, while Jefferson Davis was sitting in his pew at church, a messenger hurriedly entered and handed him a telegram. It was from Lee, telling him that his outer lines had been forced and he could hold Petersburg but a few hours longer. This meant the fall of Richmond. The inhabitants, upon learning the news, were thrown into a panic. Scenes of indescribable confusion followed, and continued through that night and the following day. Warehouses were burned, stores broken open, and the convicts in the penitentiary, having escaped because of the flight of their guards, joined the frantic throng and plundered right and left. The flames spread, and thirty squares were laid in ashes. Amid the explosion of shells, the roar of the conflagration, the strangling smoke and cinders, the hoarse shouts of men, and the cries of women and children the Union army arrived. Order was soon restored. The plundering was stopped, the fire checked, and something like quiet came to the once proud city, now prostrate in sackcloth and ashes.

**The Surrender at Appomattox.** — Despite the woful disappointment at Amelia Court House, Lee and his soldiers kept up their



EVACUATION OF RICHMOND



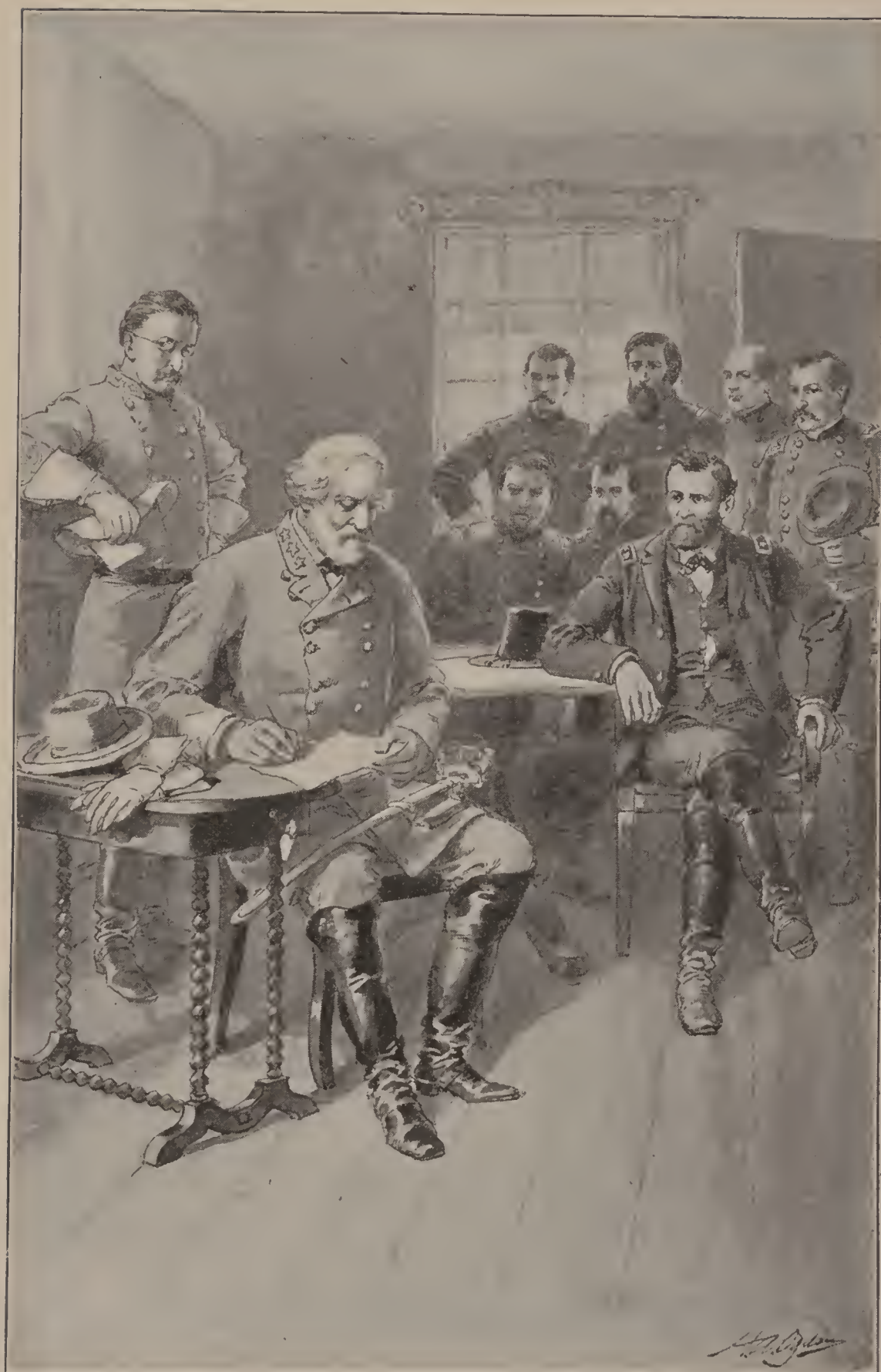
retreat, crossing the Appomattox, on the 6th of April, at High Bridge. There the commander called a council of war, at which the majority agreed that the time had come to surrender, but Lee would not yet consent. The retreat continued.

No pen can fitly describe the events of those few days. It was fighting continually. The roads were choked with blazing wagons to prevent their capture; ammunition trains were blown up and the air was full of bursting shells and exploding powder. At Paine's Cross Roads, the Union cavalry burned one hundred and eighty wagons and captured five guns. At another place, Custer destroyed four hundred wagons and took sixteen guns. Ewell's brigade was cut off, surrounded, and compelled to surrender. This was a loss of six thousand men to Lee's army.

Lee pushed on, and, finding it impossible to join Johnston, made for the mountains. But Grant was on the alert, and closed in from every direction. He sent a proposal to Lee to surrender, offering generous terms and striving to impress upon him the uselessness of further shedding blood. The correspondence continued for a couple of days. Finally, at Appomattox Court House, Lee saw that the end had come. He met General Grant on the afternoon of April 9, and surrendered what was left of the Army of Northern Virginia. The soldiers were paroled and allowed to go home, the boys in blue gladly sharing the contents of their haversacks with their starving brethren in gray, who had fought them so long and so well.

**Assassination of President Lincoln.** — The month of April, 1865, was a fateful one in the history of our country. The news of the fall of Richmond and the surrender of Lee filled the North with rejoicing, and the event was celebrated everywhere. It is safe to say that many of those who had fought the most bravely in the South drew a sigh of thankfulness when the blessed end at last came.

On the evening of April 14, President Lincoln was seated, with his wife and some friends, in a box at Ford's Theatre in Washington. A little past ten o'clock, John Wilkes Booth, an



LEE'S SURRENDER AT APPOMATTOX

actor whose overweening conceit almost approached insanity, stealthily entered the box from the rear and mortally wounded the President with a pistol shot, leaping upon the stage and making his escape before he could be arrested. The wounded President was unconscious, and being carried across the street to a house, died at twenty-two minutes past seven the next morning.

The assassin rode thirty miles into Maryland before he dared stop to have his sprained ankle dressed. He crossed the Potomac and was overtaken by his pursuers near Bowling Green. He turned at bay in a barn, and, refusing to surrender, the building was fired. Revealed by the light of the flames, one of the soldiers shot and fatally wounded him through a crevice, the wretched fugitive dying shortly afterward.

No man since Washington was more sincerely mourned than President Lincoln. Those who had been his strongest political opponents now united in praise of one of the greatest Americans and purest patriots that ever lived. Even in the South his death was deplored, for instinctively that desolated section appreciated the broad charitable humanity of the man who pitied them in their defeat and would have been more kindly in his treatment of them than any other man or body of men would have dared to be. Among the blows struck against the South, the killing of Abraham Lincoln was one of the severest.

**Collapse of the Southern Confederacy.** — General Johnston surrendered his army to General Sherman, April 26, receiving the same generous terms that were given to Lee and his men. Dick Taylor, commanding the rest of the Confederate forces east of the Mississippi, submitted early in May, as did all the naval forces of the Confederacy then blockaded in the Tombigbee River. The scattered troops remaining had all surrendered before the close of the month.

**Capture and Release of Jefferson Davis.** — When Jefferson Davis received the startling telegram from General Lee, April 2, he and the leading Confederate officials hastened from the city and



fled southward. Their purpose was to escape beyond the limits of the United States. But on the 10th of May, when near Irwinsville, Georgia, Davis and his companions were captured by a squad of Union cavalry. He was imprisoned in Fort Monroe to await his trial on charge of treason. The trial was postponed from time to time until, as passion cooled, the prisoner was released on May 13, 1867, and the prosecution was dropped in February, 1869.

**TOPICS.**—Action of the Congress; restoration of General Johnston to command; Sherman's northward march; his meeting with Grant; desperate situation of Lee; the iron grip of Grant; his activity; the assault April 2; the wonderful courage of the Confederates; Lee at Amelia Court House; the momentous telegram received by Jefferson Davis while in church April 2; scenes attending the evacuation of Richmond; the continued retreat of Lee; the incessant attacks of the Union troops; the final surrender at Appomattox Court House; assassination of President Lincoln; death of the assassin; general mourning over the death of the President; collapse of the Southern Confederacy; capture and release of Jefferson Davis.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** *Union.*—**Robert Anderson** was born in Kentucky in 1805, was graduated from West Point, and served in the Black Hawk, Florida, and Mexican wars. He was placed in command of the Union troops in the Charleston forts in November, 1860. After his return north, following the surrender of Fort Sumter, he was made a brigadier general and assigned to a command in Kentucky. His health had been delicate for several years, and he took no further important part in the war. He died in 1871.

**Joseph Bailey**, who saved Commodore Porter's fleet from destruction during the Red River expedition of 1864, was a Wisconsin military engineer born in 1827. His plan for the rescue of the fleet was ridiculed by the other engineers, but its success brought him the thanks of congress and the brevet rank of brigadier general. He died in 1867.

**Nathaniel P. Banks** was born in Massachusetts in 1816. He learned the trade of a machinist, but his ability caused his election to congress, where he remained from 1853 to 1857. In 1855 he was chosen speaker on the one hundred and thirty-third ballot, after a contest lasting nearly three months. He was governor of Massachusetts in 1858, 1859, and 1860. The national government, like the Confederacy, made the mistake, at the beginning of the war, of appointing politicians and public men to command, when they were lacking in military experience and ability. General Banks was made a major general, and was never able as such to render any important service to his

country. He was a congressman from 1865 to 1873, from 1877 to 1879, and from 1889 to 1891. He died in September, 1894.

**Don Carlos Buell** was born in 1818, was graduated at West Point, and served in the Mexican war. We have learned of his important services in the civil war. He was an able leader, who suffered at times from harsh criticism. Probably no graver and more serious man than Buell was in either army. It was said by officers who had been associated with him for years that they never saw him smile under any circumstances.

**Ambrose E. Burnside** was born in 1824, and was graduated from West Point at the age of twenty-three. Having invented a breech-loading rifle, he resigned from the army and entered into business. He commanded a brigade at the battle of Manassas, or first Bull Run, and was a corps commander of the Army of the Potomac at the close of the war. He was governor of Rhode Island 1866-1868, and United States senator 1875-1881, dying in the last-named year.

**Benjamin E. Butler** was born in 1818, and was graduated from Waterville College, Maine, in 1830. His marked ability brought him much success as a lawyer at Lowell, Massachusetts, where he made his home. He served in the state legislature, and always manifested an interest in military matters. He entered the national service, at the opening of the war, as brigadier general and was soon made a major general. He showed no special skill as a military leader, furnishing another proof that the successful soldier, as a rule, must be trained to his profession. After his disaster at Big Bethel, a number of slaves took refuge within his lines. In answer to the demand of their owners, Butler replied that slaves were "contraband of war." The expression was a happy one, which helped to make him famous. His stern rule in New Orleans kept out the yellow fever and earned the undying hatred of the secessionists. He was a congressman from Massachusetts 1867-1875 and 1877-1879, and prominent in the proceedings which brought about the impeachment of Andrew Johnson. He was a member at different times of all the leading political parties, and in 1882 was Democratic governor of Massachusetts. In 1884, he was presidential candidate on the Greenback and Anti-Monopoly ticket, but received only an insignificant vote. His greatest success was achieved as a lawyer. He died in 1893.

**Samuel R. Curtis**, who won the Union victory at Pea Ridge, Arkansas, was born in 1807, and was an Ohio lawyer, with a taste for military matters which made him adjutant general of militia in 1846, when he began his service in the Mexican war. He was a congressman in 1861 at the time of his appointment as brigadier general, and, after Pea Ridge, was in command at Fort Leavenworth, served as a United States commissioner to negotiate treaties with various Indian tribes, and died in 1866.

**William B. Cushing**, born in 1842, made a striking record during the civil war. He captured the first prize, and, by one of the most daring of exploits, sunk the formidable ram *Albemarle*, whose presence in the Roanoke River was a menace to General Grant's operations south of Richmond. Cushing distinguished himself again at Fort Fisher, and but for a mental affection which seized him, must have attained the highest honors in the navy. He died in 1874.

**George A. Custer**, born in 1839, was graduated from West Point, and immediately entering the army distinguished himself by his dashing bravery and fearlessness, as well as his fine military ability. He was made a general in the regular army, but in a headlong attack upon the Sioux Indians, at the Little Big Horn River, in June, 1876, he and all his command were slain.

**Abner Doubleday**, born in New York in 1819, and educated at West Point, as we have learned, fired the first gun from Fort Sumter, in reply to the attack by Beauregard. He distinguished himself at Antietam, Fredericksburg, Chancellorsville, and Gettysburg, winning a promotion to a generalship. He resigned his commission in 1873 and died twenty years later.

**John Ericsson**, born in Sweden in 1803, early gave indications of his marvellous inventive powers. He came to this country in 1839, and soon attracted attention by his remarkable inventions, most of which were connected with engines and naval equipments. His construction of the *Monitor*, which beat off the terrible *Merrimac*, was of incalculable service to the cause of the Union. He was active in making new inventions up to his death, which took place in his eighty-seventh year.

**David G. Farragut**, born in 1801, entered the naval service when but nine years old. Only a boy in the war of 1812, he safely performed several important missions intrusted to him. He was a Southerner by birth, but threw all his energies into the cause of the Union, in which he won a distinction that made him the foremost of modern naval heroes. As a reward for his great services, the office of vice admiral was created for him in December, 1864, and that of admiral in 1866. He died in 1870.

**Andrew H. Foote**, born in 1806, entered the navy at the age of sixteen. His principal service, previous to the civil war, was in suppressing the African slave trade. He was a devout Christian, and one of the bravest of men. His fine service brought his appointment as rear admiral in 1863, but he died in that year from a severe wound in the foot, received while fighting for his country.

**Quincy A. Gillmore**, born in Ohio in 1825, was a graduate from West Point, and began his services in the war for the Union as chief of engineers in the Port Royal expedition in 1861. His excellent work at Charleston made him a major general. He died in 1888.

**Ulysses S. Grant**, the foremost general in the war for the Union, was born at Point Pleasant, Ohio, April 27, 1822. He was graduated from West Point



in 1843, with a standing that was only fair. His services in the war with Mexico caused him to be brevetted captain, but he resigned his commission in 1854 and engaged in business with moderate success. He was among the first to volunteer, and, by his great ability, won the highest military honors and the gratitude of his country. He did what no other Union general was able to do, — conquered Lee and brought the gigantic struggle to a triumphant conclusion. As we shall note further on, he received the unanimous Republican nomination for the presidency in 1868 and served for two terms. After long-continued and intense suffering from a cancer at the root of his tongue, he died at Mount Gregor, New York, July 23, 1885.

**Henry W. Halleck**, born in New York in 1815, was graduated from West Point, and was identified with the early political and military movements in California. At the outbreak of the civil war he was appointed a major general, with command of the department of Missouri. When hostilities ceased, he was placed in charge of the Pacific division, which he retained until 1869, when he was transferred to the division of the south, where he remained until his death in 1872.

**Joseph Hooker**, born in Massachusetts in 1814, was graduated from West Point and won distinction in Mexico. Although he failed when pitted against Lee, he had few if any superiors as a commander of a division or corps, his energetic valor winning for him the name of "Fighting Joe." His principal services have been already described. He received the brevet of major general in the regular army in 1865, and retired three years later, dying in 1879.

**Andrew Johnson**, seventeenth President, was born at Raleigh, North Carolina, December 29, 1808. His parents were extremely poor, and until well grown he did not know his alphabet. He was apprenticed to a tailor and when a young man removed to Tennessee, where he was married before he reached the age of twenty. His wife was one of the noblest of women and assisted him in his studies. His own energy and ability soon brought him forward. He filled several local offices, was elected to the state legislature and served in congress in 1843-1853. In the last-named year he became governor of Tennessee, and remained until 1857, when he was chosen United States senator. He was a pronounced Democrat, but an uncompromising Unionist, because of which President Lincoln appointed him military governor of Tennessee during the stormy days of 1862. It was as a reward for his determined stand for the Union, that he was placed on the presidential ticket with Lincoln in 1864. We shall learn of his administration in the following pages. After the close of his term he lived in retirement most of the time, and died July 31, 1875.

**George B. McClellan** was born in Philadelphia in December, 1826, and was graduated with distinction from West Point in 1846. He served in the

Mexican war, and was afterward instructor at West Point. He then became prominent as a railway engineer and president. At the beginning of the civil war, he was looked upon as the greatest of all the commanders. With his unquestioned skill, his excess of caution brought his most promising campaigns to naught. In West Virginia he was a dashing, headlong fighter; at the head of the Army of the Potomac, he was hesitating, and shrank from "taking chances." The bluff Secretary Stanton said of him: "If I should give him one million men, he would declare that the rebels had two million, and then sit down in the mud and refuse to move until he had three million." After Antietam he was placed on waiting orders. He resigned in 1864, and, as we have learned, was a candidate against President Lincoln in that year. He was Democratic governor of New Jersey 1878-1881, and died in 1885.

**Irvin McDowell** was born in 1818, was graduated from West Point, and served in the Mexican war. The failure at Bull Run reacted upon his reputation, though he commanded a corps in Virginia, in 1862, and took part in a number of leading battles. He was promoted to major general in 1872, retired in 1882, and died in 1885.

**George G. Meade** was born in Spain in 1815, but, since his father was the American minister at the time, the son was as much an American as if born on Bunker Hill. He was educated at West Point, and took part in the frontier wars and in Mexico. After the great battle of Gettysburg he was made brigadier general and then major general. He commanded several departments, and died in 1872.

**John Pope**, born in 1823, was graduated from West Point and took part in the principal battles south of the Rio Grande in the war with Mexico. His success in the Southwest led to his appointment to the command of the Army of the Potomac, where he suffered disastrous reverses. He was glad to be relieved of the responsibility and to undertake the task of quieting the Minnesota Indians. He commanded a department after the war, retired in 1886, and died in 1892.

**David Dixon Porter**, born in 1813, was the son of David Porter, the naval hero of the war of 1812. The son accompanied his father on many of his voyages, and became a midshipman in 1829. He served against Mexico, and was active in the war for the Union. He was promoted to vice admiral in 1866 and to admiral in 1870, being at that time superintendent of the naval academy at Annapolis. He wrote a number of naval works and several novels. He died in 1891.

**Fitz-John Porter** was born in 1822, and educated at West Point, from which he went almost directly into the Mexican war. He served well, but in the civil war was cashiered for his failure properly to support Pope in his second Bull Run campaign. By an act of congress, in 1886, the decision was reversed and he was restored to his rank as colonel in the army.

**William S. Rosecrans** was born in 1819, and also educated at West Point. Before the breaking out of the civil war he was a professor at the military academy, and entered the service as colonel of Ohio volunteers. He won the battle of Rich Mountain in West Virginia, in 1861, and, as successor of McClellan, gained a victory at Carnifex Ferry in the autumn of the same year. After his defeat at Chickamauga, he was placed on waiting orders and resigned in 1867. He was appointed minister to Mexico in 1868, and represented California in congress 1881-1885, afterward serving as register of the United States treasury from 1885 to 1893.

**William T. Sherman**, born in 1820, was graduated twenty years later from West Point. He took part in the Seminole war and in the war with Mexico. He left the army in 1853, and was engaged in business for several years. He was superintendent of a military academy in Louisiana at the outbreak of the war, and immediately resigned upon the secession of the State. He was one of the few who comprehended the character of the great struggle which impended, and for a time refused to offer his services until the government would call out a half million men or more. He was a colonel and commanded a brigade at the first battle of Bull Run. His ability and service caused his rapid promotion, and he took a leading part in suppressing the rebellion. He was made lieutenant general in 1866, and succeeded Grant as general in 1869. He retired because of age in 1883. He was a fine soldier, popular everywhere, outspoken, honest, and of stainless character. He died on February 14, 1891, one day after the death of Admiral Porter.

**Philip H. Sheridan**, one of the three greatest generals of the war, was born at Albany (though it has been claimed that his birthplace was in Ohio) in 1831, and was graduated in 1853 from West Point. He came from the Pacific coast in 1861 with the avowed determination to win a captaincy, if the war would only last long enough. He won all the military honors that came to Grant and Sherman, for he proved himself a born soldier, of dauntless personal courage, with the highest ability. He died August 5, 1888.

**John M. Schofield** was born in 1831, and was graduated from West Point in the class with Sheridan. At the close of the war he was sent on a special mission to France. He was secretary of war in 1868-1869. President Grant had great respect for his scholarship, and made him superintendent of West Point in 1876. He held the office for the usual term of five years. At the death of Sheridan in 1888, Schofield succeeded him as commander-in-chief of the army, retiring in 1895.

**John Sedgwick** was born in 1813, and, after his graduation from West Point, served in the Seminole and Mexican wars. He commanded a brigade at the beginning of the war and a division at Fair Oaks, on the Peninsula, and at Antietam. He had charge of a corps at Chancellorsville and the



left wing at Gettysburg. In the furious fighting in the Wilderness, he was shot and instantly killed by a sharp-shooter.

**Franz Sigel** was born in Germany in 1824, and was a leader in the rebellion in Baden in 1848. He came to this country in 1852, and was among the first to enlist in the cause of the Union. He fought well in Missouri and Arkansas, and commanded a corps at the second battle of Bull Run. He was wonderfully skilful in retreating, but hardly met the high hopes entertained of his ability as a military leader.

**Alfred H. Terry** was one of the few successful military leaders appointed from civil life. He was born in 1827, and became a lawyer, but always felt an interest in military matters. His successful storming of Fort Fisher in January, 1865, made him a brigadier general in the regular army. His next exploit was the capture of Wilmington. He was made a major general in 1886, and retired in 1888.

**George H. Thomas** was born in Virginia in 1816, and was educated at West Point. He began fighting for his country against the Seminoles, and distinguished himself in the Mexican war. His matchless services in the civil war have been narrated. To this splendid hero congress gave its thanks, and he was made major general in the regular army. After serving as departmental commander, he died in 1870.

**Charles Wilkes** was born in 1798. As lieutenant and commander of the squadron, he sailed on an exploring expedition through the Pacific and in the Antarctic regions, being absent from 1838 to 1842. He was made captain in 1855, and became the hero of the hour in 1861 by his capture of Mason and Slidell, the Confederate commissioners, though the government was compelled to disavow the act. He became a commodore in 1862, and, retiring two years later, was made rear admiral on the retired list.

**John A. Winslow** was born in Massachusetts in 1811, and entered the navy at the age of sixteen. He did good service in the Mexican war, and became famous through his sinking of the *Alabama*, the particulars of which we have learned. He died in 1873.

**John L. Worden**, commander of the *Monitor* in its famous battle with the *Merrimac*, was born in 1818. For his services in the important battle named he was thanked by congress and made a commander. He was afterward engaged in enforcing the blockade, and helped in the attack on Charleston in 1863. He was promoted to commodore in 1868, rear admiral in 1872, and was superintendent of the Naval Academy from 1870 to 1874, being retired in 1886. He died in 1897.

**Confederate.** — **P. Gustave T. Beauregard** was born in Louisiana in 1818, and was graduated from West Point in 1838. He served in the engineers, and was superintendent of the Military Academy in 1861, when he resigned to

enter the service of the Confederacy. We have learned of the part he played in fighting against the Union. He surrendered with Johnston in April, 1865, became one of the managers of the Louisiana state lottery, and died in 1893.

**Braxton Bragg**, born in 1817, was graduated at the age of twenty from West Point. He did good service in Mexico, and joined the Confederacy early in 1861. His decisive defeat by Grant in the battles around Chattanooga led to his removal from command, but he was in the field again toward the close of the war. He died in 1876.

**Jefferson Davis**, the president of the Southern Confederacy, was born in Kentucky in 1808. He was graduated from West Point in 1828, and served in the Black Hawk war, but left the army and became a cotton planter in Mississippi, from which State he was elected to congress in 1845. He resigned the following year to act as colonel in the Mexican war. He achieved his greatest fame in Mexico in the battle of Buena Vista. At a critical point in the battle he formed his regiment in the shape of a V, and, receiving the charge of the enemy, closed in upon them and captured the whole body. This exploit was made so much of that a Richmond paper, in criticising the course of the president in military matters, said: "When the Confederacy passes away, its motto will be 'Died of the letter V.'" He represented Mississippi in the United States senate 1847-1851 and 1857-1861, and was secretary of war through Pierce's administration. Upon the secession of his State in 1861, he resigned his seat in the senate, and, as stated elsewhere, became provisional president of the Confederacy in February, 1861, and was elected president and inaugurated February 22, 1862. When the proceedings against him were dropped in 1867, he removed to Memphis, and later to an estate in Mississippi. He died in New Orleans, December 6, 1889.

**Jubal A. Early** was born in Virginia in 1815, was a graduate of West Point, and adopted law as a profession, but entered the army as major in 1847, serving to the close of the Mexican war. He was a strong secessionist, and fought as a colonel at the first battle of Bull Run and Williamsburg. He was a brigadier general at Fredericksburg and Gettysburg, and was removed by Lee because of his defeats in the Shenandoah valley by Sheridan. Early was one of the few who refused to acknowledge the results of the war. He would not accept "reconstruction," and mourned the failure of the struggle for Southern independence. He was associated with Beauregard in the management of the Louisiana state lottery, and died in 1894.

**Richard S. Ewell** was born in 1817, and, after his graduation from West Point, served in the Mexican war. He was a brigadier general at Bull Run, and became a major general in the Shenandoah campaign. He succeeded to the command of Jackson's corps, upon the death of that leader, and surrendered at the close of the war, when further resistance was hopeless. He died in 1872.

**Thomas J. Jackson** was born in Virginia in 1824, was graduated from West Point, and saw service in the Mexican war. He became a professor in the Virginia Military Institute, where his strict puritanical manners and severe methods were anything but acceptable to the cadets under his charge. He became one of the most striking figures of the civil war. He commanded a brigade at the battle of Bull Run. When the Union troops were forcing back the Confederates, General Bee rushed up to Jackson with the news. "Then," coolly replied Jackson, "we will give them the bayonet." Turning to his men, Bee remarked: "There's Jackson standing like a stone wall," and from that incident he received the name by which he will always be best remembered. Jackson was a veritable thunderbolt of war. He was impetuous, dashing, and shrank from no obstacle or risk when a duty was assigned to him. It may be said of him that he was the right arm of General Lee. He was devoutly religious, and his death, when shot through mistake by his own men, was the severest blow the Confederacy had received up to that time.

**Joseph E. Johnston** was born in Virginia in 1807, and was graduated from West Point in 1829. Thus he saw many years of service before entering the Confederacy as senior major general. It seemed to be his fate to be wounded in almost every battle in which he took part, for he was injured ten different times, his severe wounding at Williamsburg, when the fragment of a shell broke several ribs and hurled him from his horse, giving the command to General Lee. The dislike of Jefferson Davis for Johnston dated from before the civil war, and the Confederate president was severely criticised for his treatment of one of his ablest officers. Johnston and Sherman became intimate friends after the surrender of the former to the latter. Johnston represented Virginia in congress, and died in 1891.

**Robert E. Lee**, the foremost general of the Confederacy, was born in Virginia in 1807, and was the son of "Light Horse Harry," the intimate friend of Washington. It was said that Cadet Lee passed through West Point without a demerit, and he was graduated second in his class. He distinguished himself in Mexico, and was held in especial esteem by General Scott, who looked upon him as his successor in command of the army of the United States. He was commandant at West Point from 1852 to 1855, and in 1859 captured John Brown at Harper's Ferry, after his wild raid. As the war progressed he became the mainstay of the Confederacy, and when forced to surrender the sun of Southern independence set never to rise again. General Lee was a man of admirable character, with military ability of the highest order, and he set a good example by the sincerity and honesty with which he accepted the result of the war. He became president of the Washington and Lee University in Lexington, Virginia, and died October 12, 1870.



**James Longstreet**, born in South Carolina in 1821, was graduated from West Point in 1842. Like so many others, he served in the Mexican war, and, entering the service of the Confederacy, became one of its hardest fighters and most skilful leaders. He fought gallantly from the opening to the close at Appomattox. He offended many of his friends by the promptness with which he accepted the new order of things. He was rewarded by being made postmaster at his home in Georgia, United States marshal, minister to Turkey in his old age, and finally government railroad commissioner. He has further aroused criticism among his former associates by his strictures upon the manner in which Lee conducted the battle of Gettysburg.

**John B. Magruder**, who commanded the Confederate forces which first confronted McClellan on the Peninsula, was born in 1810. After the close of the war he served with Maximilian in Mexico, and died in 1871.

**James M. Mason**, who was captured by Captain Wilkes, was born in Virginia in 1798, represented his State in congress from 1837 to 1839, and as United States senator from 1847 to 1861. Although released by the national government, he was able to do the Confederacy no service abroad and died in 1871.

**John C. Pemberton**, who surrendered Vicksburg to General Grant, was born in 1814, and, after his graduation from West Point, served in the Seminole war and the war with Mexico. He died in 1881.

**George E. Pickett**, who led the famous charge at Gettysburg, was born in 1825, and did excellent service in the war with Mexico. He suffered defeat at Five Forks, and was among those who surrendered with General Lee at Appomattox. He died in 1875.

**Leonidas Polk** was born in 1806, and was Episcopal bishop of Louisiana at the breaking out of the civil war. He was a graduate of West Point, and offered his services to the Confederacy. He was made a major general, and commanded a corps at Shiloh and Corinth. He offended his superiors by his conduct at the battle of Chickamauga, where it is said he disobeyed orders. He accompanied General Johnston in his campaign against Sherman, and near Kenesaw Mountain his head was carried away by a cannon-ball.

**Sterling Price** was born in 1809, and represented Missouri in congress in 1845-1846. As colonel of a regiment, he gained considerable success in the war with Mexico. He was elected governor of Missouri in 1853, serving for four years. He displayed no marked ability in the service of the Confederacy, and died in 1867.

**Raphael Semmes** was born in 1809, and entered the naval service at an early age. After his escape from the *Kearsarge* when the *Alabama* went down, he was taken to England and succeeded in reaching the South, where he was made rear admiral. He was arrested at the close of the war, but released, and died in 1877.

**John Slidell**, who was captured with Mason by Captain Wilkes, was born in 1794, and represented Louisiana in congress in 1843-1845, and from 1853 to 1861 was United States senator from that State. He made his way to France after his release by our government, but did as little good for the Confederacy as did his associate in England. He died in 1871.

**Edmund Kirby Smith** was born in 1824, and was educated at West Point. As has been shown, he rendered the Confederate army important services at Bull Run. He was appointed to the command of the Trans-Mississippi Department in 1863 and thoroughly organized it. His troops were the last to surrender in the civil war. He was engaged as a teacher at his death in 1893.

**Alexander H. Stephens** was born in Georgia in 1812. He was graduated at Franklin College, became a lawyer, was elected to the state legislature, and from 1843 to 1859 was a member of congress from his native State. He was an ardent Union man, and did his utmost to combat secession, but when Georgia seceded he "went with his State," and was rewarded by being chosen vice president. At the close of the war he was elected to the United States senate, but was not allowed to take his seat. He was admitted in 1875 as congressman, and served until 1882, when he was elected governor of his State, but died in the following year. Stephens was universally respected for his fine personal qualities, aside from his remarkable ability. He was a small, pinched, withered-looking man, so weak that he was wheeled about for years in a carriage prepared for him, and to and from which he was carried by a powerful negro. He was very generous and charitable, and helped to educate a great many poor young men. "Liberty Hall," his home, was always open to any one who chose to come, and any stranger was welcome to stay as long as he pleased.

**James E. B. Stuart**, generally called "Jeb" Stuart, because of his initials, was born in 1833, and was educated at West Point. He was the foremost cavalry leader of the Confederacy, and was mortally wounded at Yellow Tavern, while opposing Sheridan near the close of the war.

**Richard ("Dick") Taylor** was born in 1826, and was the son of President Zachary Taylor. He helped to carry Louisiana out of the Union, and fought hard against it until the last gun was fired. He died in 1879.

**Earl Van Dorn** was born in 1820, and won many laurels in Mexico, being promoted for his gallant services. He succeeded Jefferson Davis as major general of the Mississippi troops, and in the following year had command of the Trans-Mississippi Department. He died in 1863.





## PART VI

### THE PERIOD OF REUNION AND PROGRESS

#### CHAPTER XXXVIII

JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1865-1869

Alaska



Indian totem and grave.

A

**T** Peace. -- At the close of the War for the Union, the armed hosts dissolved into orderly citizens of the great American republic. Few countries could have borne the disintegration of so immense an array of the best soldiers in the world. It would have brought anarchy and destruction, but nothing of the kind took place in the reunited States. Those who had been enemies were now friends. The beautiful Memorial Day, which originated in the South, when mourning relatives strewed the graves of the Confederate dead with flowers, was accompanied by a similar touching tribute to the Union heroes.

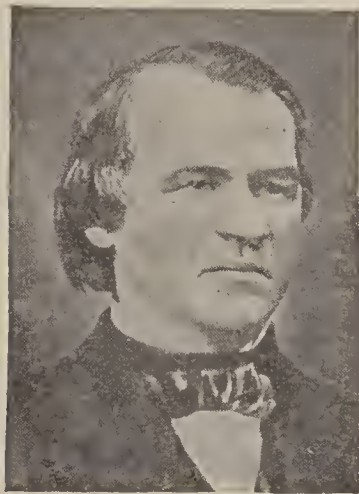
"The war drums throbbed no longer and the battle flags were furled."

**Cost of the Civil War.** — A careful estimate of the total number of soldiers furnished to the Union armies during the war is 2,859,132. Of these 61,362 were killed in battle, 34,727 died of wounds, 183,287 of disease, making the total deaths 279,376, excluding 199,105 who deserted. On the Confederate side, the deaths from wounds and disease (partial statement) were 133,821,

deserted (partial statement) 104,428. It is further estimated that the number in both armies, crippled or disabled by disease, was about 400,000. It may be said, therefore, that the War for the Union cost 1,000,000 able-bodied men. The Confederate war debt was repudiated, while that of the United States, on the 31st of October, 1865, was \$2,804,549,437.50, an amount too vast for any one to comprehend.

**What was settled Forever.** — Two great questions, however, can vex the nation no more, for they were settled forever. They are secession and human slavery. The arbitrament of the sword closed the former, and the thirteenth amendment to the Constitu-

tion, abolishing slavery, was ratified by the States, December 8, 1865, and became the supreme law of the land.



ANDREW JOHNSON

**Reconstruction.** — Andrew Johnson, Vice President, was sworn into office as President immediately after the death of President Lincoln. In the excited state of public feeling, there was a misgiving that he would be violent in his treatment of those that had lately been arrayed against the Union. He was a passionate man, whose usage by the disunionists, who once attempted to

take him from a railway train and lynch him, made him feel bitter and resentful. His expressions at first showed there was ground for this fear, but before long his anger was turned, not toward the former secessionists, but against those who thwarted his policy for bringing back the late rebelling States to the Union.

There was much discussion as to the right method of solving this problem. Since the North had insisted that no State had the right to secede, it followed that they had never really been out of the Union, but were simply in insurrection; and, resistance having ceased, they were back again, the same as before. But the danger of such a settlement was that the situation would be substantially as in 1861, and with no guarantee that at some time

the war would not be fought over again. Every lover of his country felt that the multitude of lives and vast treasure given that the Union might live should not be in vain.

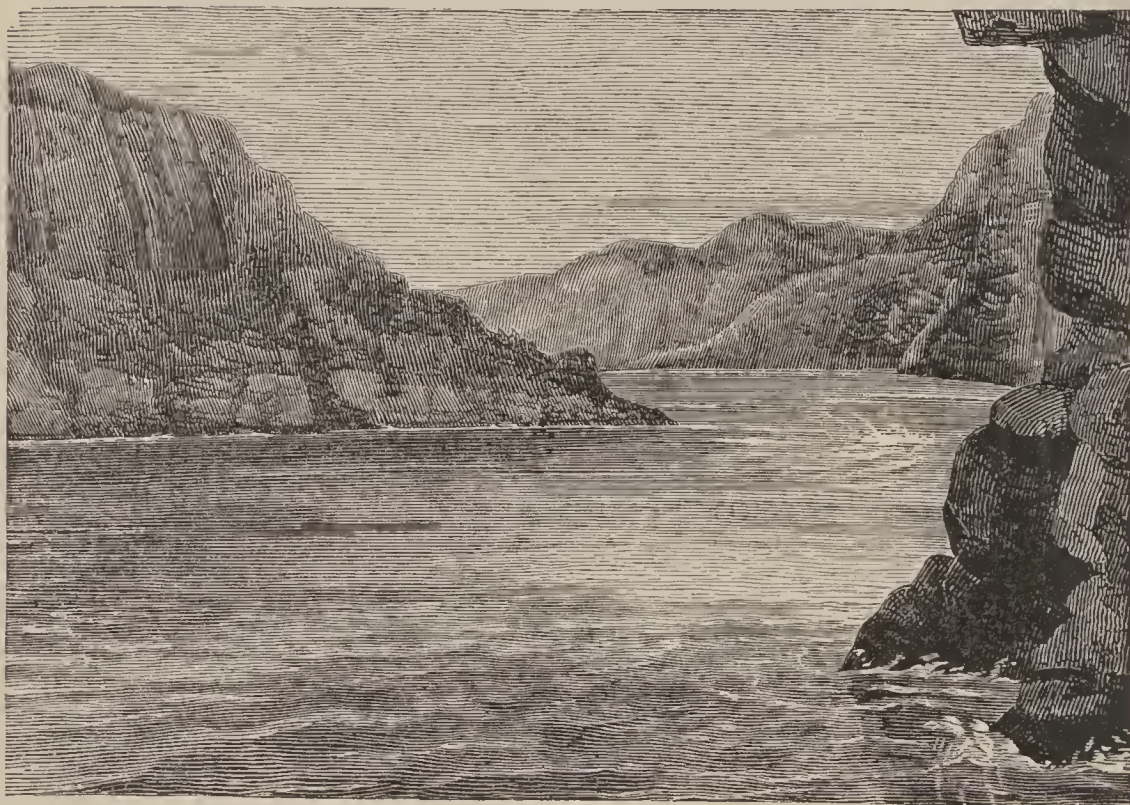
President Johnson recognized the state governments of Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Louisiana, they having been organized under the protection of Union troops. Provisional governments were appointed in the other States, and arrangements made for the calling of conventions to form loyal governments. The States accepted the opportunity thus offered them. They repealed the ordinances of secession, repudiated the Confederate war debt, and ratified the constitutional amendment abolishing slavery. The President issued a proclamation of pardon to all who had taken part in secession, except several of the most prominent leaders, on the condition of their taking the oath of allegiance to the United States. Universal amnesty was declared on Christmas Day, 1868.

**Impeachment of President Johnson.** — President Johnson offended congress by his method of reconstruction. That body claimed the right to fix the conditions on which the seceded States should re-enter the Union, and insisted, among other things, that each State should give the negroes the right to vote before their representatives should be allowed to take their seats. The President was obstinate and would not recede. He made a tour of the country, and during his "swinging around the circle," as he termed it, violently denounced his opponents. Congress then passed laws limiting his power to remove officers. He refused to obey the law, for which congress impeached him, — that is, charged him with "high crimes and misdemeanors." The trial opened March 23, 1868, the senate being organized as a court, with Chief Justice Chase presiding. A decision was taken May 26, when thirty-five senators answered "guilty," and nineteen, "not guilty." Since a two-thirds vote was required, the President escaped conviction by a single vote.

**Fenian Troubles.** — The Fenians are a society whose avowed object is the freeing of Ireland from English rule. Large



amounts of money were subscribed and military preparations perfected in this country. On June 1, 1866, fifteen hundred Fenians crossed the frontier from Buffalo, but the authorities speedily drove them back. The invasion was a violation of law, and a United States gunboat captured seven hundred of them. The privates were paroled, and the officers released on bail. Somewhat later the "Fenian army" advanced from St. Albans, Vermont, and after skirmishing with the British troops retreated.



YUKON RIVER, ALASKA

General Meade, who had been ordered to the frontier, sent the men home at government expense, held the officers to bail, and the flurry ended.

**Purchase of Alaska.** — In 1867, our government bought Alaska (previously known as Russian America) from Russia for the sum of \$7,200,000. Including the islands, the area of Alaska is 577,390 square miles. There was some good-natured criticism of the purchase, which was described as a land of fogs, snow, and desolation. The enormous trade in fisheries and seals which

has since developed, however, has proven that the bargain was one of the best ever made by the United States.

**Execution of Maximilian.** — Napoleon III was an unscrupulous adventurer and a bitter foe of the Union. He persuaded Maximilian, an archduke of Austria, that the Mexican people wanted him for their emperor, and his dupe went thither to serve our Southern neighbors as their ruler. The War for the Union being over, notice was served on Napoleon that he must leave. True to his nature, he promptly deserted Maximilian, withdrawing all the French troops from the country. Maximilian strove hard to establish a footing, but Juarez pressed him, and he was obliged to surrender May 15, 1867. He and his two generals, Miramon and Mejia (me-hu'a), were shot June 19.

**Successful Laying of the Atlantic Telegraph Cable.** — It will be remembered that the Atlantic cable which was laid in 1858 soon ceased to work. A successful attempt was made in July, 1866. Since then others have been laid, so that for a long time we have had telegraphic communication around the world.

**Presidential Election of 1868.** — In the autumn of 1868, General Grant and Schuyler Colfax were the Republican nominees for the presidency and vice presidency, while the Democratic candidates were Horatio Seymour and Frank P. Blair. The Republicans were successful by an electoral vote of two hundred and seventeen to seventy-seven. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas took no part in the election.

**TOPICS.** — Peace; the impressive example shown by the United States; the total number of soldiers furnished to the Union armies; about the total number of deaths; the deaths on the Confederate side; what the war for the Union cost in human lives; the Confederate war debt; that of the United States; the two great questions settled by the war; the misgivings regarding President Johnson; his course; the problem of reconstruction; the States recognized by the President; what was done in the other States; universal amnesty; the President's impeachment; the decision; the Fenian troubles; the purchase of Alaska; the execution of Maximilian; successful laying of the Atlantic Telegraph Cable; the presidential election of 1868.



## CHAPTER XXXIX

GRANT'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1869-1877



**C**OMPLETION of the Union Pacific Railway. — General Grant's administration saw the completion of a railway across the continent which was begun in 1863, though little work was done for two years. The first division of the road is from Omaha, Nebraska, to Ogden, Utah, a distance of one thousand and thirty-two miles. The western division, known as the Central Pacific, connects Ogden with San Francisco, a distance of eight hundred and sixty-two miles. On the 10th of May, 1869, the last tie, of polished laurel wood, bound with silver bands, connecting the line from the east with that from the west, was laid at Ogden. The tie was fastened in place by three spikes, one of gold, presented by California, one of silver, presented by Nevada, and one of gold, silver, and iron, presented by Arizona. The hammer strokes were telegraphed over the Union, and the locomotives, with their noses almost touching, saluted each other. There was much speechmaking and rejoicing, for surely the event was a noteworthy one.



ULYSSES S. GRANT

**Reconstruction Finished.** — The first three months of 1870 saw the completion of the work of reconstruction. The senators and representatives of Virginia were admitted to their seats in con-



gress January 24; those of Mississippi February 23; and those of Texas on the 30th of March. On the last-mentioned date, the secretary of state issued a proclamation announcing the ratification of the fifteenth amendment to the Constitution. This amendment provides for negro suffrage. The blight of "carpet-bag" rule, as it was termed, did not terminate, however, for a number of years.



SAN FRANCISCO AND THE GOLDEN GATE

**Great Fire in Chicago.** — On the evening of October 8, 1871, while an Irish woman was milking her cow in Chicago, the animal kicked over the lamp and set fire to the stable. The flames spread on De Koven Street, and, fanned by a high wind, soon reached the lumber yards and frame houses in the vicinity. They next leaped across the south branch of the Chicago River and attacked the business portion of the city, expanding with fearful rapidity. When the conflagration had spent itself, the whole district between the north branch and the lake and as far north as Lincoln Park, nearly five miles in extent, was one mass of embers and ashes. Fully twenty thousand buildings were destroyed, probably two hundred and fifty lives lost, ninety-eight thousand five hundred people rendered homeless, and two hundred million dollars' worth of property consumed. The Union responded nobly to the help of the stricken city, and the citizens went to work with a vigor that rebuilt the city almost within a year.



THE CHICAGO FIRE

**Disastrous Fire in Boston.** — The turn of Boston came in November of the same year. The fire, which lasted twenty - four hours, consumed the heart of the wholesale trade of the city. The burnt area was sixty acres in extent, and the loss seventy-five million dollars.

**The Geneva Arbitration.** — The violation of the laws of nations by England in fitting out and helping the Confederate cruisers was so flagrant, that our country now called her to account. It took a great deal of skilful diplomacy

and considerable time before matters were brought to a focus, but a joint high commission met in Washington, February 27, 1871. It was composed of five British and five American statesmen. They agreed upon a treaty, May 8, which was ratified on the 26th of that month, by which it was pledged to submit the dispute to arbitration at Geneva, Switzerland. The arbitration tribunal met in that city June 15, 1872. Their decision was, that England should pay the United States fifteen million five hundred thousand dollars, because of the depredations of the *Alabama* and other Confederate cruisers upon the commerce of the northern States, and the sum was paid.



**The San Juan Boundary.** — The treaty of 1846 with England defined our northwestern boundary to be a line running westward along the forty-ninth parallel to the middle of the channel separating the continent from Vancouver's Island, and then southerly through the middle of the channel and of Fuca's Strait to the Pacific Ocean. The trouble lay in the fact that there were several channels and each nation disputed as to which was meant. England's claim gave her the island of San Juan, while our claim gave it to us. It was agreed to refer the question to the arbitration of the emperor of Germany, who decided in our favor.

**The Presidential Election of 1872.** — It was a singular presidential election that took place in the autumn of 1872. President Grant was re-nominated by the Republicans, Henry Wilson of Massachusetts taking the place of Schuyler Colfax. Horace Greeley, who all his life had bitterly fought the Democratic party, now became its nominee for the presidency, with B. Gratz Brown of Missouri the candidate for the vice presidency. They were first nominated by the "Liberal Republicans," and afterward endorsed by the Democrats. Thousands of the latter refused to vote for the ticket, which was completely "snowed under," the Republicans carrying thirty-one of the States, with a majority of seven hundred and sixty thousand, the largest ever received at a national election. Mr. Greeley was crushed by his defeat, lost his reason, and died within a month after election.

**Admission of Colorado.** — Colorado, the thirty-eighth State, was admitted to the Union August 1, 1876, its constitution having been ratified by the people in July, 1876. The name is a Spanish word, applied to that portion of the Rocky Mountains on account of its many colored peaks. It has more than thirty peaks nearly three miles in height. The country was explored in 1858 at two points, one near Pike's Peak by a company from Kansas, and in the southwest by parties from Georgia. Each found gold. The Clear Creek deposits were discovered in 1859, and immigration began that year. The Territory was organized in 1861. Gold was plenty but hard to extract. The principal



discoveries of silver were after 1870. It applied for admission to the Union in 1865-1867, but President Johnson vetoed the measure. Congress denied it again in 1873, and so it became the "centennial State." Soon after, vast discoveries of carbonates of lead and silver were made, and its population trebled in five years.

**The Indians.** — The troubles with the Indians date from the first settlement of our country. There was a fatal lack of fairness and justice on the part of nearly all who sought homes in the New World, and behind almost every Indian war the cause has been found to be the dishonesty of white men. When General Grant became President, he wished to treat the red men fairly. The Quakers or Friends, who are men of peace, were allowed to try their gentle means and did well. But they were opposed by the "Indian Ring," one of the most corrupt of all bodies of politicians. Some of the best friends of the cause resigned, and in the end matters were as bad as before.

The policy finally adopted was that of the United States setting aside certain tracts of lands, known as "reservations," for the exclusive use of the Indians. So long as they stayed upon them they were not to be disturbed, and the amount assigned to each warrior was some six hundred acres. There are at present about a hundred Indian reservations, their area varying from the size of Rhode Island to that of New Hampshire and Vermont taken together.

The principal reservation is Indian Territory, which has a status in law different from all the others. It is the home of the Five Civilized Tribes, — the Creeks, Cherokees, Chickasaws, Choctaws, and Seminoles. Each of these tribes is a "nation," with a governor, a legislature, and judges selected by the Indians themselves, the whole modelled after our method of government. They have good schools, fine residences, banks, newspapers, lawyers, physicians, and, in fact, are fully civilized.

**The Modoc War.** — The Indians, however, had been accustomed so long to wander at will to any distance they chose, that

many of the wilder tribes looked with dislike upon the new order of things. They could not understand why they should be confined to any space except that of the whole country. They had good cause of complaint, however, in the fact that many of the reservations were barren and almost worthless. The Modocs, numbering only a few hundred, were removed from their fertile lands south of Oregon to a reservation so arid that they refused to stay. Returning to their former homes, they defied the government to remove them. They took refuge among some lava beds, just over the line in northern California, where the region



GENERAL CUSTER'S HEADQUARTERS

was so rough and broken that it was almost impossible for soldiers to reach them. They were surrounded, and, on the 11th of April, 1873, a conference was held with them by six members of the Peace Commission. The meeting was under a flag of truce. While in progress the Indians suddenly attacked the white men. General Edward R. S. Canby, the head of the Commission, and Dr. Thomas were killed and General Meachem was shot and stabbed, but by rapid flight he escaped with his life.

The outrage ended all talk of peace with the Modocs. After persistent and hard work, the handful of warriors were cornered and compelled to surrender. Captain Jack and two chiefs, the

most guilty, were hanged on the 3d of the following October. The rest were removed to a reservation in Dakota and have not given any trouble since.



THE CUSTER MONUMENT

**The Sioux Indian War.** — The discovery of gold among the Black Hills attracted thousands of white men thither. Some of these were lawless and of an evil character. The region belonged



to the Sioux Indians, one of the most turbulent tribes in the country. The invasion gave the warriors an excuse for leaving their reservation and committing many outrages among the settlers in Wyoming and Montana. Generals Terry and Crook with a large force of regulars marched into the Upper Yellowstone country and drove Sitting Bull and several thousand warriors toward the Big Horn Mountains and River.



COMANCHE, CAPTAIN KEOGH'S HORSE

Generals Custer and Reno, advancing with the Seventh Cavalry, found the Indians encamped for nearly three miles along the left bank of the Little Big Horn River. Without waiting for reinforcements, Custer charged upon them. It was a reckless act, and a fearful penalty was paid, for the warriors, quickly rallying, overwhelmed the whole attacking force. Custer and his men fought with desperate bravery, but the only living creature belonging to his command that came out of the awful fray was

the horse of Captain Keogh. He was so badly wounded that the Indians turned him loose to die. He was afterward found and tenderly cared for, until he died of old age. General Reno, who was fighting the Sioux at the lower end of the encampment, held his ground until the arrival of reinforcements under General Gibbon. The Seventh Cavalry, in this massacre of the 25th of June, 1876, lost two hundred and sixty-one killed and fifty-two wounded. The Sioux received several defeats later, and, after considerable negotiation, returned to their reservation in Dakota.

**The Centennial.** — The one hundredth anniversary of American independence was celebrated by a grand exhibition at Fairmount Park, Philadelphia. The following nations took part: The Argentine Confederation, Austria, Belgium, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, China, Denmark, Ecuador, Egypt, France (including Algeria), German Empire, Great Britain and her colonies, Greece, Guatemala, Hawaii, Hayti, Honduras, Italy, Japan, Liberia, Mexico, Netherlands, Nicaragua, Norway, Orange Free State, Persia, Peru, Portugal, Russia, Siam, Spain, Sweden, Switzerland, Tunis, Turkey, United States of Colombia, and Venezuela.

To provide for the display of the various articles from the different nations, five principal buildings were erected. These were: the Main Building, eighteen hundred and seventy-six feet long and four hundred and sixty-four feet wide; the Art Gallery or Memorial Hall, the Machinery Hall, the Agricultural Hall, and the Horticultural Hall. President Grant formally opened the Exposition May 10, and closed it six months later. During the period that it remained open, the daily attendance rose from five thousand to two hundred and seventy-five thousand. The whole number of visitors was a little less than ten millions, and the total receipts were \$3,761,598.

**Presidential Election of 1876.** — The presidential contest of this year threatened grave trouble to the country. The Republican nominees were Rutherford B. Hayes and William A. Wheeler, and the Democratic, Samuel J. Tilden and Thomas A.

Hendricks. Each party claimed the election and charged the other with fraud. The situation became so threatening that congress passed a bill creating an electoral commission to decide the dispute. This commission consisted of five senators, appointed by the Vice President (three Republicans and two Democrats), five representatives, appointed by the speaker (three Democrats and two Republicans), and five judges of the supreme court (three Republicans and two Democrats). This gave the Republicans eight members and the Democrats seven, and by that vote the commission, on the 2d of March, 1877, declared the Republican candidates elected.

**TOPICS.** — The completion of the Union Pacific Railway ; completion of the work of reconstruction ; account of the great fire in Chicago ; in Boston ; work of the Geneva arbitration ; settlement of the San Juan boundary ; the presidential election of 1872 ; admission of Colorado ; its early history ; causes of all the troubles with the Indians ; the policy finally adopted by our government ; the principal reservation ; the Five Civilized Tribes ; why many of the Indians opposed the reservation policy ; causes of complaint on the part of the Modocs ; their attack upon the peace commissioners ; the consequences ; cause of the Sioux war ; the Custer massacre ; the Centennial at Fairmount Park ; number of visitors and total receipts ; the presidential election of 1876 ; how the grave dispute was settled.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Horace Greeley** was born in 1811 in New Hampshire. When a young man he edited the *Evening Post*, the first daily penny paper ever published, and in 1834 founded the *New Yorker*. He was connected with other papers, and in 1841 issued the first number of the *New York Tribune*, which speedily became the most influential journal in America. It was Whig, and then anti-slavery Whig, and employed the ablest writers in the country on its staff. Mr. Greeley himself had no superior in wielding a vigorous and trenchant pen. In 1848-1849 he was in congress, and during the civil war his paper made many powerful appeals to the President, who was not always radical enough to please the impetuous editor. With peace Mr. Greeley became an advocate of universal amnesty. He was one of the bondsmen of Jefferson Davis in 1867. He was eccentric in dress and manner, honest, frank, and outspoken. He made many admirable speeches during his strange presidential campaign of 1872, which was the fatal mistake of his life.

**Edward R. S. Canby** was born in Kentucky in 1819, and served in the Seminole and the Mexican wars. In conjunction with Farragut's fleet he



captured the city of Mobile in 1865. We have learned of his death at the hands of the Modoc Indians.

**Rutherford B. Hayes**, nineteenth president, was born at Delaware, Ohio, October 4, 1822. He was graduated from Kenyon College at the age of twenty, and became a lawyer in Cincinnati. He volunteered at the outbreak of the civil war, entering the service as major and rising to the rank of brevet major general. His services were gallant and valuable. He represented Ohio in congress in 1865, and was governor of the State from 1868 to 1872, and again in 1875. The last political victory was won on the "honest money" issue as it was called. It attracted national attention, and caused his nomination for the presidency in 1876. It is unfortunate that his title to the presidency was tainted with suspicion. After the close of his term he lived in retirement at his home in Fremont, Ohio, where he died January 17, 1893.

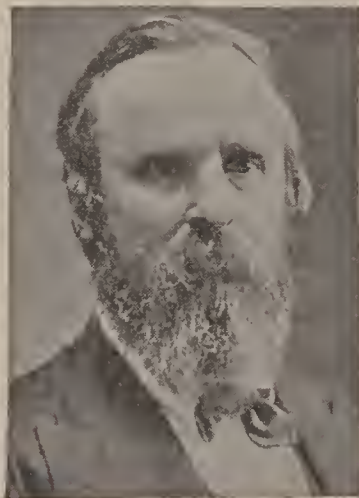
## CHAPTER XL

HAYES'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1877-1881



**R**AILWAY Strike. — Rutherford Burchard Hayes's administration was uneventful as a whole, but accompanied by several stirring events, the most disturbing being a great railway strike. This began on the Baltimore and Ohio on the 14th of July, 1877, and was caused by a reduction of wages of its employees. The Brotherhood of Locomotive Engineers, the most conservative of all the labor organizations, gave their sympathy, and at one time one hundred thousand men were idle and six thousand miles of railway blocked. The militia, as a rule, sympathized with the strikers, and proved so ineffective that an appeal was made to the United States government. Rioting occurred in many quarters, and the scenes of violence were widespread. At Pittsburg, millions of dollars' worth of property were destroyed and many lives lost. Several weeks passed before order was fully restored.

**Resumption of Specie Payments.** — In accordance with the law passed in 1875, the resumption of specie payments by our government was effected January 1, 1879. At that time the treasury contained one hundred and thirty-eight million dollars in gold, which was forty per cent of the out-



RUTHERFORD B. HAYES

standing bonds. The public credit was so improved by that step, that on January 1, only eleven million dollars in bonds were offered for redemption. The dreaded problem of the resumption of specie payments proved to be no problem at all.



RIOT AT PITTSBURG

#### **Fishery Dispute with Great Britain. —**

The dispute over the fishery question became so involved that Great Britain and the United States agreed to refer its final settlement to an arbitration commission, one member to be appointed by Queen Victoria, one by President Hayes, and a third by the Austrian ambassador to the Court of St. James. This commission, in November, 1877, decided that the United States should pay to England the sum of five million dollars. It was an unjust verdict,

and more favorable to England than she expected, but our government decided to pay it, and did so in the autumn of 1878.

**Presidential Election of 1880. —** A strong effort was made, but failed, to renominate General Grant for a third term. The Republican candidates were James A. Garfield and Chester A. Arthur, and the Democratic, General Winfield S. Hancock and



William H. English. The Republicans were successful by an electoral vote of 214 to 155.

**TOPICS.** — The great railway strike of 1877 ; the resumption of specie payments ; settlement of the fishery dispute with Great Britain ; the presidential election of 1880.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Winfield S. Hancock** was born in Pennsylvania in 1824, and was graduated twenty years later from the military academy at West Point. His gallantry in the Mexican war won him the brevet of first lieutenant, and he entered the civil war a brigadier general of volunteers. Joining the Army of the Potomac, he served under McClellan on the Peninsula and was prominent in all the leading battles in Virginia. To him, as much as to any one man, was due the great victory at Gettysburg. His services were of the most brilliant nature and caused him to be made major general in the regular army at the close of the war. He was a courteous gentleman, held in high esteem by the whole country, and his death, in 1886, was universally regretted.

**James A. Garfield**, twentieth President, was born at Orange, Cuyahoga county, Ohio, November 19, 1831. He spent his boyhood in the backwoods and gained rugged health and strength. When a large boy he served as driver for a canal boat. At the age of sixteen he attended the high school at Chester and was a proficient student. He entered Hiram College in 1851, and three years later became an instructor in the institution. He was elected to the State senate, and at the breaking out of the civil war was president of the college. He entered the military service and made a fine record. He was chief of staff to General Rosecrans, and took a prominent part in the great battle of Chickamauga. He attained the rank of major general, and while serving in the field was elected to congress. He would have preferred to remain a soldier, but accepted political office at the earnest request of President Lincoln. He served for seventeen years, and was then elected to the senate, but did not take his seat because of his nomination for the presidency, which quickly followed.

**Chester A. Arthur**, twenty-first President, was born in Franklin county, Vermont, October 5, 1830, and was graduated from Union College in 1849. After teaching school for a time in his native State, he removed to the city of New York and studied law, in which profession he achieved much success. During the civil war he was quartermaster general of the State, and was appointed collector of the port, serving until July 12, 1878. He died November 18, 1886.

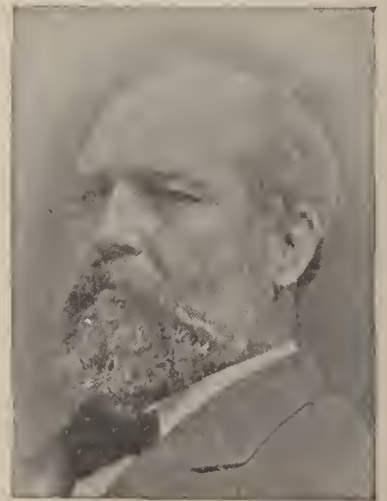
## CHAPTER XLI

GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATIONS. — 1881-1885



**ASSASSINATION of President Garfield.** — James A. Garfield, the new President, like the great Lincoln, was called upon to die the death of a martyr before the completion of his work. On the 2d of July, 1881, accompanied by Secretary Blaine and several friends, he rode to the Baltimore railway station with the intention of joining his invalid wife at the seashore. While talking with Mr. Blaine, a miscreant named Guiteau shot him in the back with a pistol. The wounded President was carried to the executive mansion and the assassin was hurried off to prison.

Although painfully wounded, the belief was general that the President would recover. He received the best of medical care, and, on the 6th of September, was removed to Elberon, New Jersey, where it was hoped that the cool sea breezes would bring back health and strength to his wasted frame; but on the 19th of the month he quietly breathed his last. His assassin was hanged on the 30th of the following June.



JAMES A. GARFIELD

**Anti-Mormon Legislation.** — We have learned about the sect known as Mormons. They committed outrages, defied the government, and continued to vex it in many ways. The severest blow against them was the passage of

a law, in 1882, which disfranchised and made ineligible to office all polygamists. They were incensed at first, but soon accepted what they could not help. Ten years later, President Harrison issued a proclamation of amnesty, the Mormons having given satisfactory evidence of compliance with the law. Polygamy seems to have been effectually suppressed, as it might have been long before.

**Anti-Chinese Legislation.** — The influx of Chinese into California, and their readiness to work for wages which will not support an American, caused great opposition to them. During the Hayes administration, in 1879, a bill passed congress forbidding the immigration of Chinese laborers to this country, and compelling those here to take out certificates upon their leaving the United States, so that their identity might be proved if they sought to come back. The President vetoed the bill, but it became a law three years later.



CHESTER A. ARTHUR

**The Yorktown Centennial.** — When the centennial celebrations began, with the anniversary of the battle of Lexington, they continued eight years and more. The most notable of these celebrations was that at Yorktown, Virginia, which opened October 18, 1881. Among those who took part were President Arthur and his cabinet, visitors from Germany and France (among the latter being the Marquis of Rochambeau, a descendant of our ally in the Revolution), numerous governors, distinguished citizens, and an imposing military and naval display.

**Lieutenant Greely's Expedition.** — In 1880, an international polar commission proposed that different countries should unite in establishing meteorological stations in the polar regions. Congress made an appropriation for two such stations, Point Barrow, in Alaska, and Lady Franklin Bay, in Grinnell Land. The party for Lady Franklin Bay consisted of First Lieutenant



Adolphus W. Greely, U.S.A., commander; Lieutenants F. S. Kislingbury and James B. Lockwood, U.S.A., as assistants; and Dr. O. Pavy as surgeon and naturalist. In addition, there were twenty-two sergeants, corporals, and privates, and two Eskimos.



ARCTIC REGIONS

A relief expedition in 1883 failed to reach Lady Franklin Bay, and Greely and his party were thus left in great peril. They suffered incredible hardships, not only from the fearful cold, but for lack of provisions, which they had expected to obtain from the relief expedition. On the 13th of May, 1882, Lieutenant Lockwood, Sergeant Brainard, and one of the Eskimos attained a point whose latitude was  $83^{\circ} 24' 30''$  north, and whose longitude was  $40^{\circ} 46' 30''$  west of Greenwich. This is the

most northern latitude which had until then been reached by man. On the 7th of April, 1895, however, Dr. Fridtjof Nansen, the Norwegian explorer, penetrated northward to  $86^{\circ} 15'$ , a point nearly two hundred miles nearer the North Pole than any preceding explorer had reached, and within about two hundred and twenty-five miles of the Pole itself.

Lieutenant Lockwood did not live to return home, dying April 9, 1884, from starvation. Commander Schley sailed from the Brooklyn navy yard in May, 1884, with three ships, to search for Greely and his companions. They were found in the latter part of June, near Cape Sabine. Only seven were alive, and they were suffering the pangs of starvation. They were nursed with extreme care, but one of the men died at Disco Harbor. The relief expedition, with the others, arrived at St. John's July 17, and reached New York August 8.

**Important Legislation.** — Among the important laws made during the administration of President Arthur was a civil service bill, in 1883, regulating by means of examinations the system of civil service appointments and promotions; the reduction of letter postage from three to two cents for each half-ounce (1883), which was made two cents an ounce in 1885; and the organization of Alaska, in 1884, into a civil and judicial district, with the temporary seat of government at Sitka.

**Presidential Election of 1884.** — The Democratic candidates for President and Vice President in 1884 were Grover Cleveland and Thomas A. Hendricks; the Republican nominees were James G. Blaine and General John A. Logan. A slender majority in New York gave Mr. Cleveland the vote of the State, and brought him two hundred and nineteen electoral votes to one hundred and eighty-two cast for Mr. Blaine.



GENERAL JOHN A. LOGAN

**TOPICS.** — The assassination of President Garfield; anti-Mormon legislation; anti-Chinese legislation; the Yorktown Centennial; the international polar commission; the stations provided for by congress; the party for Lady Franklin Bay; failure of the relief expedition; the most northernmost point attained; the subsequent achievement of Dr. Nansen; rescue of the Greely survivors; civil service legislation; reducing letter postage; organization of Alaska; presidential election of 1884.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Adolphus W. Greely** was born in Maine in 1844, and, volunteering in the civil war, was brevetted major for his services. He joined the signal service, and, after his return from his famous arctic expedition, was made chief of the signal service from 1887 to 1892, his promotion to a brigadier general having taken place in 1887.

**Grover Cleveland**, twenty-second President, was born at Caldwell, New Jersey, March 18, 1837. He received his education in the public schools, and became a teacher in an institution for the blind, at Clinton, New York. Removing to Buffalo in 1855, he was admitted to the bar three years later. His success was decided. Entering political life in 1863, he filled in turn the offices of assistant district attorney, sheriff, and mayor. He was elected governor of New York State, in 1882, by the unprecedented majority of 192,854. This vote attracted national attention, and caused his nomination for the presidency before the end of his gubernatorial term. After the expiration of his second term, he made his home at Princeton, N. J.



## CHAPTER XLII

CLEVELAND'S FIRST ADMINISTRATION. — 1885-1889



**G**

**RAVE Dangers averted.** — Grave dangers have been averted by the passage of the presidential succession law, in 1886, which provides that, in the event of the death of the President and Vice President, the order of succession shall be the secretaries of state, of the treasury, of war, the attorney general, the postmaster general, and the secretaries of the navy, of the interior, and of agriculture.

**Anarchist Troubles in Chicago.** — A great deal of trouble was caused by numerous labor strikes. In Chicago, while the police, on May 4, 1886, were dispersing a mob of murderous anarchists, one of them hurled a dynamite bomb among the officers. Before any one could avoid the danger, the bomb exploded, killing seven policemen, crippling eleven for life, and wounding a number of others. The most guilty of the anarchists were tried and hanged. Since then a reaction has set in, and the pestilent wretches give the country little trouble.



GROVER CLEVELAND

**Earthquake in Charleston.** — The country was startled, in the summer and early autumn of 1886, by a number of violent earthquake shocks which visited Charleston. The city was cut off from telegraphic com-

munication for several hours, and the dread was general that it had met the fate of Lisbon more than a century before. The earth-tremors were felt in other parts of the country, but in none so severely as at Charleston, where the damages were so great that two-thirds of the city had to be rebuilt. About one hundred people were killed, with a loss of property approaching ten million dollars.

**Subjection of the Apaches.** — For years the comparatively small tribe of Apaches had spread terror in the Southwest. They were the most terrible red men on this continent. In endurance, treachery, daring, and cunning they have never been surpassed by any people. Our army, after incredible suffering and bravery, in the flaming climate of Arizona and the neighborhood, succeeded in running down the pests and forced them to submit to the authority of the government. Geronimo (he-ron'i-mo), their most noted leader, with his brother chiefs and their families, were brought eastward, where, being beyond all danger of doing harm, they have ever since been "good Indians."

**Presidential Election of 1888.** — In the election of this year, the Republican candidates were Benjamin Harrison and Levi P. Morton. Those of the Democrats were Grover Cleveland and Allen G. Thurman. The election resulted in the success of the Republican ticket by the electoral vote of two hundred and thirty-three to one hundred and sixty-eight.

**TOPICS.** — The presidential succession law; the anarchistic troubles in Chicago; the earthquake in Charleston; the Apaches of the Southwest; their conquest; Geronimo; the presidential election of 1888.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **Benjamin Harrison**, twenty-third President, was born at North Bend, Ohio, August 20, 1833. His father was a farmer; his grandfather, governor, general, and President; and his great-grandfather one of the signers of the Declaration of Independence. While yet a lad, Benjamin entered Miami University, where he was graduated in 1852. Upon his admission to the bar, he established himself in Indianapolis, which has since been his home. He volunteered shortly after the breaking out of the war, and remained to its close, winning the brevet of brigadier general for ability, energy, and gallantry. He was elected to the United States senate in 1881.

## CHAPTER XLIII

HARRISON'S ADMINISTRATION.—1889-1893



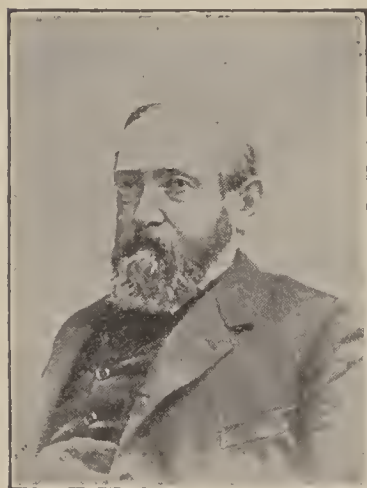
**T**HE Johnstown Flood. — The Conemagh valley, some twenty miles in length, was desolated, on the 31st of May, 1889, by the most destructive flood in the history of our country. Johnstown is thirty-nine miles west-southwest of Altoona, Pennsylvania, and seventy-eight miles east-by-south of Pittsburg. It contained twenty-eight thousand inhabitants, and was the seat of the Cambria iron works, which gave employment to six thousand men. At the head of the winding valley, eighteen miles away, stood Conemagh Lake, the most extensive reservoir of water in the world. It was two and a half miles long and one and a half miles wide at the greatest width. In many places the lake was a hundred feet in depth. The dam was about a fifth of a mile wide, one hundred and ten feet high, and ninety feet thick at the base.

This enormous structure suddenly gave way before the inconceivable pressure, and sliding outward, released the prodigious mass of water, which plunged forward with a speed of more than two miles a minute! Within seven minutes of the bursting of the dam, the water had reached a point eighteen miles down the valley. Houses, trees, wagons, and ponderous locomotives were tossed about like so many corks. The appalling flood was upon Johnstown before the people knew their peril. Nothing could stay the rush of waters for an instant, until, gorged with thousands of tons of débris, it struck the railway bridge below Johns-



town. That stood like a granite mountain. The wreckage was quickly piled to a width of an eighth of a mile. It became a solid mass of houses, logs, timber, machinery, iron in all forms, furniture, and household utensils, through which was interwoven hundreds of miles of barbed wire. Imprisoned in their houses by the wrenching of the structures were hundreds of persons. Before anything could be done to relieve them, fire broke out in numerous places, and many were burned to death.

The loss of life can never be known. It was officially given as twenty-two hundred and eighty, of which seven hundred and forty-one bodies were unidentified. It has been claimed that



BENJAMIN HARRISON

the actual loss was five thousand, which is probably not far from the truth. The great calamity awoke sympathy throughout the Union, and prompt measures were taken for the relief of the survivors. The remains of some of those that were lost were not found until after two years. On the 14th of November, 1892, at the payment of the annuity provided for the flood orphans, twenty thousand three hundred and twenty-five dollars were distributed. Each orphan under sixteen

years of age received seventy-five dollars, the beneficiaries being two hundred and seventy-one in number.

**Massacre of Italians at New Orleans.** — On the 5th of October, 1890, David C. Hennessy, chief of police of New Orleans, was shot down at his own door and had barely time to say that the "Dagos" did it, when he died. He had been very active in unearthing many crimes among the Italians, and had incurred their enmity. The outrage convinced the citizens that they had among them many members of the "Mafia" organization, a society of oath-bound assassins. The whole city was thrown into intense excitement. On the 20th of November, the grand jury indicted eleven Italians for murder and eight others as accessories

before the fact. February 6, following, the district attorney arraigned six of the indicted persons and three of the accessories. The jury acquitted six, two of whom the presiding judge had directed them to declare innocent, and in the other three cases a mistrial was entered.

The city was incensed by this miscarriage of justice, being satisfied that the jury had been bribed by a noted corruptionist, who fled in time to save himself. A mob broke into the jail, March 14, and lynched the eleven Sicilians confined there. Many prominent people took part, and all sympathized with the populace. Italy angrily demanded reparation. Secretary Blaine replied with dignity, promising to take every possible step to secure justice, but gave Italy to understand that it would be done in our own way, and that we would accept no dictation from her. The situation at one time was threatening, and there was much talk of war. Gradually, however, Italy saw her blundering and gracefully apologized. Our government voluntarily paid the families of the victims that were Italian citizens a generous sum of money, and in the end Italy and the United States became stronger friends than before.

**Threatened War with Chile.** — A more dangerous complication threatened our relations with Chile. On the 16th of October, 1891, some forty men of the crew of the American war steamer *Baltimore*, lying in the harbor of Valparaiso, obtained leave to go ashore. All were in uniform and unarmed. One of the Americans became involved in a quarrel with a Chilean, and in a few minutes the whole party were set upon by an armed mob largely their superior in numbers. Charles W. Riggin, boatswain's mate of the *Baltimore*, was killed, and many of the sailors were seriously wounded, one of them subsequently dying. Thirty-five of the Americans were arrested and hurried to prison, but were set free, as no criminal charge could lie against them.

Captain W. S. Schley of the *Baltimore* (the rescuer of Greely and his party at Cape Sabine) was directed to make an investigation of the origin and incidents of the tragedy and to communi-

cate with the United States government at Washington and the minister at Santiago (sahn-tī-ah'go). The result proved that Chile had committed an outrage against our flag. She was called upon to apologize and to pay an indemnity to the sufferers and to the families of those that had been killed in the assault. Chile, however, was defiant. She was sharply called to account, and, still dallying, preparations were made for war against her. Finally, she made the required acknowledgment and sent to our government a liberal indemnity for those who had a just claim upon it.

**The Indian Uprising of 1890-1891.** — For months during 1890 a strange craze raged among the Indians, until it involved the



INDIAN GHOST DANCERS

most warlike and dangerous tribes in the Northwest and West. The belief was general that the Indian Messiah was about to come and restore the hunting-grounds to the Indians and drive out the white men. "Ghost dances" were held and the faith preached with frantic

eloquence by those engaged in spreading the new doctrine among the tribes, until thousands clamored to take the war-path.

Sitting Bull, the great medicine man of the Sioux, and a disturber for years, took advantage of the general discontent to stir up resentment against the white people, whom he had always hated. He became so dangerous a factor in the trouble, that his arrest was determined upon. On the morning of December 15, 1890, the Indian police, under Bull Head and Shave Head, followed at a distance by United States cavalry, entered Sitting Bull's camp, forty miles northwest of Fort Yates, North Dakota.



His companions resisted his arrest, and in the flurry Sitting Bull, his son Crowfoot, and six other warriors were killed. Four of the Indian police, among them Bull Head, the leader, lost their lives. The rest of Sitting Bull's band



SIoux BOYS ON ENTERING CARLISLE SCHOOL

2 E

#### ON GRADUATION

fled to the "Bad Lands" of Dakota. Some of them, however, were persuaded to return to the Pine Ridge agency. While a large band was making a pretence of surrendering their arms to the Seventh Cavalry, near Wounded

Knee Creek, December 28, they suddenly opened fire on the soldiers, who, it may be said, were at their elbows. The fire was returned, and for a brief while the fiercest kind of a battle raged. Twenty-eight soldiers were killed and thirty wounded,



SIOUX GRAVES

while many of the Indians were shot down. When the survivors fled, it looked as if nothing could avert a frightful Indian war. Several skirmishes took place and numbers were killed on both sides, but by rare tact and good judgment the formidable band of hostiles were induced to move toward the agency. It was very slow and many times threatened to end in an outbreak, but finally, on the

15th of January, all the Indians came in, made their submission, and the danger was over.

**Admission of New States.**—A number of new States were admitted to the Union during Harrison's administration. North and South Dakota came in November 3, 1889. The name Dakota means "league" or "allied tribes." The two Dakotas were a part of the Louisiana purchase of 1803. The capital was established at Yankton, where the first legislature convened,



March 17, 1862. In 1883, the capital was removed to Bismarck. The separation into two States took place in 1889.

Montana became a State November 8, 1889; Idaho, July 3; and Wyoming, July 10, 1890, making the full number forty-four. The name Montana is from a Spanish word referring to the mountains. Montana was a part of Idaho Territory until May 26, 1864, when it was organized into a separate Territory. The origin of the name Idaho has never been clearly established, but it is supposed to be an Indian word signifying "gem of the mountains." Until 1863, Idaho was a part of Oregon Territory, and when first organized was made up of portions of Oregon, Washington, Utah, and Nebraska. In 1864 its boundaries were changed and a part added to Montana. The name of Wyoming was carried westward by settlers from Wyoming valley, Pennsylvania, and in the Indian tongue it signifies "great plain." It assumed form as a Territory July 10, 1868.

**Presidential Election of 1892.** — In the election of this year, the Republican candidates were President Harrison, with White-law Reid for Vice President. The Democratic nominees were ex-President Cleveland and Adlai Stevenson. The Democrats were successful by an electoral vote of two hundred and seventy-seven to one hundred and forty-five.

**TOPICS.** — The extent of Conemagh valley, Pennsylvania; the location and size of the immense reservoir of water; the size of the dam; the yielding of the dam; velocity of the mass of water; the ruin it accomplished; the check at the railway bridge; the loss of life; the money distributed among the survivors; the provision for the orphans; the shooting of Chief Hennessy in New Orleans; the miscarriage of justice; the lynching of the Italians; the demand of Italy; adjustment of the dispute; the attack upon American sailors at Valparaiso; the investigation made by Captain Schley; settlement of the difficulty; the "ghost dances" among the Indians of the West; the course of Sitting Bull; his death at the hands of the Indian police; action of the Indians; the battle of Wounded Knee; bringing in of the hostiles to the Pine Ridge agency; the admission of North and South Dakota; their early history; the admission of Montana; of Idaho; of Wyoming; the early history of the States; the presidential election of 1892.



## CHAPTER XLIV

CLEVELAND'S SECOND ADMINISTRATION. — 1893-1897



### THE Second Inauguration of President Cleveland.

— The first President elected with an interval between his first and second terms was Grover Cleveland. The day of his second inauguration will always be memorable for its snow, sleet, cold, and storms. Nevertheless, the capital was crowded with visitors from every part of the country, and at the imposing military parade in the afternoon nearly fifty thousand men were in line. The President delivered his inaugural bareheaded, in a bitterly cold wind, which hurled the snow among the shivering spectators on the stand and against the face of the President himself. His inaugural was a plain, well-conceived address, acceptable not only to the listeners, but to the country at large.

**Repeal of the Purchase Clause of the Sherman Bill.** — A financial stringency visited the country in the summer and autumn of 1893. A general lack of confidence caused widespread distress, and as the winter approached there was much suffering, especially in the large cities. But for the sympathy shown in practical form by the more favored ones, the lack of work and food would have been felt much more keenly than was the case. It was believed by many that the so-called Sherman Bill, which provided for the monthly coinage of a large amount of silver, was one of the causes of the financial trouble. President Cleveland convened congress in extraordinary session, August 7, and recom-

mended the body to repeal the purchase clause of the Sherman act. A measure to that effect was promptly passed by the house, but was delayed a long time in the senate. The senators from States like Idaho and Nevada, where the silver industry is one of the chief sources of income, strongly opposed the passage of the measure. For a time it seemed doomed to fail. Tiresome speeches were spun out for hours and days, for no other purpose than to obstruct legislation. Finally, October 30, the bill passed, and was immediately signed by the President.



BRIDGE IN CHICAGO

**The World's Columbian Exposition.** — The year 1893 will always be a memorable one in the history of our country, since it witnessed the grandest of all celebrations of the discovery of America by Columbus. The four hundredth anniversary of course arrived in 1892, but the preparations to hold the exposition in Chicago (which city congress selected as the site of the exposition) were on so vast a scale that they could not be completed in time. The celebration, therefore, was deferred until the following year.

**The Columbian Naval Review.** — The part taken by the government in this great celebration was opened by a grand review of

the war-ships of the leading nations of the world. They came together at Hampton Roads, Virginia, converging from points on the globe thousands of miles apart. Then they steamed northward to New York, where the naval review took place, April 27. The war-ships numbered thirty-five, without the three Columbus caravels sent by Spain and presented to the United States. These ships were ranged in two lines in the Hudson, extending a distance of three miles. They represented the United States, Great Britain, Germany, France, Russia, Italy, Spain, Brazil,



U. S. CRUISER CHARLESTON

Holland, and Argentina. Between these lines steamed the American steel-clad yacht *Dolphin*, bearing President Cleveland and his cabinet. As they came opposite each magnificent war-ship, it thundered an earth-quaking salute. Napoleon, Alexander, nor any of the monarchs or conquerors of the world, ever received so impressive a tribute as the President of the United States.

**The Exposition in Chicago.** — Congress appropriated ten million dollars and the different States set apart large sums by which the success of the exposition was assured from the first. Jackson Park was selected as the site of the buildings devoted to the pur-



poses of the fair. This beautiful park is on the shore of Lake Michigan and includes five hundred and thirty-three acres, the Midway Plaisance eighty acres, and Washington Park, serving as an entrance to the exhibition, three hundred and seventy-one acres. Having a frontage of two miles on the lake, the site could not have been improved.

The structures were dedicated on the 21st of October, 1892, in Manufacturers' Hall, which contained an audience of more than thirty thousand people. The platform was crowded with dignitaries, and the parades and displays surpassed anything of the nature ever seen before in any country. The exposition was open from the 1st of May until the 1st of November, during which period the paid admissions numbered 21,530,854. The daily expenses were \$22,405, the average daily receipts \$89,501, and the total receipts \$33,290,065.58. The net profits were more than half a million dollars. Visitors came from almost every quarter of the globe, and the display was well worth traveling round the world to see, for it is not likely that another similar gathering of wonders will be witnessed for a hundred years to come.

**The Great Railway Strike of 1894.** — A general unrest prevailed in the labor world at the opening of the year 1894. A dispute between the Pullman Palace Car Company, of Pullman, Illinois, and their employees, over the question of wages, in which the company refused all suggestions of arbitration, resulted in a strike on June 26. The danger caused the calling out of State and Federal troops, despite which the turbulence increased. Hundreds of cars were burned and many miles of railway tracks torn up. Those who attempted to take the places of the strikers were either persuaded or compelled to quit work.

Leniency toward a mob always encourages it to acts of violence, and the soldiers were ordered to fire upon any persons assaulting trainmen or attacking trains. A savage collision took place at Hammond, Indiana, in which several were killed and wounded, and similar scenes followed elsewhere.



ARBITRATION

General Master Workman Sovereign, on July 10, called upon the Knights of Labor throughout the country to cease work and endeavor by peaceful means to force an amicable settlement of the quarrel. The order was disregarded in the East, but obeyed in Chicago and many points further west. Sympathetic strikes followed in North Dakota, Montana, Idaho, Washington, Wyoming, and New Mexico. The Pullman Palace Car Company runs cars over three-fourths of the mileage of the United States, and the employees of many roads refused to handle their cars. President Cleveland, July 11, issued a proclamation ordering all persons engaged in the strike to disperse.

The curse of all labor strikes is the violence which seems to be inevitable. The occasion is always seized by the vicious and criminal elements of society, who are eager for the chance to plunder, rob, and take human life. While the majority of strikers may be peaceably inclined, long-endured idleness and suffering rouse ugly passions, and shocking crimes are certain to follow. On July 17, Eugene V. Debs and the head officers of the Railway Union were arrested and imprisoned for refusing to obey the



injunctions of court, and indictments were found against many others associated with them in directing the strike.

At this time, when so many railroads were tied up, business paralyzed, and the country alarmed, the decisive action of the United States government restored order and averted grave peril. Governor Altgeld, of Illinois, who pardoned the imprisoned anarchists engaged in the bomb-throwing of May, 1886, angrily protested against the presence of the United States troops in Chicago and was informed by President Cleveland that the troops were sent thither in strict conformity with the Constitution, since the mails were obstructed and the ordinary means were unable to execute the processes of the Federal courts.



GENERAL NELSON A. MILES

On December 14, 1894, Debs was sentenced to six months' imprisonment for contempt and the other leaders to three months



GRAIN ELEVATOR, CHICAGO



each. This action was taken without trial by jury and was condemned in many quarters as an invasion of the inalienable rights of every American citizen. The final judgment of the supreme court is that employees have the legal right to combine to quit work in a body, but all violence is subject to penalty.

**The Hawaiian Imbrolio.** — In the year 1849, a treaty of commerce and for the extradition of criminals was concluded between the United States and Hawaii, and in 1875 a reciprocity treaty.

David Kalakaua was elected king in 1874, and on the same day British and American ships of war, at the request of the constitutional ruler, aided in quelling the Court-house riot. Kalakaua was an amiable and pleasure-loving monarch, but heartily devoted to the welfare of his people. Some American residents for their personal gain conspired against the king and forced him to change the constitution. He died in 1891 at San Francisco, whither he had gone to recruit his failing health. His remains reached Honolulu January 29, 1891, and on the same day his sister Liliuokalani was proclaimed queen.

She was firmly convinced that she understood her people better than any foreigner could, and that she should reign for them rather than for foreigners; but her hands were tied by the constitution and she was thwarted in her endeavors to grant a new one, which would withhold the right of suffrage from persons unnaturalized and restore to her the right to appoint her own cabinet officers.

This attempt by the queen to change the constitution greatly incensed the American conspirators and they secretly formed a committee who applied to the United States minister for aid, and a body of marines from the United States man-of-war *Boston* was landed on the island. This precipitated the revolt; the queen, knowing she could not contend with the United States troops, protested without avail and was compelled to abdicate.

Thus the republic was established by the aid of the United States minister and man-of-war.

On February 14, 1893, an annexation treaty was formulated,

providing for the cession to the United States, on certain conditions; of all rights of sovereignty in the Hawaiian Islands.

President Harrison favored the acquirement of Hawaii and was doing his utmost to bring it about, when he was succeeded by President Cleveland, who made a complete change of policy. He withdrew the treaty from the senate and sent Hon. James H. Blount to Hawaii as special commissioner. By his order the protectorate was terminated and the American garrison withdrawn. President Cleveland considered the existence of the new government as due to improper American influence and instituted a movement for the restoration of Queen Liliuokalani. It was necessary that he should have the consent of congress before using force, and, that being refused, he was powerless. There the matter rested until December, 1897, when the treaty was again brought up and discussed by the United States senate.

**The Venezuela Question.** — A dispute had existed for a long time between Venezuela and Great Britain over their respective boundaries in the region of the Orinoco delta. Rich gold mines in the territory involved naturally made England strenuous in her claims, which were as strenuously opposed by Venezuela. The wrangle reached such a point in 1887, that diplomatic relations between the two countries were terminated. The United States viewed the quarrel with anxiety and made several suggestions of arbitration, which England stubbornly rejected.

In 1840, Sir R. Schomburgk was commissioned by England to survey and define the limits of the colony. He traced the boundary known as the Schomburgk line, which has figured so prominently in the controversy since. Although Schomburgk's proposals were never formally carried into effect, the line which he established was used as the basis of negotiations, England declaring in 1886 that she would consider no Venezuelan claims east of the line, but would submit her claims west of the line to arbitration.

On December 17, 1895, President Cleveland thrilled the country by a special message to congress, in which he recommended the creation of a commission to determine and report upon "the

true divisional line between Venezuela and British Guiana," adding that when such report should be made, it would, in his opinion, be the duty of the United States "to resist by every means in its power, as a wilful aggression upon its rights and interests, the appropriation by Great Britain of any lands, or the exercise of governmental jurisdiction over any territory which, after investigation, we have determined of right belongs to Venezuela."

This bold declaration of the sacred Monroe doctrine "struck fire" in the American heart, and was enthusiastically supported by both houses of congress, which immediately provided for the commission, the members of which were announced January 1, 1896, and were: David J. Brewer, associate justice of the supreme court of the United States, elected president; Richard A. Alvey, chief justice of the court of appeals of the District of Columbia; Frederick R. Coudert, who was one of the counsel of the United States in the Behring Sea arbitration; Daniel C. Gilman, president of Johns Hopkins University.

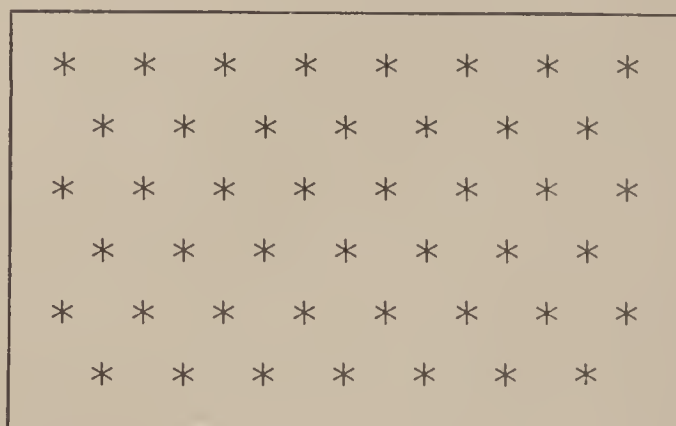
The news of the appointment of this commission caused astonishment and indignation in England, where it was insisted that the Monroe doctrine was not involved, and the action was an unwarrantable interference by a third power, not primarily concerned in the dispute. By and by, however, passion cooled on both sides, and England showed a disposition to consider the question calmly and fairly.

The possibility of a war between the two greatest of English-speaking nations caused a throb of horror among thoughtful men on both sides of the Atlantic, and they made their sentiments felt in such unmistakable terms, that it soon became clear that the most awful calamity that could befall civilization and Christianity can never again blight the hopes of the world. The dispute was finally settled in a friendly spirit by the nations concerned, in which the claims of Venezuela received full consideration and justice. A treaty submitting the question to arbitration was signed February 2, 1897, by the British ambassador and the



Venezuelan minister, in Washington, and the controversy, which had lasted nearly a century, was amicably closed.

**Admission of Utah.** — Utah was admitted to the Union January 4, 1896. It formed a part of the Mexican cession of 1848. When the Mormons emigrated thither, they found the country inhabited by the Ute or Utah Indians, whence the name of the Territory. In 1849, admission to the Union was demanded under the name of the State of "Deseret," but was refused. A territorial government was organized in 1850, with Brigham Young as governor. In 1862, admission was again demanded and again refused, polygamy being the cause. Its final admission increased, July 4, 1896, the number of stars on our flag to forty-five, arranged as follows:



**Presidential Election of 1896.** — The presidential election of this year was remarkable in many respects. There were eight tickets in the field, the order of nomination being as follows: Prohibitionist, at Pittsburg, May 27, Joshua Levering of Maryland and Hale Johnson of Illinois; National party, at Pittsburg, May 28, offshoot of the regular Prohibitionists, Charles E. Bentley of Nebraska and James Haywood Southgate of North Carolina; Republican, at St. Louis, June 18, William McKinley of Ohio and Garret A. Hobart of New Jersey; Socialist Labor, in New York, July 4, Charles H. Matchett of New York and Matthew Maguire of New Jersey; Democratic, in Chicago, July 10 and 11, William Jennings Bryan of Nebraska and Arthur Sewall of

Maine; Silverites, in St. Louis, July 24 and 25, William Jennings Bryan of Nebraska and Thomas E. Watson of Georgia; National Democratic party, in Indianapolis, September 3, John McAuley Palmer of Illinois and Simon Bolivar Buckner of Kentucky.

The real struggle was between the Republican party, on the one hand, of which Mr. McKinley was the nominee, and the Democratic and Silverite organizations on the other, with Mr. Bryan as their candidate. The distinctive issue was the coinage question, that of the tariff drifting into the background. The Republicans were committed to the maintenance of gold as the single standard of monetary value, while those who supported Mr. Bryan favored the unlimited coinage of silver. Even among the ranks of the old parties there was no unanimity of views on this question. The East and older sections of our country were uncompromising in their demand for gold as the single standard, but many of the Republicans from beyond the Mississippi insisted upon the free coinage of silver. The differences were so irreconcilable that the silver men bolted the Republican convention in St. Louis and supported the Bryan ticket.

The cause of the single gold standard, or "sound money," steadily increased in strength, with the result that in November the Republican candidates were successful by an electoral vote of two hundred and seventy-one against one hundred and seventy-six for Mr. Bryan, with a popular majority of about six hundred thousand in a total of more than thirteen millions.

**TOPICS.**—The second inauguration of President Cleveland; the financial stringency of 1893; extra session of congress; repeal of the purchase clause of the Sherman bill; the World's Columbian Exposition; the Columbian naval review; the Exposition in Chicago; Jackson Park; extent of the grounds; dedication of the structures; the Exposition itself; the admissions and receipts.

The unrest in the labor world; the dispute between the Pullman Palace Car Company and its employees; the strike; scenes of violence; General Master Workman Sovereign; the curse of labor strikes; the arrest of Eugene V. Debs; President Cleveland's action; arrest and punishment of Debs; the

final judgment of the supreme court regarding strikes; the treaty made with Hawaii in 1849 and later; King David Kalakaua; Queen Liliuokalani; the occurrences in January, 1893; the request made to the United States; the annexation treaty; the policy of President Cleveland; the dispute between Great Britain and Venezuela; its extent in 1887; the Schomburgk line; President Cleveland's message of December 17, 1895; the response of congress; the commission appointed and their duties; the feeling in England; the possibility of war between that country and our own; the conclusion of the matter; the admission of Utah; its early history; the number of stars in the American flag; the presidential election of 1896; the different nominations; the real question at issue; the political situation in August and September; the result of the election.

**BIOGRAPHICAL NOTES.** — **William McKinley**, twenty-fifth President, was born at Niles, Trumbull county, Ohio, January 29, 1843. He entered Allegheny College at the age of sixteen, but was obliged to leave on account of ill health. When he recovered he supported himself by teaching school. He enlisted as a private soldier at the opening of the war, serving with great gallantry to the close, by which time he had attained the rank of major. When peace came he studied law and was admitted to the bar in 1867. He was elected to congress in 1876 and served for seven terms. During his last term (1890) the famous protective measure bearing his name became law. During the same year he was elected governor of Ohio. His administration was so excellent and his popularity so great that they attracted national attention and led to his nomination for the presidency in 1896. In every station to which this able and patriotic American has been called he has justified the confidence of his countrymen.

**William Jennings Bryan** was born at Salem, Marion county, Illinois, March 19, 1860. He entered Illinois College in Jacksonville, and was graduated with honors in 1881. He adopted the profession of law, and removed to Lincoln, Nebraska, in 1887. He early developed marked oratorical powers, and became a popular political speaker. He was elected to congress in 1890 on the Democratic ticket, and made his first great success on March 12, 1892, in his speech on free wool. Mr. Bryan was re-elected and became known as one of the ablest champions of free silver. He refused a renomination in 1894 and strove to secure the United States senatorship, but the legislature was Republican and named his opponent. In the national canvass in the fall of 1896, Mr. McKinley remained at his home at Canton, Ohio, where he was continually called upon to address his almost innumerable visitors, while Mr. Bryan threw all his energies into the campaign, hurrying back and forth through the different States, displaying great ability, and doubtless making many thousand votes for his cause, though not enough to bring him victory.



## CHAPTER XLV

McKINLEY'S ADMINISTRATION. — 1897—



**I**NAUGURATION of President McKinley. — William McKinley was inaugurated as President on Thursday, March 4, 1897, in the presence of an immense assemblage, and with the best wishes of the whole country. In his inaugural, he showed the need of changes in the fiscal laws, pledged himself to do his utmost to secure international bimetallism, to preserve the credit of the government, to enforce economy in every branch, to provide for more revenue, and he declared that the voice of the people was unmistakably for protection. He advocated the reciprocity principle in tariff legislation, the proper checks to immigration, civil service reform, the building up of the merchant marine, a firm and dignified foreign policy, and strongly urged arbitration as the true method of settling international differences.

**Extra Session of Congress.** — President McKinley selected an able Cabinet and called an extra session of congress for March 15. The purpose of this session was to provide a tariff measure for meeting the running expenses of the government, and paying the deficiency that had been accruing annually for several years past. After earnest debate and careful consideration such a bill was framed and enacted ; the long continued busi-



WILLIAM McKINLEY

ness depression gradually passed away ; confidence was restored, and the great Republic resumed its career of prosperity, advancement, and achievement which has made it the leading nation of the earth.



STATUE OF LIBERTY, NEW YORK HARBOR

**“Greater New York.”** — The legislature of New York, in February, 1897, enacted a law by which “Greater New York,” as it is popularly termed, was created. This law united under one government the former metropolis, Brooklyn, Long Island City, Jamaica, all Staten Island, the western end of Long Island, Coney Island, Rockaway, Valley Stream, Flushing, Whitestone, College



Point, Willets' Point, Fort Schuyler, Throgg's Neck, Westchester, Baychester, Pelham Manor, Van Cortlandt, Riverdale, and Spuyten Duyvel.

The extreme length of this great city, from the southern end of Staten



CITY HALL PARK, NEW YORK

Island to the northern limits at Yonkers, is thirty-two miles, and its greatest width, from the Hudson River to the boundary line across Long Island, beyond Creedmoor, is sixteen miles. The area of the city is nearly three hundred and twenty square miles, and its population, on January 1, 1898,

when it began its official existence, was almost three and a half millions. Judge Robert A. Van Wyck, in the autumn of 1897, was elected the first mayor of "Greater New York."

**The Gold Fields of the Upper Yukon.** — Great excitement was caused in the summer of 1897, by the reports of the discovery of





TRINITY CHURCH AND NEW YORK HARBOR

enormously rich deposits of gold in British Columbia. The most valuable discoveries were along the Klondike River, one of the tributaries of the Upper Yukon, but Alaska undoubtedly contains equally rich deposits.

The reports at first were so wild that they were not credited,

but before long they were confirmed. The region named no doubt contains the most valuable deposits of gold that have yet been discovered in any part of the world. Thousands of people flocked thither, some by ascending the Yukon, which is closed by ice during two-thirds of the year, and others across the mountainous country from the south by way of Chilkoot Pass, various lakes and rapids to Dawson, on the Upper Yukon.

There was much suffering in the mining districts during the winter of 1897-1898, owing to the scarcity of food and the difficulty of transporting supplies thither. The rush, however, was renewed as soon as weather permitted, and included large numbers from the other side of the Atlantic. Many million dollars in gold have been taken from this region, and untold treasures still lie in the soil, waiting to be gathered. The facilities for travel will soon be greatly improved, and the yield of the precious metal promises to be so vast that its commercial value throughout the world may be affected.

Should the life of President McKinley be spared, it will be his privilege to conduct our country across the threshold of the twentieth century, and usher it into the period whose glory will surpass all that has gone before. No one can look upon the present and compare it with the past, without a glow of gratitude that his lot has been cast in so favored a land, and that his is the proudest birthright of all — that of being an *American*.

**Our Growth.** — The thirteen original States, scant in population, weak in resources, and sunken in debt and poverty, have expanded into forty-five States, rich and prosperous, with teeming cities and towns and flourishing rural communities, with boundless resources, with unconquerable enterprise and a future of promise such as no other nation has ever known or is likely to know. From the fringe of settlements along the Atlantic coast, with a background of millions of square miles of unknown mountain, prairie, and solitude, civilization has pressed westward to the Pacific, subduing the wilderness and the Indian tribes, develop-

ing the mineral wealth, making the virgin soil to yield its bounteous harvests, spanning the vast domain with railway and telegraph lines, and bringing the Old World and the New into close communication. Our territory has increased tenfold and the three million population has become more than seventy millions. This may reach one hundred millions by the opening of the twentieth century and a billion by its close.

**Natural Advantages.** — So enormous in extent is our country and so fertile our soil, that the United States could live in comfort if the rest of the world were blotted out. There is no production of the temperate or torrid zone which does not find here a congenial soil and favoring conditions. We raise not only enough wheat for our own people, but yearly send to other nations millions of bushels of the finest grain ever grown. The earth is an inexhaustible storehouse of coal, lead, iron, copper, oil, silver, gold, and all the metals and minerals useful to man.

**Material Advantages.** — Natural advantages, measureless as they are, cannot of themselves make a people great. It is the mental energy, the bodily vigor, the enterprise, the ambition, the courage, the patriotism, the inventive faculty, the honesty, integrity, and God-fearing rule of life that lifts a nation to the highest plane of achievement and civilization. The labor-saving inventions keep pace with the growth of the population. The cotton gins, sewing machines, improved printing presses, sowing and reaping machines, the various appliances of steam power, with the astounding development of electrical energy — of which as yet we see only the beginning — have multiplied the ability of man a hundred thousand fold. Railway and telegraph lines penetrate everywhere and bring the remotest corners of our country and of the earth into close communication, while the field of invention promises results of so momentous importance that it is idle to speculate upon them.

No country expends so much money in the education of its youth. We have learned that the instruction of the young was among the first thoughts of the pioneers, and within twenty years



of the settlement of New England, Harvard College was founded, while Virginia laid the foundations of a college in the very year of the landing of the Pilgrims at Plymouth, only to have it soon destroyed by Indians. Public libraries, schools, private institutions of learning, professional schools, colleges, and universities increase so rapidly that the statistics of to-day must be changed to-morrow. Thus in 1890, the public schools had a daily average attendance of 8,373,264, with 369,634 teachers; there were 430 universities and colleges of liberal arts; 141 theological schools; fifty-two law schools and 115 medical schools, and yet additions to a greater or less degree have been made to all these. In literature, art, and science our country has kept pace with the other advances along the line.

**The Future.** — If we are thus proud to compare the close of the nineteenth century with its opening, how will it be with those who come after us a hundred years from now? Will not they, too, look back and sympathize with those who did not live in those marvellous later days? Will they not pity our lack of wisdom and achievement, despite the boastings in which we indulged, and will they not wonder why, when we had made so good a beginning in knowledge, we did not go nearer to the end?

The amazing discoveries of the last few years leave no doubt that we are on the edge of more astounding discoveries in the limitless field of invention and science. Who dare try to guess the extent to which electricity will be made to serve us? Can any one doubt that there are other elements in nature than those we now know, but of which we have caught shadowy glimpses, that shall bend to our wishes?

**Our Responsibility.** — Where much is given, much will be required. Blessing and prosperity bring their duty and their responsibility. From that responsibility none of us can escape. We should improve to the utmost the advantages given to us, for opportunities once lost are lost forever. Should our boys grow up to manhood, they must take an intelligent interest in everything that tends to elevate and improve those around

them. They should study and understand all public questions, and vote as conscience and sound judgment direct. They should declare unrelenting enmity against dishonesty, immorality, and corruption, and do all in their power to crush them.

Be no idler, but a worker in your Master's vineyard. In all that you think and say and do, strive to earn the approval of Him to whom each of us must give an account; and who, if you do your duty, will welcome you with the blessed words: "Well done, good and faithful servant."

**TOPICS.** — The inauguration of President McKinley; his inaugural; the views he expressed; extra session of congress; tariff measure; prosperity; "Greater New York"; its dimensions; its birth; its first mayor; the gold regions of the Upper Yukon; the Klondike district; rush thither; difficulties encountered; great richness of that country.

The growth in the number of States; in resources; the expansion of territory; growth of population; the future increase; our wonderful advantages in soil and climatic conditions; the production of wheat; our mineral resources; that which makes a nation really great; the labor-saving inventions; railway and telegraph lines; the money expended in the education of youth; the first efforts in New England; in Virginia; the rapid increase of institutions of learning; public school statistics; literature, art, and science.

Let the pupil make a careful attempt to compare his country as it will probably be a hundred years from now, with its present condition. Show the probable increase in population, the number of States, in territory, in discovery, invention, science, achievement, and indeed in every field in which the great American nation is sure to advance.





## APPENDIX

---

### THE DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE, ADOPTED BY CONGRESS, JULY 4, 1776.

A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES  
OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

WHEN, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume among the powers of the earth the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident, that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness; that, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundation on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such a government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these Colonies; and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history

of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world:—

He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome, and necessary for the public good.

He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations, till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the legislature; a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected; whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large, for their exercise; the State remaining, in the mean time, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States; for that purpose, obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

He has obstructed the administration of justice by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

He has made judges dependent on his will alone, for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers, to harass our people, and eat out their substance.

He has kept among us, in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our legislature.

He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitution, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation:—

For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

For protecting them, by mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world ;

For imposing taxes on us without our consent ;

For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of trial by jury ;

For transporting us beyond seas to be tried for pretended offences ;

For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these Colonies ;

For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the powers of our governments ;

For suspending our own legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation, and tyranny, already begun with circumstances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

He has excited domestic insurrections amongst us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers, the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions, we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms ; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them, by the ties of our common kindred, to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity, which denounces our separation, and hold them, as we hold the rest of mankind, enemies in war ; in peace, friends.



We, therefore, the representatives of the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, in general congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these Colonies, solemnly publish and declare, That these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, *Free and Independent States*; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British Crown, and that all political connection between them and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved; and that, as *Free and Independent States*, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which *Independent States* may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of DIVINE PROVIDENCE, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE. — Josiah Bartlett, William Whipple, Matthew Thornton.

MASSACHUSETTS BAY. — Samuel Adams, John Adams, Robert Treat Paine, Elbridge Gerry.

RHODE ISLAND, ETC. — Stephen Hopkins, William Ellery.

CONNECTICUT. — Roger Sherman, Samuel Huntington, William Williams, Oliver Wolcott.

NEW YORK. — William Floyd, Philip Livingston, Francis Lewis, Lewis Morris.

NEW JERSEY. — Richard Stockton, John Witherspoon, Francis Hopkinson, John Hart, Abraham Clark.

PENNSYLVANIA. — Robert Morris, Benjamin Rush, Benjamin Franklin, John Morton, George Clymer, James Smith, George Taylor, James Wilson, George Ross.

DELAWARE. — Cæsar Rodney, George Read, Thomas M'Kean.

MARYLAND. — Samuel Chase, William Paca, Thomas Stone, Charles Carroll of Carrollton.

VIRGINIA. — George Wythe, Richard Henry Lee, Thomas Jefferson, Benjamin Harrison, Thomas Nelson, Jr., Francis Lightfoot Lee, Carter Braxton.

NORTH CAROLINA. — William Hooper, Joseph Hewes, John Penn.

SOUTH CAROLINA. — Edward Rutledge, Thomas Hayward, Jr., Thomas Lynch, Jr., Arthur Middleton.

GEORGIA. — Button Gwinnett, Lyman Hall, George Walton.

## CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.

SECTION 1.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECT. 2.—The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State legislature.

No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand; but each State shall have at least one representative; and, until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts, eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one, Connecticut, five, New York, six, New Jersey, four, Pennsylvania, eight, Delaware, one, Maryland, six, Virginia, ten, North Carolina, five, South Carolina, five, and Georgia, three.

When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

The House of Representatives shall choose their speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECT. 3.—The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two sena-

tors from each State, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided, as equally as may be, into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year, of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year, and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen, by resignation or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office as President of the United States.

The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the chief justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

Judgment, in cases of impeachment, shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECT. 4. — The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the Congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year; and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECT. 5. — Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members; and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.



Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECT. 6. — The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and, for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECT. 7. — All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve he shall sign it, but if not he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If, after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and, if approved by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But, in all such cases, the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and, before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECT. 8.—The Congress shall have power :—

To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare, of the United States ; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States :

To borrow money on the credit of the United States :

To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes :

To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States :

To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures :

To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States :

To establish post-offices and post-roads :

To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court :

To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations :

To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water :

To raise and support armies ; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years :

To provide and maintain a navy :

To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces :

To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions :

To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress :

To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dockyards, and other needful buildings: — And,

To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECT. 9.—The migration or importation of such persons, as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight; but a tax, or duty, may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

The privilege of the writ of *habeas corpus* shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

No bill of attainder or *ex post facto* law shall be passed.

No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, hereinbefore directed to be taken.

No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to or from one State be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties, in another.

No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECT. 10.—No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make anything but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, *ex post facto* law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts; or grant any title of nobility.

No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and imposts laid by any State on imports or exports shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and con-



trol of the Congress. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops or ships of war in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

SECTION I. — The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows: —

Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate. The president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates; and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the House of Representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for President; and if no person have a majority, then, from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States; the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States; and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the President, the person having the greatest number of votes of the electors shall be the Vice-President. But, if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the Senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the Vice-President.

The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

No person except a natural born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President ; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President ; and the Congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President ; declaring what officer shall then act as President ; and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected ; and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States or any of them.

Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation : —

“ I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States.”

SECT. 2. — The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States ; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two-thirds of the senators present concur ; and he shall nominate, and, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, shall appoint, ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law : but the Congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECT. 3. — He shall, from time to time, give to the Congress information

of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed; and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECT. 4. — The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.

SECTION 1. — The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior; and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECT. 2. — The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to controversies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more States, between a State and citizens of another State, between citizens of different States, between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign States, citizens, or subjects.

In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a State shall be a party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations, as the Congress shall make.

The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but, when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECT. 3. — Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no



attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

#### ARTICLE IV.

SECTION 1. — Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State. And the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECT. 2. — The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

No person held to service or labor in one State under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECT. 3. — New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the legislature of the States concerned, as well as of the Congress.

The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECT. 4. — The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

#### ARTICLE V.

The Congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislatures of two-thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight

hundred and eight, shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

#### ARTICLE VI.

All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the Confederation.

This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, anything in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

#### ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

*Done in Convention by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America the twelfth.*

*In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.*

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President,*  
*and deputy from Virginia.*

NEW HAMPSHIRE. — John Langdon, Nicholas Gilman.

MASSACHUSETTS. — Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

CONNECTICUT. — William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

NEW YORK. — Alexander Hamilton.

NEW JERSEY. — William Livingston, David Brearly, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.

PENNSYLVANIA. — Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.

DELAWARE. — George Read, Gunning Bedford, Jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.

MARYLAND. — James McHenry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.

VIRGINIA. — John Blair, James Madison, Jr.

NORTH CAROLINA. — William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.

SOUTH CAROLINA. — John Rutledge, Charles Cotesworth Pinckney, Charles Pinckney, Pierce Butler.

GEORGIA. — William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

*Attest :*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

---

## AMENDMENTS TO THE CONSTITUTION.

### ARTICLE I.

CONGRESS shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

### ARTICLE II.

A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

### ARTICLE III.

No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner; nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

### ARTICLE IV.

The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the person or things to be seized.

### ARTICLE V.

No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia when in actual service in time of war or public danger; nor shall any person be subject, for the same



offence, to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb ; nor shall be compelled, in any criminal case, to be a witness against himself ; nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law ; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

#### ARTICLE VI.

In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law ; and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation ; to be confronted with the witnesses against him ; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor ; and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

#### ARTICLE VII.

In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved ; and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

#### ARTICLE VIII.

Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

#### ARTICLE IX.

The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

#### ARTICLE X.

The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

#### ARTICLE XI.

The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign State.

#### ARTICLE XII.

The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabi-

tant of the same State with themselves ; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President ; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate ; the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted : the person having the greatest number of votes for President shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But, in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote ; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President.

The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed ; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list the Senate shall choose the Vice-President: a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

#### ARTICLE XIII.

SECTION I. — Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECT. 2. — Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.

#### ARTICLE XIV.

SECTION I. — All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which

shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

SECT. 2. — Representatives shall be apportioned among the several States, according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State, excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive and judicial officers of a State, or the members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

SECT. 3. — No person shall be a senator, or representative in Congress, or elector of President and Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof: but Congress may, by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

SECT. 4. — The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pensions, and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States, nor any State, shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

SECT. 5. — The Congress shall have power to enforce by appropriate legislation the provisions of this Article.

#### ARTICLE XV.

SECTION 1. — The right of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

SECT. 2. — The Congress shall have power to enforce this Article by appropriate legislation.



LIST OF PRESIDENTS AND VICE-PRESIDENTS

NO.	PRESIDENT	STATE	TERM OF OFFICE	BY WHOM ELECTED	BORN	DIED	VICE-PRESIDENT
1	George Washington	Virginia	Two terms: 1789-97	Entire Electoral College	Feb. 22, 1732	Dec. 14, 1799	John Adams
2	John Adams	Massachusetts	One term: 1797-1801	Federalists	Oct. 30, 1735	July 4, 1826	Thomas Jefferson
3	Thomas Jefferson	Virginia	Two terms: 1801-09	Republicans	April 13, 1743	July 4, 1826	{ Aaron Burr { George Clinton
4	James Madison	Virginia	Two terms: 1809-17	Republicans	Mar. 16, 1751	June 28, 1836	{ Elbridge Gerry { Daniel D. Tompkins
5	James Monroe	Virginia	Two terms: 1817-25	Republicans	April 28, 1758	July 4, 1831	John C. Calhoun
6	John Quincy Adams	Massachusetts	One term: 1825-29	House of Rep.	July 11, 1767	Feb. 23, 1848	{ John C. Calhoun { Martin V an Buren
7	Andrew Jackson	Tennessee	Two terms: 1829-37	Democrats	Mar. 15, 1767	June 8, 1845	{ Richard M. Johnson { John Tyler
8	Martin Van Buren	New York	One term: 1837-41	Democrats	Dec. 5, 1782	July 24, 1862	George M. Dallas
9	William H. Harrison	Ohio	One month: 1841	Whigs	Feb. 9, 1773	April 4, 1841	Millard Fillmore
10	John Tyler	Virginia	3 yrs. and 11 mos.: 1841-45	Whigs	Mar. 29, 1770	Jan. 18, 1862	{ J. C. Breckinridge { Hannibal Hamlin
11	James K. Polk	Tennessee	One term: 1845-49	Democrats	Nov. 2, 1795	June 15, 1849	{ Andrew Johnson { Schuyler Colfax
12	Zachary Taylor	Louisiana	1 year and 4 mos.: 1849-50	Whigs	Sept. 24, 1784	July 9, 1850	{ Henry Wilson { William A. Wheeler
13	Millard Fillmore	New York	2 yrs. and 8 mos.: 1850-53	Whigs	Feb. 7, 1800	Mar. 8, 1874	Thomas A. Hendricks
14	Franklin Pierce	New Hampshire	One term: 1853-57	Democrats	Nov. 23, 1804	Oct. 8, 1869	Levi P. Morton
15	James Buchanan	Pennsylvania	One term: 1857-61	Democrats	April 22, 1791	June 1, 1868	Adlai E. Stevenson
16	Abraham Lincoln	Illinois	One term and 1 mo.: 1861-65	Republicans	Feb. 12, 1809	April 15, 1865	Garret A. Hobart
17	Andrew Johnson	Tennessee	3 years and 11 mos.: 1865-69	Republicans	Dec. 29, 1808	July 31, 1875	
18	Ulysses S. Grant	Illinois	Two terms: 1869-77	Republicans	April 27, 1822	July 23, 1885	
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio	One term: 1877-81	Republicans	Oct. 4, 1822	Jan. 17, 1893	
20	James A. Garfield	Ohio	Six and a half mos.: 1881	Republicans	Nov. 19, 1831	Sept. 19, 1887	
21	Chester A. Arthur	New York	3 yrs., 5½ mos.: 1881-85	Republicans	Oct. 5, 1830	Nov. 18, 1886	
22	Grover Cleveland	New York	One term: 1885-89	Democrats	Mar. 18, 1837		
23	Benjamin Harrison	Indiana	One term: 1889-93	Republicans	Aug. 20, 1833		
24	Grover Cleveland	New York	One term: 1893-97	Democrats			
25	William McKinley	Ohio		Republicans	Jan. 29, 1843		

## CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY OF EVENTS.

	PAGE
860-1011..Discoveries by the Northmen.....	1-4
1492.....Columbus discovered the New World, October 12 .....	14
1497.....John Cabot discovered the continent of North America.....	20
1498.....Sebastian Cabot explored the Atlantic coast.....	20
Columbus discovered South America.....	17
1512.....Ponce de Leon discovered Florida, March 27.....	25
1513.....Balboa discovered the Pacific Ocean, September 26.....	24
1524.....Verrazani coasted North America .....	28
Narvaez explored a part of Florida.....	26
1526.....De Ayllon settled on the subsequent site of Jamestown, Vir- ginia.....	26
1528.....De Narvaez landed in Florida .....	26
1534-1535..Cartier ascended the St. Lawrence .....	28
1539-1541..De Soto wandered through the Southwest and discovered the Mississippi .....	27
1559.....Ribaut planted a Huguenot colony at Port Royal.....	30-32
1564.....Laudonniere planted a colony on the St. John's which was destroyed by Spaniards .....	31-33
1565.....St. Augustine, Florida, was founded by Menendez.....	34
1576-1577..Frobisher entered Baffin Bay in search of a northwest passage.	21
1583.....Sir Humphrey Gilbert was lost at sea .....	21
1584-1587..Sir Walter Raleigh failed twice to plant a colony in Virginia.	21
1602.....Gosnold visited the New England coast.....	22
1605.....De Monts and Champlain established a colony at Port Royal, Nova Scotia.....	62
1607.....Jamestown, Virginia, was settled, May 13.....	40
1609.....Captain Henry Hudson sailed up the Hudson River.....	53-54
Virginia received its second charter, May 23.....	43
1609-1610..Starving time in Virginia.....	44
1612.....Virginia received its third charter, March 22.....	45
1613.....New York settled by the Dutch.....	53
1614.....John Smith explored the New England coast.....	62
1619.....First colonial assembly in America met at Jamestown, July 30	47
Slavery introduced at Jamestown.....	47
1620.....The Pilgrims landed at Plymouth, Massachusetts, December 21 .....	65

	PAGE
1622.....Indian massacre in Virginia, March 22.....	48
New Hampshire granted to Gorges and Mason.....	72
1628.....Settlement made near Salem, Massachusetts.....	68
1630.....First house built in Boston, July .....	68
1634.....Maryland settled at St. Mary's.....	92
1633-1636..Connecticut settled at Windsor, Hartford, and Weathersfield.	69
1635.....Clayborne's rebellion in Maryland.....	92-93
1636.....Rhode Island settled at Providence, June.....	69
Destruction of the Pequot Indians, May 25.....	69
Harvard College founded .....	71
1638.....Delaware settled near Wilmington by Swedes, April.....	90
1639.....First printing-press in America set up at Harvard College ...	71
1641.....New Hampshire united to Massachusetts... ..	72
1644.....Second Indian massacre in Virginia, April 18.....	48
Charter granted to Rhode Island.....	72
1652-1653..Maine added to Massachusetts.....	72
1655.....Civil war in Maryland .....	94
New Sweden conquered by the Dutch.....	91
1660.....Navigation Act enforced.....	78
1663.....Albemarle colony founded .....	94
1664.....New Netherland conquered by the English and named New York, August 29.....	58
1665.....New Jersey settled at Elizabethtown .....	84
1670.....South Carolina settled on the Ashley River .....	95
1672.....New York recaptured by the Dutch .....	59
1674.....New York ceded to the English .....	59
1675-1676..King Philip's war .....	74-78
1676.....Bacon's rebellion .....	50-51
New Jersey divided into East and West Jersey, July 1.....	86
1680.....Charleston, South Carolina, founded .....	95
1681.....Philadelphia laid out by Penn's commissioners .....	88
1682.....Pennsylvania settled.....	88
1684.....Massachusetts made a royal province .....	78
1686.....Andros arrived in Boston as governor of New England.....	78
1689-1697..King William's war .....	79-80
Andros deposed .....	60
1692.....Salem witchcraft delusion.....	80-81
1701.....Delaware separated from Pennsylvania.....	90
1702-1713..Queen Anne's war .....	81
1710.....Port Royal, Nova Scotia, captured by English and named Annapolis .....	81



1732.....	George Washington born, February 22.....	103
1733.....	Georgia settled by Oglethorpe at Savannah, February 12 ....	96
1744-1748..	King George's war.....	83
1745.....	Louisburg captured by the English, June 17 .....	83
1754.....	Battle of Great Meadows .....	105
	Convention of the colonies held at Albany, New York .....	105
1755.....	Expulsion of Acadians .....	108
	Braddock's massacre, July 9.....	107
1758.....	Louisburg taken by Amherst and Wolfe, July 27 .....	111
1759.....	Ticonderoga and Crown Point abandoned by the French ....	111
	Capture of Quebec, September 18.....	112
1760.....	Montreal surrendered, September 8 .....	112
1763.....	French and Indian war ended by treaty of Paris .....	112
	Conspiracy of Pontiac.....	113
1765.....	Passage of the Stamp Act, March 8 .....	124
1766.....	Stamp Act repealed, March 18.....	125
1770.....	Boston massacre, March 5.....	125
1773.....	Boston tea party, December 16 .....	126
1774.....	Boston port bill passed, March 31.....	127
	First continental congress met at Philadelphia, September 5.....	127
1775.....	Battle of Lexington, April 19.....	128-130
	Ticonderoga captured by Allen and Arnold, May 10 .....	131
	Second continental congress met at Philadelphia, May 10....	131
	Crown Point captured, May 12 .....	131
	Washington elected commander-in-chief, June 15 .....	132
	Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17 .....	133
	Washington took command at Boston, July 3.....	135
	Montreal surrendered to Montgomery, November 13.....	135
	Battle before Quebec, Montgomery killed, December 31.....	136
1776.....	Boston evacuated by the British, March 17 .....	141
	Attack on Fort Moultrie, June 28 .....	143
	Declaration of Independence, July 4 .....	145
	Americans defeated on Long Island, August 27 .....	146
	Battle of White Plains, October 28.....	147
	Fort Washington captured by the enemy, November 16.....	148
	Washington's retreat through New Jersey .....	148
	Battle of Trenton, December 26 .....	150-151
1777.....	Battle at the Assunpink bridge, Trenton, January 2 .....	155
	Battle of Princeton, January 3.....	156
	Battle of Bennington, August 16.....	157
	Battle of Brandywine, September 11.....	160

	PAGE
1777..... Philadelphia captured by the British, September 26.....	160
Battle of Germantown, October 4 .....	160
Surrender of Burgoyne, October 17 .....	158
1778..... France acknowledged American Independence, February 6..	167
Battle of Monmouth, June 28.....	169
Massacre at Wyoming, July 3.....	171
Capture of Savannah, December 29 .....	172
1779..... Stony Point captured by Wayne, July 16 .....	177
Defeat of Indians by Sullivan, near Elmira, August 29 .....	177
Paul Jones's great naval victory, September 23.....	178
Failure of the American and French attack on Savannah, October 9.....	176
1780..... Charleston captured by the enemy, May 12 .....	183
Battle of Camden, August 16.....	186
Treason of Benedict Arnold.....	187-191
André executed, October 2.....	190
Battle of King's Mountain, October 7 .....	186
1781..... Richmond burned by Arnold, January 5.....	197
Battle of the Cowpens, January 17 .....	194
Battle of Guilford Court House, March 15.....	194
Battle of Eutaw Springs, September 8 .....	195
Surrender of Cornwallis at Yorktown, October 19 .....	200
1782..... Charleston, South Carolina, evacuated, December 14.....	203
1783..... Savannah evacuated, July 11 .....	203
Treaty of peace signed at Paris, September 3.....	203
New York evacuated, November 25 .....	203
Washington resigned his commission, December 23.....	204
1787..... Shays's rebellion in Massachusetts.....	209
Constitution of the United States adopted, September 17 ....	210
1788..... Constitution ratified by nine states.....	210
1789..... Washington inaugurated at New York, April 30.....	213
1791..... Vermont admitted to the Union, March 4 .....	218
1792..... Kentucky admitted to the Union, June 1.....	218
1794..... Western Indians defeated by Wayne, August 20.....	216
Whiskey rebellion .....	217
1795..... Jay's treaty ratified, June 24.....	217
1796..... Tennessee admitted to the Union, June 1.....	218
1799..... Washington died, December 14.....	223
1800..... National capital removed to Washington .....	223
1801-1805.. War with Tripoli .....	228
1803..... Ohio admitted to the Union, February 19 .....	227

	PAGE
1803.....	Louisiana purchased from France, April 30 ..... 227
1804.....	The frigate <i>Philadelphia</i> destroyed by Decatur, February 15... 230
	Hamilton killed by Burr in a duel, July 11..... 219
1807.....	<i>Chesapeake</i> and <i>Leopard</i> affair, June 22 ..... 231
	Fulton's <i>Clermont</i> ascends the Hudson..... 231
1811.....	Action between the <i>President</i> and <i>Little Belt</i> , May 16..... 235
	Battle of Tippecanoe, November 7 ..... 236
1812.....	Louisiana admitted to the Union, April 30 ..... 236
	War declared against England, June 19 ..... 236
	Hull invaded Canada, July 12 . . . . . 238
	Mackinaw surrendered, July 17 ..... 238
	Hull surrendered Detroit, August 16..... 238
	<i>Guerriere</i> captured by the <i>Constitution</i> , August 19 ..... 240
	Battle of Queenstown Heights, October 13 ..... 239
	<i>Wasp</i> captured the <i>Frolic</i> , October 13..... 242
1813.....	Battle of Frenchtown, January 22 ..... 245
	Capture of York, Canada, April 27 ..... 244
	Attack on Sackett's harbor, May 29 ..... 244
	<i>Chesapeake</i> captured by the <i>Shannon</i> , June 1..... 246
	Defence of Fort Stephenson, Ohio, August 2 ..... 246
	Indian massacre at Fort Mimms, August 30..... 251
	Perry's victory on Lake Erie, September 10..... 249
	Battle of the Thames, October 5 ..... 250
	Battle of Chrysler's Field, November 11 ..... 245
1814.....	Battle of Horseshoe Bend, March 27 ..... 252
	Battle of Chippewa, July 5 ..... 252
	Battle of Lundy's Lane, July 25..... 252
	Washington captured by the British, August 24 ..... 254
	Battle of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain, September 11. . . 253
	Bombardment of Fort McHenry, September 13 ..... 254
	Treaty of peace signed at Ghent, December 24..... 254
1815.....	Battle of New Orleans, January 8 ..... 255
	Capture of the <i>Cyane</i> and <i>Levant</i> , by the <i>Constitution</i> , February 20. . . . . 255
	War with Algiers..... 256
1816.....	Indiana admitted to the Union, December 11..... 256
1817.....	Mississippi admitted to the Union, December 10 ..... 263
1818.....	Illinois admitted to the Union, December 3 ..... 263
1819.....	Alabama admitted to the Union, December 14 ..... 264
	The <i>Savannah</i> the first steamer to cross the Atlantic..... 262
	Florida purchased of Spain, February 22 ..... 263



	PAGE
1820 . . . . . Missouri Compromise passed, March 3 . . . . .	264
Maine admitted to the Union, March 15 . . . . .	264
1821 . . . . . Missouri admitted to the Union, August 10 . . . . .	265
1824 . . . . . Visit of Lafayette . . . . .	265
1825 . . . . . Erie Canal completed . . . . .	267
1826 . . . . . John Adams and Thomas Jefferson died, July 4 . . . . .	220
First railway in this country built . . . . .	267
1829 . . . . . First steam locomotive in this country put in service . . . . .	267
1832 . . . . . Nullification in South Carolina . . . . .	272
1835 . . . . . Dade's massacre by Seminoles, December 28 . . . . .	274
1836 . . . . . Arkansas admitted to the Union, June 15 . . . . .	275
1837 . . . . . Michigan admitted to the Union, January 26 . . . . .	275
1841 . . . . . Death of President Harrison, April 4 . . . . .	284
1842 . . . . . Dorr's rebellion in Rhode Island . . . . .	286
1844 . . . . . First public telegram sent, May 29 . . . . .	289
1845 . . . . . Florida admitted to the Union, March 3 . . . . .	289
Texas admitted to the Union, December 29 . . . . .	289
1846 . . . . . Battle of Palo Alto, May 8 . . . . .	293
Battle of Resaca de la Palma, May 9 . . . . .	293
Monterey captured, September 24 . . . . .	294
Iowa admitted to the Union, December 28 . . . . .	289
1847 . . . . . Battle of Buena Vista, February 23 . . . . .	294
Vera Cruz captured, March 29 . . . . .	295
Battle of Cerro Gordo, April 18 . . . . .	295
Battle of Contreras, August 20 . . . . .	295
Capture of Chapultepec, September 13 . . . . .	295
City of Mexico surrendered, September 14 . . . . .	296
1848 . . . . . Treaty of peace with Mexico signed, February 2 . . . . .	296
Gold discovered in California, February . . . . .	297
Wisconsin admitted to the Union, May 29 . . . . .	297
1850 . . . . . Death of President Taylor, July 9 . . . . .	300
California admitted to the Union, September 9 . . . . .	300
1854 . . . . . Repeal of the Missouri Compromise, May 31 . . . . .	303
1858 . . . . . Minnesota admitted to the Union, May 11 . . . . .	311
1859 . . . . . Oregon admitted to the Union, February 14 . . . . .	311
John Brown's raid, October . . . . .	310
1860 . . . . . South Carolina passed an ordinance of secession, December 20 . . . . .	312
1861 . . . . . <i>Star of the West</i> steamer fired on, January 9 . . . . .	314
Kansas admitted to the Union, January 29 . . . . .	312
Southern Confederacy formed at Montgomery, Alabama, February 9 . . . . .	312

1861.....	Bombardment of Fort Sumter, April 12, 13 .....	320
	Massachusetts troops attacked in Baltimore, April 19 .....	321
	Battle of Big Bethel, Virginia, June 10.....	323
	Battle of Bull Run, July 21.....	323
	Battle of Wilson's Creek, August 10 .....	325
	Forts at Hatteras Inlet, North Carolina, captured, August 29.....	325
	Battle of Lexington, Missouri, September 20.....	325
	Battle of Ball's Bluff, October 21 .....	325
	Port Royal, South Carolina, taken, November 7 .....	325
	Seizure of Mason and Slidell on the steamer <i>Trent</i> , Novem- ber 8 .....	328
1862.....	Fort Henry, Tennessee, captured, February 6 .....	329
	Roanoke Island, North Carolina, taken, February 8.....	339
	Fort Donelson, Tennessee, captured, February 16 .....	330
	Battle of Pea Ridge, Arkansas, March 7, 8 .....	331
	Fight between the <i>Monitor</i> and <i>Merrimac</i> , March 9 ....	336-338
	Newbern, North Carolina, taken, March 14.....	339
	Battle of Shiloh or Pittsburg Landing, Tennessee, April 6, 7 .....	331
	Island No. 10 captured, April 7.....	332
	Capture of New Orleans, April 25 .....	339
	Beaufort, North Carolina, taken, April 25 .....	339
	Occupation of Yorktown, Virginia, May 4 .....	340
	Battle of Williamsburg, Virginia, May 5.....	340
	Norfolk, Virginia, surrendered, May 10 .....	333
	Corinth, Mississippi, taken, May 30 .....	332
	Memphis, Tennessee, surrendered, June 6 .....	332
	Second battle of Bull Run, or Manassas, August 29, 30.....	342
	Harper's Ferry surrendered, September 15 .....	342
	Battle of Antietam, Maryland, September 17.....	342
	Battle of Corinth, Mississippi, October 4 .....	332
	Battle of Perryville, Kentucky, October 8.....	332
	Battle of Fredericksburg, Virginia, December 13 .....	343
	Battle of Murfreesboro, Tennessee, December 31, January 2, 1863 .....	333
1863.....	Emancipation proclamation, January 1.....	344
	Fort Sumter attacked by the Union fleet, April 7 .....	350
	Battle of Chancellorsville, Virginia, May 2, 3 .....	351-352
	Admission of West Virginia, June 19 .....	366
	Battle of Gettysburg, Pennsylvania, July 1-3 .....	352-356
	Vicksburg surrendered, July 4 ....	350
	Port Hudson captured, July 8.....	350

	PAGE
1863.....	Fort Wagner taken, September 7 ..... 350
	Battle of Chickamauga, Georgia, September 19, 20 ..... 345
	Battle of Chattanooga, Tennessee, November 24, 25 ..... 345
	Siege of Knoxville raised, December 4 ..... 348
1864.....	Grant made lieutenant general, March 2 ..... 358
	Battles in the Wilderness, Virginia, May 5-30..... 361
	Battle of Newmarket, Virginia, May 15 ..... 362
	Battle of Cold Harbor, Virginia, June 3 ... .. 361
	<i>Alabama</i> sunk by the <i>Kearsarge</i> , June 19 ..... 365
	Battle of Monocacy, Maryland, July 9 .... . 362
	Chambersburg, Pennsylvania, burned, July 30..... 362
	Mine explosion before Petersburg, Virginia, July 30..... 361
	Farragut forced an entrance to Mobile Bay, August 5 ..... 364
	Atlanta, Georgia, taken, September 2..... 359
	Battle of Winchester, Virginia, September 19 ..... 362
	Battle of Fisher's Hill, Virginia, September 22 ... .. 362
	Battle of Cedar Creek, Virginia, October 19 ... .. 362
	Nevada admitted to the Union, October 31..... 366
	Battle of Nashville, Tennessee, December 15, 16..... 359
	Savannah, Georgia, captured by Sherman, December 20. ... 360
1865.....	Fort Fisher, North Carolina, captured, January 15..... 364
	Columbia, South Carolina, taken, February 17..... 368
	Charleston, South Carolina, captured, February 18..... 368
	Battle of Averysboro and Bentonville, North Carolina, March 15-18 ..... 368
	Attack on Fort Steadman, Virginia, March 25..... 369
	Battle of Five Forks, Virginia, April 1..... 369
	Petersburg and Richmond taken, April 2, 3..... 369
	Lee surrendered at Appomattox, Virginia, April 9..... 372
	President Lincoln assassinated, April 14..... 373
	Johnston's army surrendered, April 26..... 374
	Jefferson Davis captured, May 10..... 375
1866.....	Fenian invasion of Canada..... 390
1867.....	Maximilian shot in Mexico, June 19..... 391
	Purchase of Alaska..... 390
	Nebraska admitted to the Union, March 1..... 391
1868.....	Impeachment and acquittal of President Johnson..... 389
	General amnesty proclaimed..... 389
1869.....	Completion of the overland railway, May 10..... 392
1871.....	Great Chicago fire, October 8..... 393
1872.....	Great fire in Boston, November 9, 10..... 394



	PAGE
1872.....San Juan boundary dispute settled.....	395
1873.....Modocs killed General Canby and Dr. Thomas, April 11.....	398
1876.....Centennial exposition at Philadelphia, May 10 to November 10..	400
Massacre of Custer and his command, June 25.....	400
Colorado admitted to the Union, August 1.....	395
1877.....Numerous railway strikes.....	403
1879.....Resumption of specie payments, January 1.....	403
1880.....Greely arctic expedition.....	407
1881.....President Garfield assassinated, July 2.....	406
Yorktown centennial, October 18-20.....	407
Anti-Chinese immigration law passed.....	407
1884.....Return of the Greely relief expedition, August 8.....	409
1885.....Death of General Grant, July 23.....	378
Conquest of the Apaches.....	412
Numerous labor strikes.....	411
1886.....Anarchistic riot in Chicago, May 4... ..	411
Charleston earthquake, August, September.....	411
1888.....Death of General Sheridan, August 5.....	380
1889.....Johnstown, Penn., flood, May 31.....	414
North and South Dakota admitted to the Union, November 3..	418
Montana admitted to the Union, November 8.....	419
1890-1891..Indian uprising.....	416
Idaho admitted to the Union, July 3.....	419
Wyoming admitted to the Union, July 11.....	419
1891.....Threatened war with Chile.....	415
Death of General Sherman, February 14.....	380
1893... ..Columbian naval review, April 27.....	422
Columbian exposition at Chicago, May 1 to November 1.....	422
1895.....Venezuelan boundary question, December 17.....	427
Utah admitted to the Union, January 4... ..	429
1897.....Venezuelan boundary dispute settled, February 2.....	429
Valuable gold discoveries on the Upper Yukon.....	434
1898....."Greater New York" began its official existence. ....	434

## REFERENCE READINGS

PERIOD I. — Young Folks' Series (edited by T. W. Higginson), No. 1. The Legends of the Northmen, Columbus and his Companions; No. 2. Cabot and Verrazano, The Strange Voyage of Cabaza and De Vaca; No. 3. The French in Canada, Adventures of De Soto; No. 4. The French in Florida, Sir Humphrey Gilbert; Bradford's American Antiquities; Irving's Columbus; Parkman's Pioneers of France; Help's Spanish Conquest of America; Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella; Shea's Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley; Towle's Heroes of History (Raleigh).

PERIOD II. — Young Folk's Series (edited by T. W. Higginson) No. 5. The Lost Colonies of Virginia, Unsuccessful New England Settlements; No. 6. Captain John Smith, Champlain on the War Path; No. 7. Henry Hudson and the New Netherlands; No. 8. The Pilgrims at Plymouth, The Massachusetts Bay Colony; Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac; Elliott's History of New England; Hall's Puritans and their Principles; Watson's The Great Peacemaker (Penn); Parkman's Montcalm and Wolfe; Coffin's Old Times in the Colonies.

PERIOD III. — Maclay's History of the American Navy; Lossing's Field Book of the Revolution; The Swamp Fox (Rough and Ready Series); Hale's George Washington; Hosmer's Samuel Adams; Irving's Life of Washington; Johnson's Old French War; Johnston's Shorter History of the United States; Lossing's Mary and Martha Washington; McMaster's History of the United States; Monroe's Story of Our Country; Schouler's History of the United States; Sparks's American Biography; Watson's Boston Tea Party, Noble Deeds of Our Fathers, The Friend of George Washington (Lafayette); Wirt's Life of Patrick Henry; Parton's Life of Benjamin Franklin; Ellett's Domestic History of the American Revolution; Harvey's Reminiscences of Daniel Webster.

PERIOD IV. — Preble's History of the Flag of the United States; Von Holst's Constitutional History of the United States, John C. Calhoun; Wright's Children's Stories of American Progress; Lossing's Field Book of the War of 1812; Rough and Ready Series (Zachary Taylor, Andrew Jackson, The Mill Boy of the Slashes, The Great Expounder); Tucker's Life of Jefferson.

PERIOD V. — Blaisdell's Stories of the Civil War; Cable's The Negro Question; Cooke's Life of General R. E. Lee; Drake's Battle of Gettysburg; Grant's Personal Memoirs; Greeley's American Conflict; Nichols's Story of the Great March; Randolph's Life of Stonewall Jackson; Sheridan's Memoirs; Soley's Sailor Boys of '61; Sherman's Memoirs; J. E. Johnston's Narrative of Military Operations; Davis's Rise and Fall of the Confederate States of

America; The Battles and Leaders of the Civil War, Century Magazine, Vol. 29; Nicolay and Hay's Life of Abraham Lincoln.

PERIOD VI.—McMaster's History of the People of the United States; Roosevelt's Winning of the West; Andrews's History of the last Twenty-Five Years (1865-1890); Appleton's Cyclopædia of American Biography; Johnston's American Politics; Grady's New South; The Presidents of the United States (edited by James Grant Wilson); Lalor's Cyclopædia of Political Science, Political Economy, and Political History of the United States; Macy's Our Government; Nordhoff's Politics for Young Americans; Winsor's Narrative and Critical History of the United States.



## INDEX

---

- Acadians, expulsion of, 108.  
 Adams, John, 210, 217, 220, 221-224.  
 Adams, John Quincy, 266, 267-269.  
 Adams, Samuel, 127, 138.  
 Advantages, material, natural, 437.  
 Alabama, admission of, 264.  
*Alabama*, the, 350, 364.  
 "Alabama Claims," settled, 394.  
 Alamo, attack on, 288.  
 Alaska, purchase of, 390.  
 Albany, 54, 55.  
*Albemarle*, the, 366.  
 Alexandria, seizure of, 322.  
 Algiers, war with, 256.  
 Alien and sedition laws, 222, 226.  
 Allen, Ethan, 131.  
 Americus Vespuccius, 19.  
 Amnesty proclamation, 389.  
 Anderson, Major Robert, 313, 375.  
 André, capture and execution of, 189-190.  
 Andros, Edmund, 59, 60, 78, 79.  
 Antietam, battle of, 342.  
 Anti-rent difficulties, 286.  
 Apaches, 412.  
 Appomattox, surrender of Lee at, 372.  
 Archdale, John, 95.  
 Arkansas, admission of, 275.  
 Arlington Heights, seizure of, 322.  
 Arnold, Benedict, 131, 135, 136, 157, 187-191, 197.  
 Arthur, Chester A., 404, 405-409.  
 Articles of Confederation, 162, 207.  
 Assunpink bridge, battle at, 155.  
 Atlanta, capture of, 359.  
 Atlantic cable, 310, 391.  
 Aversboro, battle at, 368.  
 Ayllon, De, 25, 26.  
 Bacon's rebellion, 49-51.  
 Bailey, Colonel Joseph, 363, 375.  
 Bainbridge, Captain William, 228, 229, 233, 242.  
 Baker, Colonel E. D., 325.  
 Balboa, Vasco Nuñez de, 23, 24.  
 Ball's Bluff, battle at, 325.  
 Baltimore, Lord, 92-94.  
 Bank of North America organized, 197.  
 Banks, N. P., 341, 363, 375.  
 Beaufort, capture of, 339.  
 Beauregard, P. G. T., 319, 330, 331, 332, 361, 381.  
 Bennington, battle of, 157.  
 Bentonville, battle of, 368.  
 Berkeley, Governor, 49-51.  
 Bermuda Hundred, battle at, 361.  
 Bible Society, American, 262.  
 Big Bethel, skirmish at, 323.  
 Blockade, the, 329.  
 Boone, Daniel, 218.  
 Boston, 62; massacre, 125; tea party, 126; evacuation of, 141; great fire, 394.  
 Boundary, northeast, 285; northwest, 296.  
 Braddock's massacre, 106, 107.  
 Bradford, Governor, 66, 67.  
 Bragg, Braxton, 332, 333, 344, 345, 382.  
 Brandywine, battle of, 160.  
 Brown College, 124.  
 Brown, Jacob, 244, 252, 253, 259.  
 Brown, John, 310.  
 Bryan, W. J., 429, 430, 431.  
 Buchanan, James, 305, 308, 309-315.  
 Buell, D. C., 331, 332.  
 Buena Vista, battle of, 294.

- Bull Run, first battle of, 323; second of, 342.  
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 132-135.  
 Burgesses, house of, 47.  
 Burgoyne, 156-158, 165.  
 Burnside, A. E., 343, 348, 376.  
 Burr, Aaron, 224, 225.  
 Butler, B. F., 323, 339, 361, 376.  
  
 Cabot, John, 20.  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 20.  
 Calhoun, J. C., 269, 272, 278, 288.  
 California, 295, 300.  
 Calvert, Governor, 92.  
 Camby, E. R. S., 398, 401.  
 Camden, battle of, 186.  
 Carleton, Sir Guy, 136, 140, 203.  
 Carolina, South, secession of, 312.  
 Carolina University, 262.  
 Carolinas, colonial history of, 94, 95.  
 Carpet bag rule, 393.  
 Carteret, George, 86.  
 Carteret, James, 85.  
 Carteret, Sir Philip, 84.  
 Cartier, 28, 30.  
 Carver, Governor, 64, 66.  
 Centennial, American Independence, 400.  
 Cerro Gordo, battle of, 295.  
 Chambersburg, burning of, 362.  
 Champlain, Samuel de, 62.  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 352.  
 Chapultepec, capture of, 295.  
 Charleston, 95, 143, 183, 203, 350, 368, 411.  
 Charter Oak, 78, 79.  
 Chattanooga, 344.  
*Chesapeake and Leopard*, 231.  
*Chesapeake and Shannon*, 246.  
 Chicago, 393, 411, 421.  
 Chickamauga, battle of, 345.  
 Chile, 415.  
 China, discoverers of America, 5.  
 Chinese immigration forbidden, 407.  
 Chippewa, battle of, 252.  
 Chrysler's Field, battle of, 245.  
 Churubusco, battle of, 295.  
 Civil service reform, 409.  
 Clarendon, Lord, 94.  
 Clarke, Major George Rogers, 172, 175.  
 Clay, Henry, 261, 272, 273, 279, 299.  
 Clayborne's rebellion, 93.  
*Clermont*, the, 231.  
 Cleveland, Grover, 409, 410, 411, 412, 420-430.  
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 146, 153, 170.  
 Clinton, Governor George, 232, 242.  
 Colby University, 262.  
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 361.  
 Colonies, home life in, 115; strength of, 123.  
 Colorado, admission of, 395.  
 Columbia, S. C., 368.  
 Columbia College, 124.  
 Columbian exposition, 421.  
 Columbian naval review, 421.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 7-18.  
 Confederacy, southern, formed, 314; destroyed, 374.  
 Confederate cruisers, 325, 350, 364.  
 Congress, first colonial, 125; first continental, 127; first constitutional, 213.  
 Connecticut, 69.  
 Constitution, adoption of, 210.  
*Constitution and Guerriere*, 240.  
 Continental money, 182, 207.  
 Contreras, battle of, 295.  
 Corinth, battle of, 332.  
 Cornwallis, Lord, 148, 149, 151, 155, 156, 164, 185, 186, 193, 194, 198-200.  
 Cowpens, battle of, 192, 193.  
 Crown Point, capture of, 131.  
*Cumberland*, loss of, 334.  
 Curtis, Samuel R., 331, 376.  
 Cushing, W. B., 366, 377.  
 Custer, G. A., 372, 377, 398.  
  
 Dade's massacre, 274.  
 Dakota, North and South, admission of, 418.  
 Dare, Virginia, 21.  
 Dartmouth College, 124.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 198, 205, 370, 374, 382.  
 Deane, Silas, 163, 166.  
 Dearborn, Henry, 244, 258.  
 Decatur, Stephen, 229, 233, 242, 248.  
 Deerfield, burning of, 81.  
 De Kalb, Baron, 186.  
 Delaware, colonial history of, 90, 91.  
 De Leon, Ponce, 26.

- De Luna, 28.  
 Democratic party, 272.  
 De Monts, 62.  
 De Narvaez, 26.  
 De Soto, 27, 28.  
 D'Estaing, 176.  
 Detroit, 113, 238.  
 Dieskau, 109.  
 Dinwiddie, Governor, 102.  
 Donelson, Fort, capture of, 330.  
 Dorr's rebellion, 286.  
 Doubleday, Abner, 319, 377.  
 Douglas, S. A., 303, 306, 312.  
 Downie, Commodore, 253.  
 Dred Scott decision, 309.  
 Du Pont, S. F., 350.  
 Duquesne, Fort, 105, 109.  
 Dutch manners and customs, 119.  
  
 Early, Jubal A., 362, 382.  
 Education, 437.  
 Edward, Fort, massacre at, 109.  
 Elizabeth, settlement of, 84.  
 Ellsworth, E. E., 323.  
 Emancipation proclamation, 344.  
 Embargo Act, 232.  
 Ericsson, John, 336, 377.  
 Eric the Red, 2.  
 Erie Canal, 267.  
 Eutaw Springs, battle at, 195.  
 Ewell, R. S., 341, 372, 382.  
  
 Farragut, D. G., 339, 364, 377.  
 Federalists, 214.  
 Fenians, 389.  
 Ferdinand of Spain, 10, 18.  
 Ferguson, Patrick, 183.  
 Field, Cyrus W., 311.  
 Fillmore, Millard, 300.  
 Fisher, Fort, capture of, 364.  
 Fisher's Hill, battle at, 362.  
 Fishery award, 404.  
 Fitch, John, 231, 233.  
 Five Forks, battle of, 369.  
 Florida, admission of, 289.  
*Florida*, the, 365.  
 Foote, A. H., 329, 332, 377.  
*Fortune*, the, 67.  
 France, New, 62.  
 France, treaty with, 167.  
  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 106, 123, 138, 144, 163, 169.  
 Frazer's Farm, battle at, 342.  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 343.  
 Fremont, J. C., 305, 307, 325, 341.  
 French explorations, 28-34.  
 Frenchtown, massacre at, 245.  
 Frobisher, Martin, 21.  
 Fugitive Slave Law, 300.  
 Fulton, Robert, 231, 234.  
 Future, the, 438.  
  
 Gage, Thomas, 127-130, 132, 138.  
 Gaines' Mill, battle at, 341.  
 Galveston, capture by Confederates, 350.  
 Garfield, James A., 404, 405, 406.  
 Gates, Horatio, 132, 157, 158, 164, 185.  
 Genet, "Citizen," 217, 220.  
 Georgia, colonial history of, 95-98, 176.  
 Georgia, University of, 261.  
*Georgia*, the, 365.  
 Germantown, battle of, 352-356.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 21.  
 Gillmore, Q. A., 350, 377.  
 Gist, Christopher, 104, 105.  
 Goffe, the regicide, 76.  
 Gold discovered in California, 296.  
 Gorges, Sir Fernando, 72.  
 Gosnold, Bartholomew, 22.  
 Grant, Ulysses S., 329, 330, 331, 332, 333, 345, 347, 348, 350, 358, 360, 368, 369, 370, 372, 377, 392-401.  
 "Greater New York," 433.  
 Greeley, Horace, 395, 401.  
 Greely, Lieutenant, A. W., 407, 410.  
 Greene, Nathanael, 186, 192, 193, 194, 203.  
 Guilford Court House, battle at, 194.  
  
 Hadley, 76.  
 Hale, Captain Nathan, 146, 147, 153.  
 Halleck, H. W., 332, 378.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, 214, 215, 219, 222.  
 Hamilton College, 262.  
 Hancock, W. S., 404, 405.  
 Hanover Court House, battle at, 340.  
 Harmar, J., 216.  
 Harper's Ferry, 310, 341, 342.  
 Harrison, Benjamin, 412, 413-419.  
 Harrison's Landing, 342.



- Harrison, W. H., 236, 244, 245, 250, 277, 284.  
 Hartford founded, 69.  
 Harvard College founded, 71.  
 Hatteras Inlet, captured, 325.  
 Hawaiian imbroglio, 426.  
 Hayes, R. B., 400, 402, 403-405.  
 Henry, Fort, capture of, 329.  
 Henry, Patrick, 127, 139.  
 Henry, prince of Portugal, 8.  
 Herkimer, Nicholas, 157.  
 Hessians, 146, 149, 150, 157.  
 Hood, John B., 359.  
 Hooker, Joseph, 340, 345, 346, 351, 378.  
 Horry, Peter, 183, 192.  
 Horseshoe Bend, battle at, 252.  
 Houston, Sam., 288, 290.  
 Howe, Richard, Earl, 152.  
 Howe, William, 141, 146, 152, 159, 160.  
 Hudson, Captain Henry, 53, 54.  
 Huguenots, the, 30, 37.  
 Hull, Isaac, 241, 258.  
 Hull, William, 238.  
 Hunter, David, 325, 362.  
 Idaho, admission of, 419.  
 Illinois, admission of, 263.  
 Independence, Declaration of, 145.  
 India Company, West, 53.  
 Indiana, admission of, 256.  
 Indians, trouble with, 215, 250, 251, 416.  
 Introduction, 5.  
 Iowa, admission of, 289.  
 Isabella, queen of Spain, 10, 18.  
 Island No. 10, capture of, 332.  
 Jackson, Andrew, 263, 266, 269, 271-277.  
 Jackson, T. J. (Stonewall), 340, 341, 342, 352.  
 Jamestown founded, 40.  
 Jasper, Sergeant, 143, 176.  
 Jay, chief justice, John, 214, 217, 219.  
 Jefferson, Thomas, 144, 214, 218, 224, 226-234.  
 Jersey, East and West, 86.  
 John, king of Portugal, 8.  
 Johnson, Andrew, 367, 378, 387-391.  
 Johnson, Sir William, 109.  
 Johnston, Albert Sidney, 290, 331.  
 Johnston, Joseph E., 323, 340, 348, 358, 368, 383.  
 Johnstown flood, 413.  
 Joint electoral commission, 401.  
 Jones, Paul, 178, 179, 181.  
 Kansas, civil war in, 302; admission of, 311.  
 Kearny, Stephen W., 294, 298.  
*Kearsarge and Alabama*, 364.  
 Kenesaw Mountain, battle at, 359.  
 Kentucky, admission of, 218.  
 Key, Francis S., 254.  
 Kieft, Governor, 90.  
 King's Mountain, battle of, 186.  
 Knox, Henry, 203, 205, 214.  
 Knoxville, siege of, 348.  
 Kosciusko, 167, 173.  
 Lafayette, Marquis de, 167, 173, 197, 198, 265.  
 Lake Champlain, battle of, 253.  
 Lake Erie, battle of, 249.  
 Laudonniere, 31, 32, 33.  
 Lawrence, Captain James, 246.  
 Lee, Arthur, 163, 165.  
 Lee, Charles, 149, 169, 170, 174.  
 Lee, Henry ("Light Horse Harry"), 192, 204, 223, 236.  
 Lee, Richard Henry, 127, 139.  
 Lee, Robert E., 310, 341, 342, 352, 356, 358, 361, 369, 370, 383.  
 Leisler, execution of, 61.  
 Leon, Ponce de, 24.  
*Leopard*, the, *Chesapeake*, 231.  
 Lewis and Clarke expedition, 227.  
 Lexington, Mass., battle of, 128.  
 Lexington, Mo., battle of, 325.  
 Lief the Lucky, 2.  
 Lincoln, Abraham, 312, 314, 315, 317-387.  
 Lincoln, Benjamin, 176, 181, 183, 202.  
*Little Belt*, the, *President*, 235.  
 Livingston, R. R., 144, 153.  
 Long Island, battle of, 146.  
 Longstreet, James, 345, 348, 361, 384.  
 Lookout Mountain, battle of, 347.  
 "Lost Colony," the, 22.  
 Louisburg, capture of, 83, 111.  
 Louisiana, purchase of, 227; admission of, 236.

- Lundy's Lane, battle of, 252.  
 Lyon, Nathaniel, 325.  
 MacDonough, Commodore Thomas, 253.  
 Madoc, 5.  
 Madison, James, 232-256.  
 Madison University, 262.  
 Magruder, J. B., 384.  
 Maine, 72, 264.  
 Malden, defeat at, 245.  
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 342.  
 Manassas, battles of, 323, 342.  
 Manhattan, 55.  
 Marion, Francis, 183, 185, 192.  
 Marshall, John, 221, 225.  
 Maryland, colonial history of, 92-94.  
 Mason, James S., 384.  
 Massachusetts, 64, 78.  
 Massachusetts Bay Colony, 68.  
 Matamoras, battle of, 294.  
 Maximilian in Mexico, 391.  
 May, Captain, 55.  
*Mayflower*, the, 63, 64, 65, 67.  
 McClellan, George B., 324, 339, 340, 341, 342, 367, 378.  
 McDowell, Irvin, 323, 340, 379.  
 McKinley, William, 429, 430, 431, 432-439.  
 Meade, George G., 352, 360, 379, 391.  
 Mechanicsville, battle of, 341.  
 Meigs, Fort, siege of, 345.  
 Memphis, surrender of, 332.  
 Menendez, 31-34.  
 Mercer, Hugh, 156, 164.  
*Merrimac* and *Monitor*, 333-338.  
 Mexico, war with, 292-297.  
 Michigan, admission of, 275.  
 Mimms, Fort, massacre at, 250.  
 Mine explosion at Petersburg, 361.  
 Minnesota, admission of, 311.  
 Mint established at Philadelphia, 215.  
 Missionary Ridge, battle of, 347.  
 Mississippi, admission of, 263.  
 Mississippi River, discovery of, 27.  
 Missouri, admission of, 265.  
 Missouri Compromise, 264, 303.  
 Mobile, 364.  
 Modoc Indians, 396.  
 Molly Pitcher, 170, 174.  
 Monetary panics, 265, 281, 421.  
*Monitor*, the, 333.  
 Monmouth, battle of, 169.  
 Monroe Doctrine, 265.  
 Monroe, James, 151, 256, 260, 261-266.  
 Mons, De, 62.  
 Montana, admission of, 419.  
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 109, 111, 112.  
 Monterey, capture of, 294.  
 Montgomery, Richard, 135, 136.  
 Montreal, surrender of, 112.  
 Morgan, Daniel, 194.  
 Mormons, the, 287.  
 Morris, Robert, 152, 197, 199, 204.  
 Morse, S. F. B., 289, 291.  
 Murfreesboro, battle of, 333, 344.  
 Naddod, 1.  
 Narragansetts, the, 67, 68, 69.  
 Nashville, battle of, 359.  
 Navigation Act, 78.  
 Nebraska, admission of, 391.  
 Nelson, Governor Thomas, 199, 206.  
 Nevada, admission of, 366.  
 New Amsterdam, 57.  
 New Anstel, 91.  
 Newark, settlement of, 85.  
 Newburn, capture of, 339.  
 New England, colonial history of, 62-83.  
 New Hampshire, settlement of, 72.  
 New Jersey, colonial history of, 84-87.  
 New Netherland, 56-59.  
 New Orleans, 255, 339, 414.  
 Newport, Christopher, 39, 40, 43.  
 Newspapers, the first, 82.  
 New York, the colonial history of, 53-62.  
 New York city, 59, 203.  
 Nicholson, Francis, 59, 60.  
 North, Lord, 202, 205.  
 Northmen, the, 1-4.  
 Northwestern territory, 211.  
 Nullification, 272.  
 Oglethorpe, James Edward, 95-98.  
 Ohio, admission of, 227.  
 Ohio Company, 101.  
 Ohio University, 262.  
 Omnibus Bill, 299.  
 Orange, Fort, 56.  
 Oregon, admission of, 311.  
 Osceola, 273, 274, 275.

- Pacific Ocean, discovery of, 24.  
 Palo Alto, battle of, 293.  
 Paoli massacre, 160.  
 Parke, William, 52.  
 Patroons, the, 57.  
 Pea Ridge, battle of, 331.  
 Penn, William, 86, 90.  
 Pennsylvania, colonial history of, 88-90.  
 Popham colony, 38.  
 Popular sovereignty, 306.  
 Porter, D. D., 248, 333, 363, 379.  
 Porter, Fitz John, 340, 379.  
 Port Hudson, surrender of, 350.  
 Port Royal entrance, capture of, 325.  
 Powhatan, 42, 43, 45.  
 Prescott, William, 132, 134, 140.  
 Presidential succession, 411.  
 Price, Sterling, 325, 332, 384.  
 Princeton, battle of, 154, 155.  
 Princeton College, 124.  
 Printing-press, the first in America, 71.  
 Printz, Governor, 91.  
 Providence plantations, the, 72.  
 Pulaski, Count, 167, 173, 176.  
 Puritans, the, 63.  
 Putnam, Israel, 146, 153.  
  
 Quakers, the, 74.  
 Quebec, siege of, 135, 136.  
 Queenstown Heights, battle of, 239.  
  
 Railroads, history of, 267.  
 Railway strikes, 403, 423.  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, 21.  
 Rall, Johan G., 150, 151, 154.  
 Randolph, Edmund, 214, 219.  
 Reconstruction, 388, 392.  
 Red River expedition, 363.  
 Republican party, 305.  
 Republicans, 214.  
 Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 293.  
 Responsibility, our, 438.  
 Resumption of specie payments, 403.  
 Revere, Paul, 128, 140.  
 Revolution, causes of, 124.  
 Rhode Island, 73, 74.  
 Ribaut, John, 30, 31, 32.  
 Richmond, 339, 370.  
 Roanoke Island, capture of, 339.  
 Rochambeau, Comte de, 198, 205.  
  
 Rosecrans, W. S., 332, 333, 344, 345, 380.  
 Rutgers College, 124.  
  
 Sabine Cross Roads, battle of, 363.  
 Sackett's harbor, attack on, 244.  
 Samoset, 65, 66.  
 San Jacinto, battle of, 288.  
 San Juan boundary, 395.  
 Savage's station, battle at, 342.  
 Savannah, 96, 172, 360.  
*Savannah*, first steamer to cross the Atlantic, 262.  
 Savings banks, 262.  
 Schofield, John M., 359, 368, 380.  
 Schuyler, Fort, 157.  
 Scott, Winfield, 240, 252, 273, 275, 293, 294, 295, 296, 302, 319.  
 Sedgwick, John, 380.  
 Seminoles, 262, 273.  
 Semmes, Raphael, 350, 384.  
 Seven Days' Battles, 341.  
 Shackamaxon, treaty of, 88.  
 Shays's insurrection, 209.  
 Sheridan, Philip, 362, 369, 380.  
 Sherman, Roger, 144, 152.  
 Sherman, W. T., 333, 348, 359, 360, 368, 380.  
 Sherman Bill, the, 420.  
 Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing, battle of, 331.  
 Sigel, Franz, 362, 398.  
 Slavery, 47, 299, 317, 344.  
 Slidell, John, 385.  
 Sloughter, Governor, 60, 61.  
 Smith, Edmund Kirby, 323, 385.  
 Smith, John, 40-43, 62.  
 South Mountain, battle of, 342.  
 Spanish explorations, 23-28.  
*Speedwell*, the, 63, 64.  
 Stamp Act, the, 124.  
 Standish, Myles, 64, 67, 68.  
 Stark, John, 157, 165.  
 Star-Spangled Banner, birth of, 155 ; song of, 254.  
 "Starving time" in Virginia, 44.  
 Steadman, Fort, attacked, 369.  
 Stephens, Alexander, 385.  
 Stephenson, Fort, defence of, 245.  
 St. Augustine founded, 34.  
 St. Clair, Arthur, 216, 220.



- St. Leger, 157, 165.  
 Steuben, Baron, 167, 173.  
 Stirling, Lord (William Alexander), 153.  
 Stockton, R. F., 287, 295, 298.  
 Stony Point, capture of, 177.  
 Stuart, J. E. B., 341, 361, 385.  
 Stuyvesant, 57, 58, 59, 91.  
 Sullivan, John, 146, 171, 174, 177.  
 Sumner, Charles, 305, 306.  
 Sumter, Thomas, 183, 191.  
 Sumter, Fort, 313, 319.  
 Swansea, 74.
- Taney, Roger B., 272, 278.  
 Tariff, 215, 268.  
 Tarleton, Lieutenant Colonel, 183, 191, 193.  
 Taylor, Zachary, 275, 292, 294, 297, 298, 300.  
 Taylor, Dick, 363, 385.  
 Tea, tax on, 125.  
 Tecumseh, 250, 259.  
 Telegram, the first, 289.  
 Telegraph, the magnetic, 289.  
 Tennessee, admission of, 218.  
 Terry, Alfred, 364, 381, 398.  
 Texas, 288, 289.  
 Thames, battle of the, 250.  
 Thomas, George H., 333, 345, 347, 359, 381.  
 Thorvald, 3.  
 Ticonderoga, 131, 157.  
 Tilden, Samuel J., 400.  
 Tippecanoe, battle of, 236.  
 Travel, early methods of, 117.  
*Trent*, affair of the, 325.  
 Trenton, battle of, 149-151.  
 Tripoli, war with, 227-230.  
 Tyler, John, 284-290.
- Union Humane Society, 262.  
 United Colonies of New England, 72.  
 United States Bank, 265, 271, 272.  
 Utah, admission of, 429.
- Valley Forge, 163.  
 Van Buren, Martin, 277, 280, 281-283.  
 Van Dorn, Earl, 331, 332, 385.  
 Van Twiller, Wouter, 57.  
 Venezuelan question, 427.
- Vera Cruz, capture of, 295.  
 Verhult, William, 56.  
 Vermont, admission of, 218.  
 Verrazani, 28.  
 Vicksburg, 333, 348.  
 Virginia, colonial history of, 36-52.  
 Virginia University, 262.
- Wagner, Fort, capture of, 350.  
 Walloons, the, 56.  
 War, Civil, 317-375; 1812, 236-256; French and Indian, 100-118; King George's, 83; King Philip's, 74-78; King William's, 79-80; Mexican, 292-297; Pontiac's, 113; Queen Anne's, 81; Revolution, 123-207; Seminole, 262-273.  
 Ward, Artemus, 132, 140.  
 Warren, Joseph, 135, 140.  
 Washington, George, 103, 104, 105, 132, 135, 149-151, 155, 156, 162, 163, 169, 176, 198, 199, 200, 203, 208, 210-218, 223.  
 Washington city, 223, 253.  
 Washington College, 261.  
 Washington, Fort, 147.  
 Wayne, Anthony, 160, 165, 177, 196, 203, 216.  
 Webster, Daniel, 272, 279, 285.  
*Welcome*, the, 88.  
 Wesley, John and Charles, 97.  
 West Point Military Academy established, 226.  
 West Virginia, admission of, 366.  
 Whigs, 272.  
 Whiskey rebellion, 216.  
 Whitefield, George, 97.  
 White Plains, battle of, 147.  
 Wilderness, battle of, 361.  
 Wilkes, Charles, 325, 381.  
 Wilkinson, James, 244, 245, 259.  
 Willard, Emma, 262.  
 William and Mary College, 124.  
 Williams, Roger, 68, 72.  
 Winslow, John A., 364, 381.  
 Winthrop, John, the younger, 69.  
 Wisconsin, admission of, 297.  
 Witchcraft, Salem, 80, 81.  
 Wolfe, James, 111, 112.  
 Wool, John E., 294, 298.

Worden, John L., 381.

Worth, W. J., 275, 294, 298.

Wounded Knee Creek, battle of, 418.

Wyoming, massacre of, 171.

Wyoming, admission of, 419.

Yale College, 124.

York, capture of, 244.

Yorktown, 340, 407.

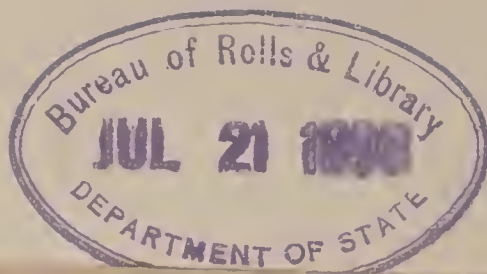
Young, Brigham, 287, 290, 429.

Yukon, gold fields of Upper, 434.



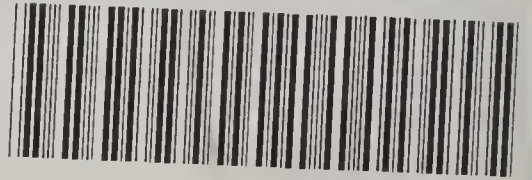






United States  
Department of State  
Library

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 011 446 691 8

